Arabic Today

A student, business and professional course in spoken and written Arabic

Second Edition

John Mace

EDINBURGH UNIVERSITY PRESS
Contents

Introduction vii
Pronunciation ix

Part I: Spoken Arabic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Greetings</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Professions and countries. Gender and Number. Pronouns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arabic Adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>At the Airport</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Possessives. Arabic Adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>In the Hotel</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>In Town</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Numbers 0i 10. Negative. Adverbs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>In the Office</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Administration. Present tense and imperative of sound and initial---w-- verbs. Numbers 111 199. Interrogatives.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indirect questions. Regional variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>A Visit to Friends</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Egyptian speech. House and family. Past tense of hollow verbs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clauses of circumstance. Broken plural. Continuous past tense.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>On the Telephone</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present tense and imperative of hollow verbs. \may--can--must-- might-- Numbers above 199. Fractions and percentage. Time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Days of the week. Indirect Command. Regional variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Teaching and Training</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interrogatives. \some--same--all-- Ordinal numbers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activities, instruments and places. Regional variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>In the Restaurant</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Food and drink. Collective nouns. Verbs of Form II.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Indefinite pronouns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>A New Project</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Visit to a Factory</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>At the Surgery</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>A Visit to the Village</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>In the Market</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shopping. Clothes. Verbs of Forms IX and X.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>The News</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Politics and international relations. Broadcasting. Written forms. Recapitulation of verb, Forms I to X.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Part II: Written Arabic</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Reading and Writing. Alphabet. Article.</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sound plural and dual endings. Doubled letters.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Reading and Writing. Alphabet.</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Reading and Writing. Alphabet. Arabic transcription. Pointing.</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Insurance</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Transport and Communications</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Personnel Management</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Petroleum</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>From the Newspapers</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Correspondence</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>The Transfer of Technology</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auxiliaries with the present tense. Doubly weak verbs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>The United Nations</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key to exercises 269
Index of words 281
Arabic, Part I 281
English, Parts I and II 309
Arabic, Part II 339
Grammar index 351
Introduction

You can learn Arabic.
This course is designed to help people visiting the Arab world – whether for work, study or other reasons – who wish to communicate at first hand with the people and the institutions of the region. It is written in a manner suitable either for self-tuition or for use in a classroom.

One problem facing teachers and students of Arabic is the divergence between the written language and the many regional forms of speech. Teachers and students feel forced to make a choice, and this sometimes highlights or even exaggerates this divergence.

This course attempts to cut through the dilemma. Part I offers, in a simple and reliable Roman-letter transcription, a form of educated spoken Arabic which leads without strain to the written language explained in Part II. Here the Arabic letters are learned in groups, the most useful ones first, while the written language is presented not as a contrast but as a complement to the spoken. Grammatical terms, kept to a minimum, are explained in the text.

Part I is based on the speech of the Levant, Egypt and the Arabian Peninsula which is also widely understood from Morocco to Oman. The reasons for this choice lie in the cultural, political and economic importance of the region. Not only will this form of speech enable you to understand and be understood in the Arab Middle East, among rich and poor alike, as well as among educated people in North-west Africa, but it also serves as a base on which the bridge to standard written Arabic is easily built.

At the same time, you will find in Part I important regional speech variations. You may choose to stop at the end of Part I, if you have no time, or no need, for reading and writing. Or you may, after a time if not immediately, go on to Part II, building on what you learned in Part I.

This course rejects the premise that Arabic is very difficult, remote or mysterious, accessible only to specialists. It recognises the need for our better understanding of the Arabs, and offers some help in achieving it. True, it is possible to live and work in an Arab country with no knowledge of the language. But it is rather like listening to Bach with your head under a pillow. You always feel you are missing something.

For the pronunciation, you should make full use of the compact disc accompanying this book. Some Arabic sounds are not easy, and, while they are described in the following chapter, the best result is achieved by hearing a native produce the real thing. Everything marked ☞ is recorded on the disc.

References in the lessons and indexes indicate: lesson no./paragraph no.

I take this opportunity to express my gratitude to Dr Julia Bray of the University of Paris VIII for many valuable suggestions and corrections made for an earlier edition, and to Professor Carole Hillenbrand of the University of Edinburgh for her support and encouragement in this venture. I am likewise indebted to Marilyn Moore for her tireless help in checking the text of both editions, and to
Jihad Haddad for checking the Arabic text. My thanks also go to Dolly Saba, Alain Chbeir and Jihad Haddad for recording parts of the text. Willem Herpels gave me valuable and unstinting help with the computer technology, for which I am also very grateful. Any shortcomings remaining in the book are my responsibility.

I dedicate this book to the memory of my teacher, and to the many other Arab refugees who have contributed to development in the Middle East and elsewhere.
Pronunciation

1. General
Throughout this book, the Arabic sounds are transcribed in a simple system of symbols. The following description of the sounds represented by the symbols refers by comparison to standard English pronunciation. It does not replace the disc available with this book; good Arabic pronunciation can be learned only by listening to a native voice.

Bearing this in mind, pronounce the symbols of the transcription (in italic type) as shown below. Every symbol should be pronounced wherever it occurs; none is silent as is the case with some letters in English spelling.

2. Vowels and diphthongs
   a  as a in English dīnābada dō beginō
   ā as a but long: dīnā-anākān dō bēdō
   i  as i in English dītō min dromō
   ĩ as i in English dīničēō kīs dāgō
   u  as u in English dītōzūrī dō zūrūdō
   ū as u in English dūleō nūdōn dūhūdō
   aw as ōu in English dōudō law dō
   ay as ay in English dīayōbayn dīweenō
   ou as ōu in English dōudō yōum dīayō

3. Consonants similar to English
   b, d, f, k, m, n, s, t, v, w, z much as in English.
   dh as th in English dīnāt̄ kadha dōo
   g as ġ in English dōoodō gūrā jet̄ garageō(see under j below).
   h as ĥ in English dīadō hum dīheyō lahja dīcentō
   j as j in English dīmōjamb dīsideē in Egypt this sound is replaced with ġ, see above.
   l as light or front l in English dīalō lī dōrō not as dark or back l in English dīallō
   r always rolled: rama dō thrōwō yirmī dē throwsō
   sh as sh in English dīshe̯masha dō walkō
   th as th in English dīnin̄ thalāṭha dīrēēō
   y as y in English dīȳēárō(i.e. a consonant): yāmīn dēffō

4. Consonants different from English
   kh as ch in German dīuchō Welsh dīachōor Scots dīochō khamsa dīveēō if you have difficulty, first form k, but before pronouncing it, release the closure slightly. The result will be kh.
   gh as ġ in the French pronunciation of dīrāsō gūzē qasō this is the voiced counterpart of kh. Proceed as for kh, but starting with g instead of k
   ĥ as h but pronounced far back in the throat: hāl dīcondōn dāhr dīeēō ĥ is the sound produced when you breathe on glass to clean it
glottal stop: sa’al do askô this is the sound heard before each word in the expression absolutely awfulô which we could transcribe as [ˈabsolutely ‚awful]. In the text we often refer to the glottal stop as hamza, which is the sign marking it. There is more about hamza in paragraph 9 below.

q as k but pronounced far back in the throat: qāl do sayô for k the closure is at the rear of the palate, while for q the closure is as low in the throat as you can make it.

9 a sound like a gulp: sānad do helpô Proceed as follows. Repeat several times the name Maggie; as you say it, try to stop making contact in the throat for the sound -gg-; let this middle consonant become progressively more vague until it is no more than a gulp, with no contact. The result is near to the Arabic word ma9ī with meô Probably the most difficult sound in Arabic. Listen carefully to the disc.

5. Deep (‘velarised’) consonants

 t, d, s, ð and z are the deep or velarised counterparts of t, d, s, dh and z. The difference is important. In pronouncing t, d and dh, the end of the tongue touches the top front teeth or teeth-ridge. For s and z the contact is between the middle of the tongue and the teeth-ridge. In both cases the rest of the tongue follows the curve of the palate. For each of the velarised counterparts, the point of contact is unchanged, but the rest of the tongue is dropped as far as possible, forming a deep cavity. Prepare, for example, to pronounce t. Now, maintaining the contact between the tip of the tongue and the top front teeth-ridge, create a cavity by dropping the rest of the tongue as low as possible. Say t with this position. It will sound something like  PACKET.

Proceed in like manner for each of the other velarised consonants. Prepare the unvelarised sound, then, holding the point of contact, drop the body and base of the tongue to make the cavity for the velarised counterpart. Feel the cavity clearly when pronouncing the velarised consonants, which are unmistakable on the disc.

ð and z are the velarised counterparts of dh and z respectively. But Arabs use either ð or both velarised sounds, or z or both velarised sounds. ð is the ‘classical’ pronunciation and is especially common in the Arabian Peninsula and the Gulf. Both forms are correct.

6. Vowel-attraction:velarised a and ā

Next to a velarised consonant (t, d, s or ð/z, see above), the vowels a and ā automatically acquire a deeper sound because of the cavity. They are ‘attracted’. This happens also when a or ā occur next to q because of the latter’s depth, and very commonly with kh and r, especially when the vowel is stressed (see below). Distinguish carefully, and listen for the difference on the disc. In the following examples, and at certain other points in the book, we mark the velarised a’s as a and ā for clarity.

a sounds like u in English dutô mûjûr ûainô ā sounds like a in English daûmô jûr do flyô Compare the a’s in the two columns:

tamm to end ṭâbîb doctor
**PRONUNCIATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`afād</td>
<td>to benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hādha</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāda</td>
<td>plain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mazrū́d</td>
<td>planted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kānat</td>
<td>she was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dākhil</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowel-attraction also occurs with `a before the combination 9t or 9d; the velarised consonant appears to exercise the attraction through the 9:

- `a9tū they gave  bā9d some

The two diphthongs `aw and `ay are also attracted when next to a velarised consonant, and often after q, kh or r. The a of the diphthong deepens to a:

- sayt voice  dāyf guest

In the vocabularies and text we will show the velarisation as a and ā only when drawing attention to it.

### 7. Stress

In an Arabic word of several syllables, one syllable is stressed, i.e. spoken with more force than the others. In the first three lessons we show the stress with an acute accent, ‚...‘. There are simple rules:

- **Stress the last heavy syllable when there is one.** A heavy syllable is one consisting of either:
  - a diphthong or long vowel + consonant, or
  - a short vowel + two consonants or a doubled consonant*

  - lubnān Lebanon  dābbar to arrange

  - dabbart you arranged

- **Stress the first syllable when there is no heavy syllable:**

  - `āna I  kātabat she wrote

- **Stress on words carrying a stressed ending in the form of a long vowel.** These are explained as they arise:

  - dabbartū you arranged it  warā behind him

- **on words ending -iya, which always carry the stress on the previous syllable; this is to avoid confusion with the ending -īya which is always stressed on its long -ī-:**

  - thāniya second  gāriya village

- **on certain verb forms having irregular stress:**

  - insāhabū they withdrew  ittāsāl to contact

  (not [ins-, itt-] as the rule states)

- **where certain words carry the stress of the whole expression:**

  - fī shē there is something  mā fī shī there is nothing

### 8. Hyphens

A hyphen is sometimes shown in the transcription, for grammatical or phonetic clarity. It should be ignored in pronunciation:
9. Weak vowels
A vowel beginning a word is called a weak vowel. It is dropped when the preceding word in the same phrase ends with a vowel:

li to + al-bálād the town → li l-bálād to (the) town
huwa he + ibtáda began → huwa btáda he began

Pronounce each combination without a pause: līl-bálād, huwā btáda.

This rule applies only when the second word begins with a vowel, not when it begins with hamza (see paragraph 4 above) + a vowel, since hamza itself is a consonant:

huwa he + ’ársal sent → huwa ’ársal he sent

Further, when a long vowel at the end of a word is followed by a word which has lost its initial weak vowel and now begins with two consonants, the long vowel becomes short:

shāfū they saw + al-báyt the house

→ shāfu l-báyt (pronounced shāfu l-báyt, short -u-) they saw the house

10. Doubled consonants
Consonants transcribed double must be pronounced double, i.e. held longer than single consonants:

dáras to study → dárras* to instruct
az-zamīl the colleague → az-zamīl the colleague

* pronounce as if it were transcribed dár-ras.

We have the phenomenon also in English, in the pronunciation of words such as ‘unknown’ and of expressions such as ‘eight times’.

11. Written pronunciation
In the text, reference is made to ‘written pronunciation’. This is not nonsense; it is the pronunciation used in reading from a prepared text. We study it in Part II. It differs in a few respects from the pronunciation of unscripted speech, which we study in Part I.
Part I

Spoken Arabic
1. al-ḥiwar – Dialogue
(Peter Brown, an engineer from Cambridge, boards a flight to Amman. He sees a passenger, Dr Fuad Sharif (fu’ā́d sharī́f) reading an Arabic newspaper, sitting next to an empty seat.)

mása l-kháyr  
good afternoon/ evening
mása n-nūr  
good afternoon/ evening (in reply)

Peter:  
mása l-kháyr.

fu’ā́d:  
mása n-nūr.

Peter:  
’ismah li
permit me;
(here:) excuse me

hádha l-maḥālīl
this place
fādī
please
min fādīlak

Peter:  
’ismah li, hádha l-maḥālīl
fādī, min fādīlak?

ná9am
yes
please
tfādīlal

fu’ā́d:  
ná9am, fādī, tfādīlal.

Peter:  
’shmī
my name
’āna
I
muhāndis
engineer
kayf
how
hālāk
your condition

Peter:  
’shmī Peter Brown. ’āna
muhandis. kayf hālāk?

u
and
TABĪB
doctor

fu’ā́d:  
u ’āna fu’ā́d sharī́f, tabīb.

Peter:  
My name is Peter Brown. I’m an engineer. How are you?

u
and
TABĪB
doctor

fu’ā́d:  
’āna fu’ā́d sharī́f, tabīb.

Peter:  
And I’m Fuad Sharif, a doctor.

mabsūṭ
pleased; (here:) well
(al-)hamdīlāl
God be praised;
(here:) thank you

fu’ā́d:  
mabsūṭ, al-ḥamdīlāl

Peter:  
I’m well, thank you.

fu’ā́d:  
mabsūṭ, al-ḥamdīlāl

Peter:  
I’m well, thank you.
كأين حالك؟
كامن
‘اميرك
Peter: 'انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: 'أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
وا
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wa 'أين ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
Peter: كماك الهالك?
kamân
‘اميرك
Peter: انا مسلم كامن، همديلا.
fu’ad: أين ‘اميرك؟
لا
‘انجليزي
wa
‘وردني
Peter: لا، ‘انا ‘انجليزي.
wanda ‘وردني؟
من
ال-‘وردني
9امم
fu’ad: نارام، ‘انا من الوردني،
من 9امم.ن.
اهلان
بيك
اهلان.
Peter: اهلان بيك.
al-mu'īfa: مرحبا، يا سعاتي.
Peter: مرحاباً.
qahwa
willâ
shâ’i
سفيي
al-mu'īfa: القهوة والشاي,
يع سفيي براون؟
law samahtî
duktur
min fadlik
Peter: القهوة، والسماحتي.
al-mu'īfa: وا 'أين، يا دكتور؟
fu’ad: القهوة كامن، من فادلك.
tfaddalû
jažilan
al-mu'īfa: تفضل.
fu’ad: شكرك جزيل.
al-mu'īfa: 9افوان.
LESSON 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greeting</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sabāḥ al-kháyr</td>
<td>Good morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabāḥ an-nūr</td>
<td>Good morning (reply)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-yóum</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

fu’ād: sabāḥ al-kháyr, Good morning, Mr Brown. 
yā säyyid Peter.
Peter: sabāḥ an-nūr, yā düktör. Good morning, Doctor.
kayf hālak al-yóum? How are you today?
mish baṭṭāl not bad
jiddan very
nushkurálla thank God;
(here:) thank you

fu’ād: mish baṭṭāl, shúkran. Not bad, thank you.
kayf hālak ’int? How are you?
Peter: mabsūṭ jiddan, nushkurálla. Very well, thank you.

2. mufradāt ’iqāfīya – Additional vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Profession/country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mu9állim</td>
<td>teacher (man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu9állima</td>
<td>teacher (woman)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūhūfī</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muḥāmī</td>
<td>lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muḏīr shārīka</td>
<td>company director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muḏīr bank</td>
<td>bank manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diblumāsī</td>
<td>diplomat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tājīr</td>
<td>businessman, trader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muḥāsib</td>
<td>accountant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu’āllif</td>
<td>writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tālib</td>
<td>student (man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāliba</td>
<td>student (woman)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muwazzaf ḥukūma</td>
<td>civil servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’ingīlītra</td>
<td>England, Britain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’amáyrka</td>
<td>America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’almāniya</td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farānsa</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-yāḇān</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-hind</td>
<td>India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misr</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūriya</td>
<td>Syria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lubnān</td>
<td>Lebanon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-9irāq</td>
<td>Iraq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-saḏiṭiya</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa9ūdī</td>
<td>Saudi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-kuwáyt</td>
<td>Kuwait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libiya</td>
<td>Libya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūnis</td>
<td>Tunisia, Tunis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-jazāyīr</td>
<td>Algeria, Algiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-māghrib</td>
<td>Morocco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-sūdān</td>
<td>Sudan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filasṭīn</td>
<td>Palestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9ārabī</td>
<td>Arab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’urūba</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

an-nāḥū – Grammar

3. Greetings

Many polite expressions in Arabic are in two parts: a ‘greeting’ and a ‘response’. Sometimes the first speaker makes a further response. Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greeting</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṣabāḥ al-kháyr</td>
<td>Good morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṣabāḥ an-nūr</td>
<td>Good morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’ismah lī</td>
<td>Excuse/Permit me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfāḍḍal</td>
<td>Please do/Go ahead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min fāḍlak</td>
<td>Please (requesting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfāḍḍal</td>
<td>Here you are/Go ahead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfāḍḍal</td>
<td>Please (offering)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūkran</td>
<td>Thank you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(further response) 9áfwan Don’t mention it/You’re welcome

kayf hālak? How are you? mabsūt, al-hamdīla mabsūt, nushkurāla
mabsūt, shākran mish baṭṭā*, shākran

Fine, thank you

* informal response

áhlan Welcome áhlan bīk Welcome yourself
mārḥaba Hello marḥabāyn Hello
māsa l-khāyr Good afternoon/evening māsa n-nūr Good afternoon/evening

Greetings may be repeated during the day, as a sign of courtesy.

4. Gender and number

Some greetings and responses change according to whether they are said to a male person (masculine, m.), a female person (feminine, f.), or a group (plural, pl.). Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to a male</th>
<th>to a female</th>
<th>to a group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>person (m.)</td>
<td>person (f.)</td>
<td>(pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ismāh lī</td>
<td>‘ismāh lī</td>
<td>‘ismāh lī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfādāldī</td>
<td>tfādāldī</td>
<td>tfādāldī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law sāmāḥt</td>
<td>law sāmāḥtī</td>
<td>law sāmāḥtū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘āḥlan bīk</td>
<td>‘āḥlan bīkī</td>
<td>‘āḥlan bīkum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min fādālīk</td>
<td>min fādālīk</td>
<td>min fādālīkum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kayf hālak?</td>
<td>kayf hālāk?</td>
<td>kayf hālāk?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This looks more complicated than it really is; we shall learn simple rules later.

The distinction between masculine, feminine and plural runs right through the language and is important.

5. Pronouns

The personal pronouns (I, you, he etc.) are:

1st person: ‘ānā I ‘āhna/nihna we
2nd person: ‘int you (m.) ‘intū you (plural)
            ‘intī you (f.)
3rd person: hūwa he, it (m.) hum they (animate)
             hiya she, it (f.) hiya they (inanimate)

Note:

- The two forms for ‘we’ are equally common.
- The ‘you’ form varies for gender in the singular, but not in the plural.
- There is no neuter gender; we express ‘it’ with the masculine (m.) hūwa or the feminine (f.) hiya according to the gender of the corresponding noun (i.e. person, place, creature, thing or idea).
- The ‘you’ forms are not distinguished for gender, but there is one form used for people (the animate form [‘an.’, ‘anim.’]) and an inanimate form (‘inan.’) used elsewhere, i.e. for other creatures, and for places, things and ideas. The distinction between animate and inanimate is important in Arabic. The inanimate plural has the same form as the feminine singular.
The personal pronouns are used only when needed for extra emphasis, since other parts of the sentence usually indicate who or what is intended.

6. The verb ‘to be’
The equivalent of the verb do be in present time (am, is, are) is omitted in Arabic, being inferred from the context:

‘āna mabsūt. (I’m) well.

kayf hālak? (How is) your condition?

How are you?

When both verb and pronoun are omitted we may get a one-word sentence:

mabsūt. (I’m) well.

mabsūt? (Are you) well?

7. Article
There is no indefinite article (a, an) in Arabic:

‘āna muhándis. húwa tālib. I (an) engineer. He (a) doctor.

8. Interrogative
Questions can be indicated by making the voice rise momentarily on the stressed syllable of the word questioned:

hādha l-mahāl fādi? Is this place free?

kayf hālak? How are you?

mabsūt? Are you well?

9. nísba adjectives
Adjectives are words which describe or qualify nouns or pronouns. Many adjectives are formed from nouns by adding the ending -ī. We call such adjectives nísba (‘relationship’) adjectives. The prefix al- attached to some nouns, and the endings -a and -iya, are dropped before -ī is added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>misrī</td>
<td>Egyptian</td>
<td>misrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>hindī</td>
<td>Indian</td>
<td>hindī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government</td>
<td>ḥukūmi</td>
<td>governmental</td>
<td>ḥukūmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>‘ītalī</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>‘ītalī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>‘urūbbī</td>
<td>European</td>
<td>‘urūbbī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>faransāwī</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>faransāwī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few are otherwise modified before -ī is added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>faransāwī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Agreement of adjectives
Adjectives are made m. or f., and singular (‘s.’) or pl., to agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which they qualify. Most nísba adjectives, and some others, are ‘sound’, i.e. they form their f. and pl. regularly, as follows:
A few adjectives ending in -ī are not nīsba adjectives; they have a different stress pattern in the feminine singular/inanimate plural form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>m.s.</th>
<th>f.s./in.an. pl.</th>
<th>an. pl.</th>
<th>Jordanian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nīsba:</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-īya</td>
<td>-īyn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
- 'ūrdunī 'urdunīya 'urduniyyīn

Other adjectives:
- final consonant
- a - īn

Examples:
- mabsūt mabsūta mabsūtin

A few nīsba adjectives have a ‘broken’ (irregular) plural:
- ‘inglīzī ‘inglīziya ‘inglīz British, English
- ‘amāyrkī ‘amāyrykīya ‘amāyrkān American
- 9ārabī 9ārabīya 9ārab Arab
- hindī hindīya hunūd Indian

Adjectives used in greetings and responses must also agree:
- kayf hālāk? – mabsūtīn – īn well. (male person responding)
- kayf hālīk? – mabsūta – īn well. (female person responding)
- kayf hālākum? – mabsūtīn – ūdē well. (responding for a group)

11. Word-order; qualifying words

Qualifying words such as adjectives and adverbs* usually follow the word or expression which they qualify:
- muhāndis ‘inglīzi a British engineer
- mabsūt jiddan very well, very pleased

*An adverb is word describing or modifying an adjective, a verb or another adverb. In the expression ‘very well’ ṣāri‘ā is said to modify the adjective ṣāri‘ā.

Qualifying word rule: A qualifying word follows the word which it qualifies.

12 Vocative

When addressing a person we use the vocative particle yā before the name or title. Arabs often use the first name, preceded, for politeness, by sāyyid Mr/Ms or sitt Mrs/Miss/Ms or another title:
- tfādal, yā fu ‘ād. Here you are, Fuad.
- kayf hālak, yā sāyyid Peter? How are you, Mr Brown?
- shūkr, yā dūktur. Thank you, Doctor.

13 ‘Please’

Distinguish between the expressions for pleaseō
LESSON 1

**min fādlak (etc.), law samāht (etc.)**

(enuiring or requesting)

**tfāḍdal/-ī/-ū**

(offering or proposing)

14 **u 'and'**

Although consisting only of a weak vowel (see Pronunciation, paragraph 9), the word **u ‘and’** is never elided:

- **shā́ī u qáhwa**
  
  tea and coffee

15. **júmal mithālīya – Model sentences**

| hiya tālíba? – ná9am, hiya tālíba misriya. | Is she a student? Í Yes, she’s an Egyptian student. |
| ‘int fāḍ? – ná9am, al-yóum fāḍī, tfāḍdal. | Are you free? Í Yes, today I’m free. How can I help you? |

16. **at-tamārín – Exercises**

1. Give the response to the greeting:

   e.g.: mása l-kháyr. – mása n-nūr.

   | (a) kayf hālak? | (b) tfāḍdal. | (c) ṣabūḥ al-kháyr. |
   | (d) kayf hālik? | (e) márḥaba. |

2. Repeat the following greetings or responses, speaking to a woman:

   e.g.: tfāḍdal. – tfāḍdalī.

   | (a) kayf hālak? | (b) law samāht. | (c) ’int mabsūt? |
   | (d) márḥaba. | (e) ’áhlan bik. |

3. Repeat Ex. no. 2, speaking to a group:

   e.g.: tfāḍdal. – tfāḍdalū.

4. Repeat the following greetings or responses, speaking to a man:

   e.g.: min fādlık. – min fādlak.

   | (a) kayf hālkum? | (b) ’áhlan bikí. | (c) ṣabāḥ al-kháyr. |
   | (d) tfāḍdalī. | (e) 9áfwan. |

5. Make the expression feminine singular:

   e.g.: húwa ’inglīzī. – hiya ’inglīziya.

   | (a) mu9állim misrí | (b) ’int ’amáyrí? |
   | (c) mabsūt jiddan, shúkran. | (d) ’ána ’inglīzī. |
   | (e) húwa min al-’úrdun. |

6. Repeat Ex. no. 5, making the expression plural:

   e.g.: húwa ’inglīzī. – hum ’inglīz.
7. Make the expression masculine singular:
e.g.: 'ána mabsūta. – 'ána mabsūṭ.
(a) hum sûrfīn.       (b) mu9āllima 'inglīzīya
(c) 'infī lubnānīya? (d) fādiya                (e) fādiyīn

8. Answer the question:
e.g.: Peter muhāndis? – ná9am, húwa muhāndis.
(a) fu’ād muḥāṣib?       (b) fu’ād ’úrdūnī willa miṣrī?
(c) Peter mabsūṭ?        (d) hādhā l-mahāll fādi?    (e) kayf ḥālak?

9. Mark the stress:
e.g.: muhandis – muhāndis
(a) nushkuralla            (b) fādi, fādiya, fādiyīn     (c) mabsūṭīn
(d) 9arabī, 9arabīya, 9arab (e) ṭālib 'inglīzī
ad-dárs ath-thániya ï Lesson 2
fi l-maṭār ï At the Airport

1. al-ḥiwâr – Dialogue

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(fî l-muhâjara)</th>
<th>In Immigration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-ma’mûr:</td>
<td>hâdîrtak min wayn?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>min ‘ingîlîtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-ma’mûr:</td>
<td>jawâz sâfarak, min fâdîlak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>tifa’dal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kam</td>
<td>how much, how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqt</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tibqa</td>
<td>you stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-ma’mûr:</td>
<td>kam waqt tibqa fî l-‘ûrdun,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yâ sâyyid Brown?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shahr</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wâhid</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tâqrîban</td>
<td>approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwâyyis</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hay</td>
<td>here is, here are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jawâzak</td>
<td>= jawâz sâfarak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>shahr wâhid tâqrîban.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-ma’mûr:</td>
<td>kwâyyis. tifa’dal, hay jawâzak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-jûmruk</td>
<td>Customs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunâk</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wâra</td>
<td>behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an-nâs</td>
<td>the people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>shûkrân. wayn al-jûmruk,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min fâdîlak?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-ma’mûr:</td>
<td>hunâk, wâra n-nâs. tifa’dal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>shûkrân.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(fî l-jûmruk) (In Customs)

| ahlan wa sâhlan | welcome |
| shânta | suitcase. case |
| 9ândak | you have |

al-ma’mûr: ‘ahlan wa sâhlan. Welcome.
Peter: ‘ahlan bîk. Thank you.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>انتم:</td>
<td>How many cases do you have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ثالثة</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>كيس</td>
<td>bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>صغير</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>پیتر:</td>
<td>Three, and a small bag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>في</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>في ششانتا</td>
<td>there is, there are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مشروبات</td>
<td>in the bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>أَوْ</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>صغير</td>
<td>cigarette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتم:</td>
<td>What is there, in the case?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>في</td>
<td>things, possessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>شاهسی</td>
<td>personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>باس</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>پیتر:</td>
<td>No, only personal things;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ملبیس</td>
<td>clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>كاَم</td>
<td>(also:) some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>كتب</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>كتابة</td>
<td>thus, so; (here:) such</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>پیتر:</td>
<td>clothes, some books and the like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>زیارتک</td>
<td>your visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>طويل</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>پیتر:</td>
<td>Is your visit long?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>شهر وحید</td>
<td>Only one month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>جيد</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مرحبا</td>
<td>goodbye (response)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتم:</td>
<td>Very well. Goodbye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>پیتر:</td>
<td>Goodbye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 9یبَرَط – Expressions

hādīrtak (your presence) you. A polite way of addressing a stranger. It is in no way servile. It varies with the person(s) addressed: hādīrtik to a woman, hādīrtakum to a group. For referring to such a person or persons, we can use hādīrtu (m.), hādīrt-ha (f.), hādīrt-hum (pl.) The apparent irregularities in the stress are explained later.

‘أَهْلَان وَسَعْلَانِ Welcome (invariable greeting). The response is ‘أَهْلَان بِكَ/بِكَٰ/بِكَٰم. ma9 as-salāma ([بُس] with safety) Goodbye (invariable greeting).
Lesson 2

'álla yisállimak (God save you) Goodbye (response). This response agrees with the person or group addressed, thus:

(to a male person)  'álla yisállimak
(to a female person) 'álla yisállimik
(to a group)        'álla yisallímkum

3. mufradāt 'iqāfīya – Additional vocabulary. as-safarā – Travel

musāfir  traveller    râkhīb, pl. râkkâb   passenger(s)
tádhkara ticket       tâksi          taxi
sayyâra  car            'utubîs, bâš    bus
jąyyâra  aeroplane     'i'jra          fare
vîza     visa           'iqâma         stay, residence
maţâr    airport        şandûq         box, trunk
mughâdara departure   wusûl         arrival
ta' khir delay        muta'âkkhir    late, delayed
jâdwal   timetable      fu'lûs (pl.)   money
jînîyûh  pound (£)     dinâr          dinar
riyâl    rial, riyal    lîra           lira
doulâr   dollar         'ûro, yûro      euro

an-nâḥû – Grammar

4. Gender of nouns

Nouns (see 1/5) are either masculine or feminine. Feminine are:

- nouns denoting females;
- nouns denoting double parts of the body, which we shall point out as they occur;
- nouns ending in -a and not denoting males;
- a very small number of other nouns, which we shall point out as they occur.

All other nouns are masculine.

Examples:

f.:    mußâllima, fâlîba, shánta, sayyâra
m.:    mußâllim, fâlîb, kîs, 'îsm

There are a few exceptions to these rules; for example, mâsa is masculine. Such exceptions will also be noted as they occur.

Some words like dúktur are masculine but refer also to women.

5. Article

The definite article in English is the The Arabic definite article is used more than its English counterpart. It takes the form of a prefix, i.e. it is attached before the word which it defines. The article is invariable for gender or number. In transcription it is usual to show the attachment of the article with a hyphen. It has the form al- before most words: al-mußâllim, al-muđîfa, al-maţâr; but before words beginning with sounds pronounced with the tip or near-tip of the tongue, i.e. t, d, ð, ðh, dh, s, ð, sh, z, ð, r, l and n, the -l- of the article
assimilates, i.e. assumes the sound of that letter, which is then pronounced double:

\[ \text{as-sayyāra, ash-shānta, az-ziyāra, ad-daktur, an-nās} \]

The -a- of the assimilated article is always deepened (see Pronunciation) when next to the velarized consonants \( t, d, s \) and \( dz/z \); and is often deepened next to \( r \). In the examples shown below the deepened \( a \) is shown dotted, for clarity:

\[ \text{as-sūhufī, at-tayyāra, ar-rukkāb} \]

The vowel of the article is always weak and unstressed.

6. Agreement of adjectives

When an adjective is the complement (i.e. completes the sense) of a verb, including an implied verb \( \text{do beō} \) it agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies:

\[ \text{at-tābīb miṣrī. hiya lubnānīya. ar-rukkāb mabsū́m.} \]

But when it is not a complement, the adjective must in addition be definite if its noun is definite. The definite adjective takes the prefixed article, under the same rules as for nouns:

\[ \text{at-tābīb al-miṣrī hunāk. wayn al-mu9állima s-sūrāya?} \]

The inanimate plural rule (see 1/5) holds for adjectives, definite or not:

\[ (ar-)rukkāb (al-)’amayrkān but: (as-)sayyārah (al-)’amayrkāya} \]

7. Prepositions

Here are common prepositions (‘in’, ‘on’, etc.), some known to you:

- \( fī \) in
- \( bādi\)n without
- \( wāra \) behind
- \( ma9 \) with (accompanied by)
- \( bi\) with (by means of), in
- \( ‘illa, li \) to, for
- \( ba9d \) after
- \( fouq \) above
- \( hawl, hāwālī \) around, about
- \( bi sābah \) because of
- \( hatta \) until, as far as
- \( khilāl \) during
- \( bi khusūs \) concerning
- \( ‘illa \) except
- \( mithl \) like

A preposition governing a noun precedes that noun, as English:

\[ dākhil al-matār \text{ inside the airport} \]
\[ fī 9amān \text{ in Amman} \]

8. Possessive suffixes; Pronouns with prepositions

The possessive adjective (‘my, your etc.): takes the form of a suffix, i.e. it is attached after the noun denoting the person or thing ‘possessed’:

- \( -ī \) my
- \( -nā \) our
- \( -ak \) your (m.)
- \( -kum \) your (pl.)
These possessives correspond in person and use exactly to the personal pronouns given in 1/5.

After a noun ending in a consonant, the suffix has the form shown above:

- my9ālimī my teacher; kitābī his book; tabīna our doctor

After final -ī, the suffixes -ī, -ak, -ik and -u become -ya, -yak, -yik, -yu:

- muhāmiya, muhāmiyak, muhāmiyik, muhāmiyu my, your, his lawyer

The noun-ending -ā becomes -t before a suffix beginning with a vowel, and -ít before a suffix beginning with a consonant:

- sayyārtī with me, sayyārtak/sayyārīt-ka; sayyārītna, sayyārītkum, sayyārīt-hum my, your, his, (etc.) car

For ease of pronunciation, nouns ending in two consonants + -ā, or in -ta, -da, -t a, -d a keep their final vowel and add -t- before all the suffixes: shántati

A possessive suffix is also added to a preposition to express the pronoun governed by it. The meaning is then á`, g, á`, (etc.)

- bi: bīya or bīni, bi/kīki, bī/hīka; bīna, bīkum, bīnum

The prepositions ending in a vowel have the following forms when the suffixes are added; at the same time the suffix itself may be modified:

- vára: warā, warāk/warākī, warā/warāhā;
  warāna, warākum, warāhum

bī: biya or bīni, bīk/bīkī, bī with bīha;

bīna, bīkum, bīnum

9ālā: 9alāyy or 9alāyya, 9alāyak/9alāyik, 9alāy/9alāyha;

9alāyna, 9alāykum, 9alāyhum

9ālā follows the pattern of bi; 'īla and ḫawālī follow the pattern of 9āla.

* Throughout this book we show the accent on the last syllable of words like bī with it/himō/fī it/himō 9alāy 9ān it/himō (etc.), for clarity.
The modified ending (long vowel -ā or -ī, or vowel-combination -ay) of the preposition always carries the stress before a suffix; the 3rd person m. sing. has no suffix, but the stress remains, as shown.

Note that li has two forms: li, lak/lik, lu/lāha; lāna, lākum, lāhum and: ʿill/ʿilik, ʿilu/ʿilāha; ʿilna, ʿilkum, ʿilhum

hatta and ʿilla are not commonly used with pronouns.

9. kam
The adjective kam has two meanings. In statements, ʿomeā: little In questions: how much/many?
In both uses, it precedes the noun which it qualifies, which is always in the singular, even when a plural (animate or inanimate) is intended:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kam waqt</th>
<th>some/a little time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kam waqt?</td>
<td>how much time/how long?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kam rākib</td>
<td>some/a few passengers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kam rākib?</td>
<td>how many passengers?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In its interrogative use, it may also be a pronoun, i.e. stand without a noun:

| kam?           | how much? how many? |

10. Final long vowel
See Pronunciation, paragraph 9. A long vowel at the end of a word is shortened when followed by two consonants or a doubled consonant in the next word of the same phrase. This most commonly happens when the second word has the article. (The hyphen of the article is disregarded in pronunciation; it is purely a transcription device.) In this circumstance final -ā, -ī and -ū become respectively -a, -i and -u. Examine:

| kitābī hunāk. | but: kitābi l-9ārabī hunāk, |
| fīʾingīltra   | but: fī l-ʿīrdun; fī ʿīyyāra |

Long vowel rule: A final long vowel is shortened before two consonants or a double consonant in the same phrase.

11. fī
fī ʿān ḫā (2/8 above) also means there is/are or the corresponding interrogatives are there?āre there?

| fī nās khārij al-matār. | There are people outside the airport. |
| shū fī; shurenta? | What is there, in the suitcase? |

12. ‘to have’
The concept of have is not normally expressed with a verb in Arabic. We use the preposition ʿān withān the possession of

| ʿān, ʿānāka/ʿānak, ʿānā/kha; ʿānāna, ʿānakum, ʿānak-hum |
| dn my, your, his, her, its; our, your, their possession|
| ʿānwāt. | I have time. |
| ʿānsent. | He has a suitcase. |
9ind-hum 'aghřad shakhsīya. They have personal effects.
The expression with 9ind may be reinforced with fī ēhere is/areē
fī 9indak waqt? kam shânta (fī) 9indak?
The negative of this expression is mā fī 9ind (fi is obligatory here; note also that
the stress shifts to mā):
mā fī 9ind-hum véza. They have no visa.
mā fī 9indak waqt? Have you no time?
We avoid using 9ind in this possessive meaning directly with a noun. If a noun is
to be used, we restate with a pronoun suffix:
al-musâfir, 9indu véza. The passenger, he has a visa.ō

13. júmal mithālīya – Model sentences

al-musâfir, kam ūndu 9indu? How many boxes has the
traveller got?
wayne 'aghřadak? – hunâk, wâra s-sayyâra. Where are your things?
There, behind the car.
ar-rukkâb al-miṣriyîn, kam tādhkâra
9ind-hum?
malâbisik fī shântatik?
– ná9am, wa ūy ash-shânta. hiya
ghîra bas.
fī kam musâfir khârij al-jûmrûk. There are some travellers
outside Customs.

14. at-tamârîn – Exercises

1. Make definite with the article:
e.g.: maḥâl fâḏî – al-maḥâl al-fâḏî; sayyâra – as-sayyâra
(a) maṭâr (b) ziyyâra ṭawfî̇a (c) râkîb ‘amâyrî
(d) kîs ghîrî (e) ṭâbîb miṣrî

2. Make the suffix plural:
e.g.: maḥâlī – maḥâlîna; fîkî ē fîkum
(a) sayyârûtu (b) shântatîk (c) 9indu
(d) warâfî (e) ūnduqâk

3. Make indefinite:
e.g.: ar-râkîb al-lubnâni – râkîb lubnâni
(a) fī s-sayyâra (b) al-‘aghřad ash-shakhsīya
(c) tâdhkârtağk (d) shântâtkum

4. Make a sentence:
e.g.: ānâ, sayyâra – 9indê sayyâra.
(a) hum, tâdhkâra (b) hiya, shânta ghîrâ (c) ūti, fulûs
(d) at-ţâlib, kam kitâb (e) at-ţâlibî, waqt
5. Make the suffix singular:
e.g.: ziyārikum – ziyārtak, ziyārtik
(a) kitābna    (b) tadhkarit-hum    (c) fulūskum
(d) ’amāhmum  (e) warāhum         (f) fīna
(g) ’ilāyhum  (h) 9alāykum        (j) 9ānhum
(k) minkum

6. Make the adjective agree:
e.g.: sayyāra (’almānī) – sayyāra ’almānīya
(a) rukkāb (lubnānī)    (b) ṭayyāra (muta’ākhkhir)
(c) al-mu9āllim (sūrī)  (d) ṣūhuf (9ārabī)    (e) dīnār (kuwāyfī)
Lesson 3
fi l-`utáyl ū In the Hotel

1. al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār – Narrative and Dialogue
(Peter recounts his arrival at the hotel.)

làmma
kharājt
bināya
when
I came/went out
building
Peter: làmma kharājt min bināyat
al-matār,
wağādt
musāfirēn
kthīr, ikthīr
sayyārāt
When I came out of the
airport building,
I found
travellers
much/many
cars
wajādt musāfirēn ikthīr u
sayyārāt ikthīr.
I found many travellers and
many cars.
9īrīf
'utāyl
walākin
I knew
hotel
but
mā 9īrīf
tarīq (m./f.)
I did not know
road
bālad
I knew the name of the hotel,
but I didn’t know the road to
town,
9īrīf 'ism al-'utāyl, walākin
mā 9īrīf tarīq al-bālad.
I knew the name of the hotel,
but I didn’t know the road to
town,
̣talābt min
sawwāq
'īnnu
yākhūdhmī
u talābt min sawwāq tākṣī
dataxīn yākhūdhmī ‘īla l-'utāyl.
I asked, I requested
driver
that he
he takes me
and I asked a taxi driver to
take me (dat he takes me) to
the hotel.
̣rikīb
tarākna
wa rikīb at-tākṣī u tarākna
l-matār.
I mounted, got in
we left
I got into the taxi, and we
left the airport.
̣yā sidna
filadīlfiya
tikram
sir
Philadelphia
certainly
as-sawwāq: li wayn, yā sidna?
Where to, sir?
Peter: li `utāyl filadīlfiya, min fāḍlak.
To the Philadelphia Hotel, please.
as-sawwāq: tikram.
Certainly
Peter: shūkran.
Thank you.
wisilna we arrived
bāb door
kbīr, ikbīr
we arrived in front of the door of a big hotel.

ba9d kam waqt wisilna
After some time we arrived in
quddām bāb 'utáyl ikbīr.

we got out of the taxt, paid the
I went got down
suitcases, cases
I paid
I entered

nizīlt
I went/got down
daʃā9t
I paid
dakhlāt
I entered

shantāt
suitcases, cases

nizīlt min at-tāksī u daʃī9t
I got out of the taxt, paid the fare and went into the
'újratu u dakhält al-'utáyl
hotel with my suitcases.

maw shantāt
reception
istiqbāl
employee, clerk

muwazzaf
he asked me, enquired of me
sa‘ālni
At Reception, the clerk asked me my name

9ind al-istiqbāl, al-muwazzaf
At Reception, the clerk asked me my name
sa‘ālni 'ismī

'talab
he asked for, requested

'āydan
also

hammāl
porter

yākhudh
he takes

fouq
(also:) up

ghūrfa
room

u 'talab minni jawāz sāfarī.
and asked me for my passport. He also asked the
'talab 'āydan min hammāl
hotel porter to take (that he
al-'utáyl 'īnu yākhudh
takes) my cases up to my room.

shantāt fouq 'ila ghūrfa. "

ba9d mā
after

kātab
he wrote

9unwān
address

ba9d mā kātab muwazzaf
After the reception clerk wrote my name and (my)
al-istiqbāl 'ismī wa 9unwānī,
address,

'akhādht I took
miftāh key

'ili9t I went up

'ūuda = ghūrfa

fatāht
I opened

'amārt
I ordered

futūr
breakfast

'akhādht miftāh ghūrfa u 'ila9t
I took my room key, went up
to 'ila (my) room, opened

'ilā l- 'ūuda u fatāht shantāt
LESSON 3

2. 9ibrāt – Expressions

tikram Certainly. Varies with the person(s) addressed: tikramū to a woman, tikramū to a group. There is no prescribed response.

ba9d kam waqt after some time

3. mufradāt ʿidāfiya – Additional vocabulary – al-ʿutāyl

dayf guest
baywāb doorman
ghadāʿ lunch
fārsha bed
mukhāddā pillow
ḥammām bath
ʿasansāy lift
maftūḥ open
ʿōudat noun, ghūrfat noun
ʿōudat ḥammām, ghūrfat ḥammām

an-nāḥū – Grammar

4. Construct

Examine the expressions

bināyat al-matār the airport building
ʿism al-ʿutāyl the name of the hotel
ṭariq al-bālād the road to town
miftāḥ ghūrfī my room key
shant Peter ʿōudat noun, ghūrfat noun
ʿōudat ḥammām, ghūrfat ḥammām

In each of these expressions, the two nouns are associated; the association is often possession, but not always so. Such an expression is called a construct. For convenience we can call the first noun of the construct the theme, and the second noun the attribute. In the constructs shown here both nouns are definite; the attribute is obviously definite because it has an article or a possessive suffix, or because it is a proper noun (e.g. Peter); the theme looks indefinite but is deemed to be made definite by the attribute. These are definite constructs.

Indefinite constructs also exist; in these, both nouns have the indefinite form:

muwāzaf ʿukāma a government employee
miftāḥ ghūrfā a room key

Nouns ending in -a add -t when used as the theme of a construct:

ʿūjrat tāksī a taxi fare
ʿūjrat at-ṭāksī the taxi fare
sayyārat ad-ḍuktār the doctorārī car

We may have a ‘string’ construct with more than two nouns, each noun but the last being defined by its successor:

miftāḥ ghūrfat at-ṭabīb the doctorārī room key

It is a most important rule that only the last noun of a construct may have a definite ‘marker’, i.e. a definite article or a possessive suffix, or be a proper noun.
Construct rule: Only the last noun in a construct may be explicitly defined.

An adjective cannot interrupt a construct. It must follow it, whichever noun it qualifies:

\[ \text{'ism al-utáyl al-úrduní} \quad \text{muðir al-bank al-mísirí} \]

The second of these expressions has two possible meanings: the Egyptian bank manager or the manager of the Egyptian bank. We shall learn later how to avoid the ambiguity.

5. The triliteral verb – roots and root letters

A verb is a word denoting an action which is performed or a situation which is experienced: arrived, knows

Most Arabic verbs are triliteral, i.e. built on a root consisting of three letters. The root is not a word; it is simply the theoretical base. A typical triliteral root is \( k t b \); the three letters are its root letters, which remain through all forms of the verb.

Spoken Arabic has five classes of triliteral verb, of which we deal with two in this lesson.

In English we quote a verb by its so-called infinitive form, e.g. \( \text{do write} \). Arabic has no such form; it denotes its verbs by their simplest or basic form, which is the húwa form of the past tense, e.g. kátab. In a sentence this means \( \text{the wrote} \), but in the vocabulary we quote it as \( \text{do write} \), following English practice.

6. Past tense of sound verbs

Sound verbs are so called because their three root letters – initial, middle and final – are all consonants and are all ‘stable’, i.e. invariable. We add the following personal endings to the basic form to make the past tense (\( \text{did/do have done} \)):

\[
\begin{align*}
('ána) & -t & I & ('íhna) & -na & \text{we} \\
('ínt) & -t & \text{you (m.)} & ('íntū) & -tū & \text{you (pl.)} \\
('ínti) & -ti & \text{you (f.)} \\
(huíwa) & - (no ending) & \text{he, it} & (hum) & -ū & \text{they (animate)} \\
(híya) & -at & \text{she, it} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Thus, for kátab (\( \text{the wrote} \), \( \text{do write} \) root \( k t b \)):

\[
\begin{align*}
('ána) & \text{katábt} & ('íhna) & \text{katábna} \\
('ínt) & \text{katábt} & ('íntū) & \text{katábtū} \\
('ínti) & \text{katábti} \\
(huíwa) & \text{katáb} & (hum) & \text{katábū} \\
(híya) & \text{katábat} \\
\end{align*}
\]

I, you, he, she; we, you, they wrote/have written/has written.

The pronouns are used only for emphasis or extra clarity.

So also: khárāj to come/go out, root \( k h r j \):

\[
kharájt, kharájt/kharájti, khárāj/kharájat; kharájna, kharájitu, khárājū
\]

I, you, he, she; we, you, they came/went out

I, you, he, she; we, you, they have/have come/gone out

The vowels vary from verb to verb; \( a-\) is the commonest pattern.

You can now understand the following sound verbs in the text:
LESSON 3

Root 9 r f, basic form 9irift to know; 9irift I knew
Root r k b, rikib to mount, get in; rikibt I mounted, got in
so also: tarákna we left nizílt I got down/out
dafá9t I paid dakhált I entered
ţílţí I went up futáht I opened
talált I requested tálab he requested

To the persons shown above we can add the inanimate dheyô form, which is always the same as dheô (inanimate plural rule, see 1/5); it is used only where it can make sense, e.g. (hiya) khârajat dhey (animals, things) went out (hiya) jîli9at dhey went up Since it is completely regular, it is not shown separately in the verb tables in this book.
The past tense is also called, in some books, the perfect tense.

7. Verbs with root letter hâmza
Verbs which have as initial or middle root letter hâmza (’ – see Pronunciation) count as sound verbs in spoken Arabic. We have encountered in the past tense:
Root ’ m r, basic form ’ámar to order:
’amárt, ’amárt/amárti, ’ámárt, ’ámár I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) ordered
Root ’ kh dh, basic form ’ákhadh to take:
’akhádht, ’akhádht/’akhádhti, ’ákhadh/’ákhadh; ’ákhadhna, ’ákhadh, ’ákhadhû I, you, he, she; we, you, they took, have/has taken

To these we can add the common verb ’ákal to eat, root ’ k l:
’akált, ’akált/’akálti, ’ákal/’ákalat; ’akálna, ’ákal, ’ákalû I, you, he, she; we, you, they ate, have/has eaten

Verbs with hámza as final root letter behave differently. We study them later.

8. Initial-w verbs
Verbs with initial root letter w (’initial-w verbs’) follow the sound-verb pattern in the past tense. Examine:
Root w s l, basic form wísil to arrive:
wisîlt, wisîlt/wisîlti, wiśil/wiśilat; wiśilna, wiśil, wiśilû I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) arrived

Root w j d basic form wájad to find:
wajádt, wajádt/wajádî, wájad/wájadat; wajádtna, wajádt, wájadû I, you, he, she; we, you, they (have/has) found

9. Negative of the past tense
Any verb in the past tense can be made negative by putting the particle mâ before it:
mâ 9irift I didn’t know mâ wiśilû? haven’t they arrived?
mâ ’akálna we didn’t eat
10. Use of the past tense.
The past tense is used in Arabic for any completed action or situation:

- mā wīslū 9wālā l-waqt. (They didn’t arrive/haven’t arrived on time.)
- ‘akhādht al-fulūs? (Did you take/Have you taken the money?)
- mā 9īrif al-9unwān. (He did not know the address.)

It can be used for pluperfect actions (I had done):

- ba9d mā kātab ‘ísmī, ‘akhādht al-miftāh. (After he wrote/had written my name, I took the key.)

A pluperfect tense exists, but it is little used. We learn it later.

11. Long vowel
The long vowel rule (2/10) applies to the endings of verbs, as it does everywhere else:

- táarakū they left but: táraku l-ma‘āf. (They left the airport.)
- ‘akáltū you ate but: ‘akāltu l-fu‘ūr? (Have you eaten breakfast?)

12. Word-order
The subject of a verb (i.e. the person or thing performing the action or experiencing the situation) usually precedes its verb, as in English:

- ar-rukkāb wīslū. (The passengers have arrived.)

But the verb may precede the subject in two possible circumstances; either to emphasise the verb:

- wīslū r-rukkāb. (The passengers (really) have arrived.)

or when the subject is much longer than the verb:

- ba9d mā kātab muwāzaf al-‘istiqbāl 9smī u 9unwānī ... (After the reception clerk wrote my name and address ...)

This word-order is borrowed from written Arabic, in which it is common.

13. Sound plurals of nouns
In 1/10 we studied the sound masculine plural pattern of certain adjectives. Some masculine nouns denoting people (‘sound masculine animate nouns’) also make their plural on this pattern:

- for sing. ending -ī, add -yīn:
  - šūhīfī a journalist šūhīfiyīn journalists
  - mīsřī an Egyptian mīsřīyīn Egyptians

- for any other sing. ending, add -īn:
  - muhāndīs an engineer muhāndīsīn engineers
  - al-musāfīr the traveller al-musāfīrīn the travellers

Sound masculine inanimate nouns, and all sound feminine nouns whether animate or inanimate, make their plural on the so-called sound feminine pattern.

This pattern is found only with nouns:

- for f. sing. ending -a, substitute -āt:
  - šūhīfyā a journalist (f.) šūhīfyāt journalists
  - mīsřīyā an Egyptian lady mīsřīyāt Egyptian ladies
  - ash-shārika the company ash-shārikāt the companies
as-sayyāra the car as-sayyarāt the cars

- for the (very rare) m. sing. ending -a, add -yāt:
al-māsā the evening al-masayāt the evenings

- for any other sing. ending, add -āt:
maṭār airport maṭārāt airports

All sound plurals, masculine and feminine, are stressed on the ending.

The following nouns learned so far (in addition to those given above) have sound plurals, animate or inanimate:

- all nīṣba adjectives used as nouns, except ‘amāyrkī, ‘inglīzī, hindī and 9arabī in the masculine (plurals ‘amayrkān, ‘inglīz, hunūd and 9arabāb);
- all nouns ending in -a except ghūrfa, ‘iṇḍa and tādhkara;
- all nouns beginning with mu-, except mudīr;
- ‘asansāyr, ‘utāyl, bawwār, ḥammāl, ḥammānī, ḥisāb, jāwāz, jīnāyī, ma’mūr, riyyāl, sāwāq, ʂabāb, tākstit, vēzā.

The other nouns learned so far have so-called ‘broken’ (= irregular) plurals, which we shall study later.

The only difference between sound noun plural and sound adjective plural endings is that nouns also have the sound feminine ending -āt.

In Arabic the plural noun does not denote more than one but more than two of a kind; for two of a kind we use not the plural, but the dual form of the noun, which is studied in Lesson 4.

14. Verbs with plural subjects
The inanimate plural rule (1/5) holds for the third person of verbs:

\[
al\text{-musāfirīn dākhālu l-maṭār.}
\]
\[
as\text{-sayyārāt dākhālat al-maṭār.}
\]

The travellers entered the airport.

15. Time expressions
munḏ and min are used with present time-sequence for a situation beginning in the past and lasting into the present:

\[
hūwa hunḏ/ min waqīt tawīl.
\]

He’s been there (since) a long time.

qabl before an expression of time means ‘... ago’ for a past action or situation:

\[
wīṣilā qabl shahr.
\]

They arrived a month ago.

16. ‘to ask’
Distinguish between the two verbs meaning ḏo askō

\[
sā’al to ask a question, to enquire
\]
\[
tālab min to ask for something, to request
\]

sā’al takes two direct objects*; tālab has one direct object (the thing sought), and one prepositional object* (the person asked) after min:

\[
sa’āl ar-rākib ‘īsmu. tālab at-tādhkara min ar-rākib.
\]

* a direct object is the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb; a prepositional object is indirectly affected, i.e. through a preposition such as ḏo, with, fromō
17. *kthīr* ‘much, many’

This adjective has a regular feminine but a ‘broken’ plural: f. *kthīra*, pl. *kthār*. But it is common to use the masculine *kthīr* for all forms:

- waqt *ikthīr* (m.)
- qāhwa *kthīr* (f.)
- fulūs *ikthīr* (inan. pl.)
- nās *ikthīr* (an. pl.)

The following paragraph explains the initial vowel of forms like *ikthīr*.

18. Transition vowel

When three consonants form a block which is difficult to pronounce, a transition or relief vowel is introduced after the first of the consonants. This vowel is *i*, which is never stressed. Examine:

- ’ākhadhu *kthīr* (no block)
- (nās *kthīr*)
- shānta *sghūr* (no block)
- shantāt isghīra (block *t-s-gh*.
- ḥādīrt-ḥa, ḥādīr-ḥum (no block)
- ḥādīrta, ḥādīrtak (block *d-r-t*).
- shānta *kbīr* (no block)
- but: ash-shānta li-*kbīr* (block *l-k-b*).

This explains the apparently anomalous stress of words like *fādīl* (Lesson 1) and *kbīr* given in the vocabulary.

When neighbouring consonants in the block are identical or compatible, we pronounce without the transition vowel:

- ash-shānta s-ṣghīra kīs sghīr ‘akhādhkt tāksī.

19. *jumal mithāliya* – Model sentences

- ’ākhādhu l-’asansāyr u nizilna’ ila masbahān al-’utāyl.

  We took the lift and went down to the hotel swimming-pool.

  kamān batṭāniya fi ṣhuṛtī, law samāḥt.

  Another blanket in my room, please.

  kayf māt9am al-’utāyl, ‘akáltū fi?

  How the hotel restaurant, have you eaten in it?

  rukkāb at-tayyāra l-miṣrīya wīsīlū, wałatākin ba9d kam waqt tāraku l-’utāyl.

  The passengers of the Egyptian aircraft arrived, but after some time they left the hotel.

  9ind al-istiṣqābīl sa’alū ’īsmū u 9unwānī fī ʿamāyrka.

  At Reception they asked my name and address in America.

20. *at-tamārin* – Exercises

  1. Make definite constructs:

     e.g.: bāb, ’utāyl – bāb al-’utāyl
     (a) shantāt, musāfir
     (b) sayyāra, muḍīna
     (c) miftāḥ, ’ouḍa, fu’ād
2. Make definite constructs with the noun [at-][lib]:
e.g.: 'ism – 'ism at-[lib]
(a) shánta
(b) shantát
(c) 'aghrád

3. Make plural:
e.g.: muhándis – muhandisín
(a) mu9állim
(b) sayyára
(c) mu9állima
(d) mtár
(e) musáfir

4. Make plural:
e.g.: wísil. – wísilū.
(a) dákhalat.
(b) ána nizílt.
(c) shū 'amárti?
(d) 'int mà dafā9t.
(e) at-ťayyára tili9at 9ala l-waqt.

5. Make singular:
e.g.: musáfirín – musáfir
(a) mu9allimát
(b) mtárát
(c) màtárát
(d) muhandisín
(e) 9árab

6. Make negative:
e.g.: tárak al-’utáyl al-youm. – mà táarak al-’utáyl al-youm.
(a) wajádt as-sayyára.
(b) dakhált al-ghúrfa?
(c) shú ’amárti?
(d) at-tákśi wísil ʻilak.
(e) al-musáfirín nízílū min al-ťayyára.

7. Give the opposite:
e.g.: ‘amám al-bináya – wára l-bináya
dakhált al-ghúrfa. – kharájt min al-ghúrfa.
(a) rikíbt at-tákśi.
(b) dakhil al-júmruk
(c) at-ťayyára nízílát.
(d) fouq al-fársha
(e) ʻila l-bálad

8. Add the adjective ʻurúbbi, making it agree:
e.g.: muhandisín – muhandisín ʻurubbiyín
(a) sayyára
(b) sayyárát
(c) ʻîluna
(d) rukkáb
(e) ʻinti
Lesson 4
fi l-balad ī In Town

1. al-ḥiwar

Peter: 9afwan, wayn bank at-ṭānmiya?

fi sh-shāri9: al-bank fi sh-shāri9 ath-thālith
9ala yamīnak. bināya kbira, raqm tis9a.

Peter: u ba9dayn 9alayy mou9id fi s-sifāra l-britānīya.

ash-shakhs: hādhi mish fī hādha l-ḥaṣay

ash-shakhs: hādhi mish fī hādha l-ḥaṣay.

Peter: shukran jazīlan.

ash-shakhs: 9afwan.

sayyida
bouṣṭa  post office
intāḏir, intāţir  wait
shway  a little
'āyna9am  = na9am

Peter:  9afwan yā sayyidatī, fī bouṣṭa huna?
as-sayyida:  bouṣṭa? intāḏir shwayy. ʿāyna9am.


'ishāra  signal, sign
murūr  traffic
mish kadha?  isnā that so?
imshī  walk (here:) go
shimāl  left
mitr  metre

hunāk ʿishārat murūr, mish kadha? ʿimshī ʿila shimālak 9ind al-ʿishāra, wa l-bouṣṭa ba9d kam mitr, 9ala shimālak,

There is a traffic light over there, isnā there? Go to your left at the light, and the post office is after a few metres, on your left,

sitta  six
sab9a  seven
mammūn  grateful
khı̂r  (also:) very
shi  thing
mā fi shī  there's nothing.
raqm sitta, sab9a, kadha.

number six, seven, something like that.

Peter:  mammūn ikthīr
as-sayyida:  9afwan. mā fi shī.

I'm very grateful.

Peter:  ʿila s-sifāra l-briṭāniya, min ḥadlak
as-sawwāq:  9ala raʿsī.

To the British Embassy, please.

Peter:  ba9d, ya9nī?
as-sawwāq:  la', khamsa, 9ashra daqāyiq.
Peter:  ṭayyib.
as-sawwāq:  9afwan yā sīdī, ḥaḍīrtak ʿamayrī?

Certainly
Is it far?
No, five, ten minutes.
Good.

Excuse me sir, are you
Peter: la’ inghiizi, min Cambridge, simi9t 9annu?  
									American?
as-sawwaaq: tab9an, jami9a ma9rufa. fa wayn darast al-lugha l-9arabita?  
									Of course, a famous university. So where did you study the Arabic language?
Peter: darast-ha fi suriya, fi dimashq. qabl kam sana.  
									I studied it in Syria, in Damascus. A few years ago.
as-sawwaaq: wallahi, 9imilt-ha kwayyis jiddan. 9indak lahja jamila.  
									Good Heavens, you did it very well. You have a good accent.

Peter: latif jiddan.  
									Very kind (of you).
as-sawwaaq: sahih ya9nii.  
									But it’s true.

Peter: kam takhudh?  
as-sawwaaq: ilak, dina rayn.  
Peter: hay khamsa. 9indak fakka?  
									Here are five. Have you got change?

m9alaysh  
never mind, all right
as-sawwāq: mā9alaysh, 9indī. tfāddal. ma9 as-salāmā.

Peter: shukran, ’alla yisallimak.

That’s all right, I’ve got ma9 as-salāma. Here you are. Goodbye.

2. 9ibārāt
mish kadha? Isn’t that so? mamnūn ikthīr, mamnūna ikthīr lān/We’re very grateful. mamnūn ikthīr, mamnūn na kthīr, mamnūn nīn ikthīr

mā’īsh (stress on mā’īsh) It’s nothing.

9ala ra’sī (’on my head) Certainly (complying with a request). Note also, with the same meaning: 9ala 9aynī ’on my eye.

abān (’naturally) of course ya9nī (’it means) that is to say. Also er ... (looking for one’s word).

wallāhi ( ’God) Good Heavens. Expresses surprise or admiration.

kam tākhudh? How much do you charge (of course). kam tākhudh? You don’t mind?

3. mufradāt ’idāfīya
al-balad wa l-bināyāt wa l-ma’mūrīn – Town, buildings, officials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>madkhal</td>
<td>entrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maktab</td>
<td>office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maktaba</td>
<td>library, bookshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustashfa</td>
<td>(masc.) hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukān</td>
<td>shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shurf</td>
<td>policeman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouqif baṣ</td>
<td>bus stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sālah, maydān</td>
<td>square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masjid</td>
<td>mosque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timhāl</td>
<td>statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qunsāliya</td>
<td>consulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wakāla</td>
<td>agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wizāra</td>
<td>ministry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wizārat/wazīr:</td>
<td>Ministry/Minister of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-sināḥa</td>
<td>Industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at-tijāra</td>
<td>Trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>az-zirāḥa</td>
<td>Agriculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-sihāḥa</td>
<td>Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-māliyā**</td>
<td>Finance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as-ṣināḥa</td>
<td>Industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at-tijāra</td>
<td>Trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>az-zirāḥa</td>
<td>Agriculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-ṣihāḥa</td>
<td>Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-māliyā**</td>
<td>Finance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-māliyā**</td>
<td>Finance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Demonstratives

Here are the demonstrative adjectives or pronouns 9hīs, that, these, thoseō

an-naḥū
The inanimate plural rule (1/5) applies here. The demonstrative adjective precedes its noun, which always has the article:

- **hadhā l-maktab**  
  This office
- **hadhī s-sayyida**  
  This lady
- **hadhoul an-nās**  
  These people
- **hadhī sh-shantāt**  
  These cases

**hadhāk** (etc.) is used only when remoteness is emphasised; otherwise we use **hadhā** (etc.) for both **this/these** and **that/those**.

When used as a pronoun (i.e. with no noun), the demonstrative has the appropriate gender and number of the inferred noun:

- **hadhā tayyib.**  
  This is good.
- **hadhī tayyiba.**  
  This is/These are good. (of things)
- **hadhoul tayyibīn.**  
  These are good. (of people)

If the noun is unknown, the masculine is used:

**shū hadha?**  
What is this?

For **đhis** is ...őwe restate with a pronoun. This is optional if the noun does not carry an article, but obligatory when it does:

- **hadhā (huwa) kitāb/kitābī.**  
  This is a book/my book.

but:  
**hadhā huwa l-kitāb.**  
This is the book.

Since **hadhā l-kitāb** ... means only **đhis book** ...őand is not a full sentence.

### 5. **hadhā** in constructs

When a demonstrative adjective qualifies the attribute (i.e. the last noun) of a construct (3/4), it precedes that noun, interrupting the construct:

- **ṭarīq hadhā l-balad**  
  This road to town
- **raqm hadhī s-sayyāra**

When it qualifies the theme (i.e. any earlier noun in the construct), it must follow the whole construct;

- **ṭarīq al-balad hadhā/hādhi**
  This road to town
- **raqm as-sayyāra hadhā**  
  This car number

**Demonstrative rule:** A demonstrative is the only word which may interrupt a construct.

### 6. Object pronouns

A direct object pronoun (**đne, him** etc) takes the form of a suffix attached to the verb. These suffixes are identical to the possessive suffixes (2/8), except for **đneồ** which is -nī:

- **sa’alnī, sa’alak/sa’ālik, sa’alw/sa’alha; sa’alna, sa’alum, sa’alhum**  
  He asked me, you, him (etc.)

When the verb form ends in a vowel, that vowel is stressed and the suffixes beginning with a vowel take the same form as with ā:

- **sa’alnī, sa’alūk/sa’alūki, sa’alū, sa’alūna, sa’alūkum, sa’alūhum**  
  They asked me, you, him (etc.)
**7. 'inn: Indirect statements**

A direct statement quotes another’s words verbatim: 他说: 我病了。An indirect statement paraphrases: 他说他病了。
The conjunction 'inn 连is used to introduce indirect statements. A pronoun following 'inn is expressed as a direct-object suffix attached to it. The second n is dropped before -nī and -na:

- 'innī, 'innak/'innik, 'innu/'innha; 'inna, 'innkum, 'innhum

that I, you, he, she; we, you, they ...

Indirect statement follows not only a verb of saying, but also a verb of perceiving. Further, in the Arabic indirect statement we retain the time-sequence or tense of the original statement. Compare the Arabic and English:

- 他说他病了 near here. 他说他知道他在办公室。

We can omit the conjunction, as in English; we then use the subject (i.e. personal) pronoun:

- 他说他病了 near here. 他说他知道他在办公室。

The construction with 'inn is considered more elegant.

**Indirect speech rule**: In indirect speech the verb retains the tense of the original speaker.

**8. walākin**

The conjunction walākin, meaning 但can also take the appropriate object-pronoun suffix; its final -n doubles before a suffix beginning with a vowel:

- walākinī, walākinak/walākinik, walākinū/walākinū;
  - walākinna, walākinikum, walākinhum

but I, you, he, she; we, you, they ...

With walākin, the suffix is not obligatory as with 'inn:

- 他说他病了 near here. 他说他知道他在办公室。

Note also the shortened form 9a + definite noun, meaning 但

9a dimashq to Damascus 9a l-bank to the bank
10. hay

hay + pronoun suffix takes the form hay-:

hayānī, hayāk/hayākī, hayā/hayāhā; hayāna, hayākum, hayāhum

here I am, here you are (etc.)

11. Numbers

Cardinal numbers (i.e. those denoting a quantity) from 0 to 10 are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>šifr</td>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>m. wāhid, f. wāhida</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>īfr</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>thalātha</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ārba9a</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>khamsa</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>sītta</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>sāb9a</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>thamāniya</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>tis9a</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>9āshra</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

- 0 is a noun, and cannot be used with a further noun.
- 1 follows its noun and agrees with it: ghurfa wāhida dīnār wāhid
- 2 has masculine and feminine forms, used mostly in counting, otherwise the quantity ḍwoās better expressed with the dual of the noun; see below.
- 3 to 10 inclusive are invariable for gender; the counted noun follows them if indefinite:

thalātha muhandisin three engineers
tis9a shantāt nine suitcases

But if the noun is definite, the number behaves like an adjective:

rukkābna l-ārba9a our four passengers
al-bināyāt al-jamāla th-thamāniya the eight beautiful buildings

12. Dual

The quantity ḍwoās normally expressed with the dual form of the noun itself. All nouns, whether sound or not, form the dual with the stressed ending -áyn added to the singular, as follows:

- nouns ending in a consonant, add -áyn:
  safrāyn = two ambassadors
- masculine nouns ending in -ā or -ā, add -yāyn:
  suhfiyāyn = two journalists
  mustashfayāyn = two hospitals
- feminine nouns ending in -ā (not -ta/ta), substitute -tāyn:
  mu9allātāyn = two teachers
  sayyārtāyn = two cars
- feminine nouns ending in -ta/ta, add -tāyn:
  shantatāyn = two suitcases

When adding a possessive suffix to a dual noun, drop the final -n and follow the pattern of 9āla (2/8):

kitābāya, kitābāk/kitābākī, kitābā/kitābāhā; kitābānā, kitābākum, kitābāhum = both my, your (etc.) books

Adjectives qualifying dual nouns of any kind are always in the animate plural form:

wazārāyn 'almāniyān = two German ministers
sayyārtāyn 'almāniyān = two German cars
Dual noun rule: An adjective (including a demonstrative) qualifying a dual noun is always in the animate plural form, even when the noun itself is inanimate.

13. mish
To negate any word or expression other than a verb, we use not mā but mish preceding the negated word or expression. We also use mish to negate the inferred verb do beʾīn present time:

- al-bank mish baʾīd 9an huna. The bank isnā far from here.
- mish sitta, walākin sab9a. Not six, but seven.
- mish ʿana! Not I/me!
- mish kadha? Isnā that so?

14. Adverbs
Many common adjectives can be used, in the m. sing. form, as adverbs (see 1/11). This is true of kwayyis and kthīr, among others:

- shughlha kwayyis. Her work is good. (adjective)
- 9imilat shughlha kwayyis. She did her work well. (adverb)

The adverb kthīr very may precede the modified word, breaking the qualifying word rule (1/11):

- shughlha kwayyis ikthīr/kthīr kwayyis.
- 9imilat shughlha kwayyis ikthīr/kthīr kwayyis.

Some adverbs can be repeated to show intensity:

- kthīr ikthīr very much, lots and lots
- shwayy ishwayy little by little, gradually

15. jumal mithāliya
After his appointment with the ambassador, he left the embassy and took a taxi to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.

There are six ministries and two embassies in this part of town.

Go right at the lights and our office is on your left.

Eight passengers arrived after the aeroplane had taken off.

He came out of university but found no work for a long time.
16. **at-tamārīn**

1. Add the right form of *hādha*:
   e.g.: dukkān – hādha d-dukkān
   (a) shurtī (b) madkhal (c) wazīr al-żamāl
   (d) timthāl (e) sayyārā ’amārkīya

2. Add the object pronoun suffix:
   e.g.: 9irift (huwa) – 9iriftu
   (a) 9irifna (huwa) (b) mā katabna (hiya) (c) simi9 (’ana)
   (d) ṭalabū min (’int) (e) shū sa’altū (huwa)?

3. Make the sentence negative:
   e.g.: wisilū – mā wisilū. huwa mabsūt – huwa mish mabsūt
   (a) dakhalt al-bank. (b) hādha kthīr 9alayk. (c) Ŧī 9indak fakka?
   (d) katabu kwāyyis. (e) shughlu kwāyyis.

4. Make dual:
   e.g.: tadkhkara – tadhkartayn; al-mu9allim – al-mu9allimayn
   (a) sayyāra (b) sayyāra ’amārkīya (c) al-balad
   (d) suhufl (e) kitābu

5. Put the number with the noun:
   e.g.: mahall (3) – thalāthu maḥallāt
   (a) shanta (1) (b) muhandis (4) (c) rākib (2)
   (d) shurtī (6) (e) al-mustashfa (5)
ad-dars al-khāmisī  Lesson 5
fi l-maktabī  In the Office

1. al-ḥiwar
(Peter calls at the Amman office to start his assignment.)

9abdarrāḥmān

'alshkurak
lutfī
fanni

9abdarrāḥmān: 'ahlan yā sayyid Brown. Welcome, Mr Brown.
tfaddal. Please come in.

Peter: 'ashkurak. Thank you.

9abdarrāḥmān: 'ana 9abdarrāḥmān lutfi, the Technical Manager.
al-mudīr al-fanni. kayf al-ḥāl? How are you?

Peter: mabsūt jiddan, shukran. kayf ḥālak 'int?

al-ḥamdulilla = (al-)hamdilla
tawla
khallīnī
'alshraḥ

9abdarrāḥmān: al-ḥamdulilla. tfaddal yā sayyid Peter, qabil jawlītak
fi l-bināya, khallinni 'ashraḥ, let me 'ashrah u shughli ash-sharika,

Peter: min al-kharij tizhar ash-sharika
kbīra. kam shakhṣ fī, fi kull
ash-sharika?

9āmm

9āmm

Peter: From the outside the company looks big. How
many people are there, in the whole company?

mīya

tisṭīn

hundred
ninety
division, department
fifteen
twenty
Not many, 190 employees. Some departments have only fifteen or twenty people.
responsible for planning
as
you know
present
thirty
number
specialising, specialist
esential, vital
responsible for planning, as you know. We have thirty staff. A number of them are specialists in technical planning. That’s essential for us.
she enters
Maryam (name)
secretary
you know
Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
knowledge, acquaintance
cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
knowledge, acquaintance
Ms Brown, one of our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
meeting
happy
Excuse me, Abdarrahman.
Maryam, you don’t know
Peter Brown, our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
knowledge, acquaintance
Ms Brown, one of our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
knowledge, acquaintance
Ms Brown, one of our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
knowledge, acquaintance
Ms Brown, one of our specialists from Cambridge. Peter, my secretary Maryam Hilal.
LESSON 5

Peter: furša sa9ida, yā sitt maryam.

"ahlan biki.
muhimm
sū‘āl
'aktub bi l-mākīna

jawāb
risāla
ad-douḥa

Pleased to meet you
also, Mrs Hilal.
important
question
I type, I’m typing
(with the
machine
reply
letter
Doha

9abdarrāḥmān: tfaddalī yā maryam; fī shī
muhimm?

maryam: su’āl isghir, yā 9abdarrāḥmān.

A small question,
Abdarrahman. I’m typing
a reply to the agent’s
letter in Doha for you.

'maktūb
mudda
lāzim
kalima
ghalat
‘uktubī

But here it’s written for a
period of one month’s
Shouldn’t it be two
months?

walākin huna maktūb “li
muddat shahr wāḥid”.
mish lāzim “shahrayn”?

9abdarrāḥmān: šābih, yā maryam. kalimat
“shahr wāḥid” ghalat. ‘uktubī
“shahrayn”.

Correct, Maryam. The
words one month are a
mistake. Write two
months.

‘aktubu
 whistleblower
excellent
husband
now

mumtāz
zouj
hassa

shukran, ‘aktubu kadha.

Thank you. I’ll write it
like that.

(Še returns to her office.)

9abdarrāḥmān: sikritayra mumtāza, u laťifa
jiddan. zoujha 9inda fī qism
al-mālīya. u hassa, yā Peter,
tfaddal ma9ī.

An excellent secretary,
and very pleasant. Her
husband’s with us in
Finance Department.
And now, Peter, please
come with me.
2. 9ibārāt

{kayf al-hāl?} How are you? (a less formal variant of {kayf hālak/hālik/hālkum?}) It is invariable for gender and number. Note also an even less formal variant {kayfak/kayfik/kayfikum?} which should be used only with close friends.

'akhadh fikra 9an to get an idea of.

bi sūra 9āmma in general.

mabsūta/mabsūta/mabsūtin bi ma9rifatka/ma9rifitik/ma9rifitken. Pleased to meet you.

furṣa sa9īda (ā happy occasion) Pleased to meet you.

fursa sāsa9īda (ā happy occasion) Pleased to meet you.

9imil jawla fī to make a tour of

3. mufradāt 'idāfiya

al-'idāra l-9āmma wa l-khās – Public and private administration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'idāra</th>
<th>administration</th>
<th>qitāb</th>
<th>sector</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-qitāb l-9ām</td>
<td>public sector</td>
<td>barlamān</td>
<td>parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watān</td>
<td>home country</td>
<td>watānī</td>
<td>national</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dawla</td>
<td>state</td>
<td>dawāfī</td>
<td>international</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siyāsa</td>
<td>policy, politics</td>
<td>siyāsī</td>
<td>political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mas'āl</td>
<td>official, person in charge</td>
<td>mashghīl</td>
<td>busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rasrī</td>
<td>official (adjective)</td>
<td>khās</td>
<td>special, private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-qitāb al-khās</td>
<td>private sector</td>
<td>muḍīr 9āmm</td>
<td>general manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'intāj</td>
<td>production</td>
<td>lajna</td>
<td>committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sha'īn al-muwazzafin</td>
<td>personnel (matters)</td>
<td>zamīl</td>
<td>colleague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bahāth</td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td>ijtimā'</td>
<td>meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miṣāniyya</td>
<td>budget</td>
<td>nuskha</td>
<td>copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milaff</td>
<td>file</td>
<td>barīd</td>
<td>mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waraqa</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>'āla kātiba, mākina</td>
<td>typewriter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kambyutir</td>
<td>computer</td>
<td>faks</td>
<td>fax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barīd 'iliktrounī, 'imayl</td>
<td>e-mail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

an-nahū

4. Present tense of sound verbs

The Arabic present tense (ā do, I am doing), often also called the imperfect tense, uses both personal prefixes and personal endings. Examine the present tense of {kata8}:

(‘ana) 'aktub (‘ihna) naktub
(‘int) tuktub (‘intū) tuktūb
(‘inti) tuktubū
g(huwa) yuktub (hum) yuktubū
(hiyya) yuktub I, you, he (etc.) write(s)

The initial and middle (or first two) root letters come together throughout this tense, after the personal prefix. Examine now the present tense of three other verbs, {dafa9}, {9irif} and {nizil}:

‘adafa9, tidafa9/tidfa9ī, yidafa9/tifa9; nidfa9, tidfa9ū, yidfa9ū

I, you, he (etc.) pay(s)

‘a9raf, ta9raf/ta9rafī, ya9raf/ta9raf; na9raf, ta9rafū, ya9rafū
I, you, he (etc.) know(s)
'anzil, tinzil/tinzil; yinzil/tinzil
I, you, he (etc.) get(s) down

The vowels are different, except that the 'ana person always has a as its first vowel. Almost all sound verbs follow one or other of these four patterns; we shall use katab as the model for them all.

We shall indicate new verbs with the basic forms of the past and present tenses, thus: katab yuktub. These are the principal parts of the verb.

Principal parts of other sound verbs encountered so far:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'amar yu'mur</td>
<td>to order</td>
<td>daras yudrus</td>
<td>to study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dakhal yudkhul</td>
<td>to enter</td>
<td>kharaj yukhruj</td>
<td>to go/come out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarak yutrak</td>
<td>to leave</td>
<td>shakar yushkar ila</td>
<td>to thank for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talab yudhib min</td>
<td>to ask (request)</td>
<td>sa'al yis'al</td>
<td>to ask (enquire)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samah yismahi li</td>
<td>to permit</td>
<td>sharah yishrah</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zahar yizhar</td>
<td>to appear</td>
<td>riji9 yirja9</td>
<td>to return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rikib yirkab</td>
<td>to mount, get in</td>
<td>jili9 yifla9</td>
<td>to go/get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simi9 yisma9</td>
<td>to hear</td>
<td>fatah yifta9</td>
<td>to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9imil yismal</td>
<td>to do/make</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Verbs with initial hamza

Two verbs with initial root letter hamza are irregular in the present, with ā instead of [a']:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'akhadh yakhud:</td>
<td>'akal yalk:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ākhudh</td>
<td>nākhudh</td>
<td>'ākūl</td>
<td>nākul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tākhudh</td>
<td>tākhudhū</td>
<td>tākul</td>
<td>tākulū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tākhudhī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yākhudh</td>
<td>yākhudhū</td>
<td>yākul</td>
<td>yākulū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tākhudhū tū</td>
<td>l, you, he (etc.) take(s)</td>
<td>tākulū tū</td>
<td>l, you, he (etc.) eat(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The combination [‘a'] always becomes ‘ā. Thus the present tense of 'amar yu’mar is:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'āmur, tu’mur/tu’murī, yu’mur/tu’mur; nu’mur, tu’murū, yu’murū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l, you, he (etc.) order(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We have not yet examined verbs with final root letter hamza, which are different.

6. Present tense of initial-w verbs

In the present tense of initial-w verbs the initial root letter w vocalises to (i.e. becomes a vowel) ū except in the 'ana person, which also keeps the vowel of the personal prefix. Otherwise these verbs form their tenses like the sound verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wisal yūsal:</td>
<td>wajad yūjid:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'awlūs</td>
<td>nūsūl</td>
<td>'awjūd</td>
<td>nūjūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūsūl</td>
<td>tūsūlū</td>
<td>tūjūd</td>
<td>tūjūdū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūsalū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yūsūl</td>
<td>yūsūlū</td>
<td>yūjūd</td>
<td>yūjūdū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūsalū tū</td>
<td>l, you, he (etc.) arrive(s)</td>
<td>tūjūdū tū</td>
<td>l, you, he (etc.) find(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Negative of the present tense
Like the past tense, the present tense is negated by putting mā before the
affirmative:
yudrusu l-9arabī. mā yudrusu l-9arabī. They (don't) study Arabic.

8. Use of the present tense
The present tense is used for all actions or situations occurring as they are
reported, however expressed in English:
yūs al-al-youm. He arrives/is arriving today.
nirja9 li l-maktab. We're going back to the office.
It is also used for the near future:
'aktub al-jawāb al-youm. I'm writing/I'll write the answer today.
There is a separate future form, not consistently used, which we shall study later.

9. Imperative
The imperative or command form is derived from the present for all verbs. It
exists only in the second persons ('int, 'inti, 'intū).
For the affirmative imperative of sound verbs, substitute ' (hamza) for the initial
t- of the second persons, thus:
tuktub, tuktubī, tuktubū you write
so also, e.g.:
'udkhul, 'udkhulī, 'udkhulū enter
'inzil, 'inzilī, 'inzilū get down, get off
The imperative of initial-w verbs having the form wīṣīl yūsāl or wajad yājid is
not used in spoken Arabic; another form is used, which we shall study later.
Three verbs with initial root letter hamza drop everything before the middle root
letter to make their imperatives:
mur murū order
kuḷ kuḷi kuḷū eat
khudh khudhī khudhū take
The negative imperative of all verbs without exception is made by putting the
negative particle lā before the appropriate second-person form of the present:
lā tuktub, lā tuktubī, lā tuktubū don't write
You may hear some speakers use mā here. lā is better.

10. Pronoun suffixes
Verbs in the present tense and the imperative take object-pronoun suffixes
following the rules already learned:
yā'rafīna kwayyis. mā tisma9hum?
khudhu. lā tuktubī

11. khallī-
This verb, the structure of which we shall examine later, means 'let (me, him
etc.).' It is followed by the object pronoun (on the pattern of fī, see 2/8) and the
present tense:
khallīnī, khallīk/khallīkī, khallī/khallīha; khallīna, khallīkum, khallīhum
LESSON 5

let me, you, him (etc.) ...


khallī yuktub al-jawāb.
Let him write the reply.
khallī- is an imperative, with a negative formed regularly with lā:
lā tkhallihum yisma9ik.
Donā let them/Let them not hear you.
khallī- and lā tkhallī- are both m. sing. and f. sing. The plural is khallū-, lā tkhallū-, addressing a group:
lā tkhallū yudkhul.
Donā (pl.) let him (come) in.

12. Numbers 11–199
Cardinal numbers above 10 and below 200 are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>'ihd9ashr</td>
<td>11 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ithn9ashr</td>
<td>12 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>thalatt9ashr</td>
<td>13 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>'arba9t9ashr</td>
<td>14 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>khamst9ashr</td>
<td>15 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>sitt9ashr</td>
<td>16 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>sab9ashr</td>
<td>17 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>thamant9ashr</td>
<td>18 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>tisa9t9ashr</td>
<td>19 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>'arba9n</td>
<td>20 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>mīya</td>
<td>101 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ithn9ashr</td>
<td>102 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>thalatt9ashr</td>
<td>103 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>'arba9t9ashr</td>
<td>104 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>khamst9ashr</td>
<td>105 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>sitt9ashr</td>
<td>106 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>sab9ashr</td>
<td>107 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>thamant9ashr</td>
<td>108 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>tisa9t9ashr</td>
<td>109 employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>'arba9n</td>
<td>110 employees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In combinations of tens and units, the unit number comes first. All counting elements are connected with u.

When the expression is indefinite:
- if the last stated number is 1, or is higher than 10, the noun is singular:
  mīya u wāhid muwazzaf 101 employees
  mīya u sitta u thalāthin muwazzaf 136 employees
- if the last stated number is 3 to 10, the noun stands in the plural:
  mīya u khamsa muwazzafīn 105 employees
- mīya immediately before a noun becomes mīt:
  mīt rākib 100 passengers

When the expression is definite, the number follows the noun, which is plural if the entire number is 3 or higher:

- al-muwazzafīn al-mīya u khamsīn the 155 employees
- muwazzafīn ash-sharika l-mīya u tis9īn the 190 company employees
- muwazzafīnhum as-sitta u sab9īn their 76 employees

13. lī
The form lī, lak (etc.) is used to imply ʾān behalf of or ʾān the interest of ʾān not necessarily expressed in English:

- ta9raf lī mat9am kwayyis? Do you know (for my information) a good restaurant?
- saʾalā lana l-mudīr. They asked the director for us/on our behalf.

14. Construct
Compound constructs exist, with more than one noun as either theme or
attribute:

tanzīm u shughl ash-sharika (two themes)
the organisation and work of the company

shughl al-qism ‘aw ash-sharika (two attributes)
the work of the division (of) the company

Do not confuse the compound construct with the ‘string’ construct (mistāḥ ghurfat at-ṭabi‘ī, 3/4).

We can express ‘one of ...’ as follows:
mutakhaṣṣīs min mutakhaṣṣīsīnna one of our specialists
(ā specialist from our specialists)

15. Interrogatives
Here are the main interrogative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>min</th>
<th>who</th>
<th>shā</th>
<th>what</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kam</td>
<td>how much/many</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘ayy wāḥid(a)</td>
<td>which one</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>kam</th>
<th>how much/many</th>
<th>‘ayy</th>
<th>which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td>‘ayy nūn min</td>
<td>what kind of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>kāyf</th>
<th>how</th>
<th>laysh</th>
<th>why</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mata</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>wayn</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some are already known to you. Note:
- The pronouns are all masculine singular, except for one feminine form ‘ayy wāḥida:
mīn katab ar-risāla? Who wrote the letter?
- The adjectives precede their noun, with the exception of mīn ʿwhose which forms a construct with its noun:
‘ayy kītāb? which book?
(fī) maktāb mīn? (in) whose office?
- Remember that after kam used as an adjective, the noun is always singular:
kam shakhsī? how many people?
- ‘ayy can be used non-interrogatively, meaning ʿan yūn
‘ayy risāla any letter
min ‘ayy wāḥid minhum from any one of them
- Distinguish between the interrogative adverb mata ʿwhen and the non-interrogative conjunction lamma ʿwhen:
lamma tarakt al-maktāb? When did you leave the office?
lamma tarakt al-maktāb, rijiʿt li l-ʿutayl. When I left the office, I returned to the hotel.

16. Indirect questions
All the interrogatives can introduce indirect questions. The indirect speech rule (4/7) holds. Examine:
mā ʿirifī kāyf yīmnālu. I didn’t know how he did (did) it.
mā ʿirifī kāyf yīmīlu I didn’t know how he had done (did) it.

Indirect questions inviting the answer ʿidhā or ʿādū are introduced by ʿidha ʿwhether. The indirect speech rule still applies:
I asked whether he was arriving today.
I asked whether he (had) arrived today.

17. Regional variations
In this lesson we deal with some pronunciation variations found in Egypt, the Levant, the Arabian Peninsula and North-west Africa.

q. In the Peninsula, q is pronounced as taught in this course. This is the pronunciation of the written language. In Egypt and the Levant, q is pronounced as 'i.e. like hamza, without deepened a. Compare:
   Peninsula, written language:  yawīq, qabl, istiqlāl
   Egypt, Levant:  yārā', 'ābl, istībāl
   But the proper names 9irāq, dimashq and al-qāhirā and their derivatives are pronounced with q everywhere.

j. In the Peninsula and North-west Africa, and in the written language, this consonant is pronounced j. In Egypt it has the sound g, i.e. that of hard English g (see Pronunciation, paragraph 3). In the Levant it is pronounced like s in English 'pleasure.

dh, th. In Egypt and the Levant, these consonants are mostly pronounced as d, t or (less frequently) as z, s respectively. Note:
   d, t:  hadā (etc.), 'akhad yākhud (etc.), itnāyin/tintayn, talāta,
         tamāniyī (= thamāniya), intāshī, kīr
   z, s:  kaza, timsāl

ð and ð. ð is the velarised counterpart of dh. In Egypt and the Levant, it is mostly pronounced z (velarised z). This course gives z where it is commoner. But in the Peninsula, and sometimes elsewhere, we hear the written pronunciation ð, in (e.g.) muwað̣af, ðahar yīdhar (etc.), mašūţ, intāshī

18. Jumal mithāliya

mudīr ħādhi sh-sharika, mā 'a9āfu.  I donâ know the director of this company. Do you?
   'int ta9āfu?
li mīn ħādhi n-nuskha? wajadt-ha fī milaffi l-9āmm.  Whose is this copy? I found it in my general file.
fi l-qism at-tijārī fī tīs9at9āshr shakhṣ fa qaṭ.  In the Commercial Division there are only nineteen people. Ê Good Heavens, thatâs not many.
   – wallāhi, ħādha mish ikthīr.

bi 9āmmā, al-qītāb al-khāṣṣ muhimm jiddan li l-waṭan.  In general, the private sector is very important for the country.

laysh mā katabt jawāb li risālat 'umūr al-khārijīya? – katabtu, mā wajadtu?  Why havenâ you written a reply to Foreign Affairsâ letter? Ê Iâ written it, havenâ you found it?
1. Give the principal parts of the verb:
e.g.: katab – katab yuktub

(a) daras
(b) wišil
(c) 9irif
(d) shakar
(e) ’akal

2. Give the affirmative imperative and negative imperative:
e.g.: sa’al yis’al – ’is’al, ’is’al, ’is’al, lā tis’al, lā tis’alī, lā tis’alū

(a) kharaj yukhruj
(b) nizil yinzil
(c) ’akhadh yākhudh
(d) samaḥ yismaḥ
(e) katab yuktub

3. Make plural:
e.g.: yākhudh – yākhudhū

(a) ’afūb
(b) lā tirkabī.
(c) yushkur
(d) khallīnī ’anzil.
(e) mā taṭraf?

4. Add the object-pronoun suffix:
e.g.: taṭraf (huwa) – taṭrafū

(a) mā yismaṭa (’iḥna)
(b) yаτraf (hiya)
(c) khallīna nushkur(hum)
(d) sa’alt (’int)
(e) mā ’akalt (huwa)

5. Put the right form of khallī- before the verb:
e.g.: nis’alhum – khallīna nis’alhum

(a) yutūbū.
(b) hiya tkhruj.
(c) ’ajlis.
(d) yinzil huna.
(e) nīḍṭaṭ ’uṭrat at-taksī.

6. Make an indirect question with sa’alt:
e.g.: yaṭrafū l-9unwān, – sa’alt ‘idha yaṭrafū l-9unwān

(a) laysh mā ’akhabat al-fīlūs?
(b) dafaṭu l-ḥisāb.
(c) mata ṭūṣal as-sayyāra?
(d) wayn al-mudīr?
(e) li mīn ḥadh al-nilāf?

7. Put the number with the noun:
e.g.: sayyāra (16) – sittṭaṭṣahr sayyāra

(a) shakhs (14)
(b) musāfir (100)
(c) al-musāfir (127)
(d) risāla (8)
(e) muwaṭṭaf (30)
Lesson 6
ziyāra 9ind al-‘aṣdiqā’ī A Visit to Friends

1. al-ḥiyār
(NB: In this dialogue one speaker uses the Egyptian form of spoken Arabic, examples of which are shown underlined in the vocabulary.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zar</td>
<td>he visited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sābiq</td>
<td>former</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ustādh</td>
<td>professor (title of respect used for any learned person)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Khalil Suleiman (name)

(During his stay in Amman Peter visited his former Arabic teacher Khalil Suleiman.)

shuftak

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zamān</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunt</td>
<td>you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hal-ghayba</td>
<td>this absence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūwa</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilād</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Khalil: 'ahlā-ā-ān yā Peter! mā shuftak min zamān! wayn kunt fī hal-ghayba? tfaḍḍal yā Peter, tfaḍḍal jūwa.

Peter: 'āhlan bīk yā ‘ustādh. kayf ḥālak yā Khalil?

Khalil: wallāhī, 'lḥa ḫawiyyisīn. mā 9irift 'innak fī 1-bilād.

Sār

shufnāk

Sār lana waqt ūwāl mā shufnāk.

'ūshū9

Lutfiya (name)

'insfalla

Peter: 'ayna9am, sār zamān ūwāl, wsiṣlt ḥādha l-‘ūshū9. u kayf lutfiya? 'insfalla mabsūṭa?

Peter: 'āyina9am, sār zamān ūwāl, wsiṣlt ḥādha l-‘ūshū9. u kayf lutfiya? 'insfalla mabsūṭa?

Peter: 'ayna9am, sār zamān ūwāl, wsiṣlt ḥādha l-‘ūshū9. u kayf lutfiya? 'insfalla mabsūṭa?

Peter: 'āyina9am, sār zamān ūwāl, wsiṣlt ḥādha l-‘ūshū9. u kayf lutfiya? 'insfalla mabsūṭa?
داهك يديحك 
ta9ālī 
shawfi 
zuja 
māshalla

come 
look, see 
wife 
(whatever God 
wishes)

kull shī 
tamām 
mougdūd

everything 
perfection, perfect 
= mougdūd

(khalīl yidīhak.)
khalīl: 
hiya moujūda. yā lutfiya, ta9ālī shūfi mīn.
(tudkhul zoujtu lutfiya.)
lutfiya: 
māshalla, Peter! kayf al-ḥāl yā Peter?

Peter: 
mabsūt jiddan, 'alla yisallimik yā lutfiya. u 'inti?
lutfiya: 
kull shī tamām u 'int mougdūd. u kayf Mary?

she sends her regards 
to keep 
Good bless (keep) 
give her my/our regards 

Peter: 
hiya kwayyisa, shukran. u tsallim 9alaykum.
lutfiya: 
'alla yihfaza. sallim 9alayha.

She's well, thank you, and she sends her regards. 

Peter: 
'alla yihfaza. sallim 9alayha.
lutfiya: 
sallim 9alayha.

God bless her. Give her our regards.

Peter: 
hiya kwayyisa, shukran. u tsallim 9alaykum.
lutfiya: 
'alla yihfaza. sallim 9alayha.

nine months 
we sold 
house 
= 'ijīna we came 
= hādha l-bayt
Damascus; Syria 
= huna 
for the sake of, because of

Peter: 
kam waqt sār lakum fī 9ammān?
lutfiya: 
tis9at 'ashhur 
bi9na 
bayt 
'iğīna 
al-bayt da 
ash-shām 
hina 
mīn sha'n

How long have you been in Amman? 

Peter: 
how long have you been in Amman?
lutfiya: 
only nine months. We sold that house in Damascus
shughlna. and came here because of our work.

ruhna we went
zurna we visited
9adad min a number of
'asdi ā' = 'asdiqā' friends
talāmīz = talāmīd pupils
gāmi9a = jāmi9a
sayf summer
walākin ruhna li sh-shām u zurna But we went to Damascus
9adad min 'asdi ā'ī u talāmīzī and visited a number of my
fi l-gāmi9a khilāl as-ṣayf. friends and pupils at the
university during the
summer.

khabar news
shift-hum I saw them
lissa still;
(+ negative:) not yet
u shū l-khabar min talāmīz khalīfī?
And what's the news of
Khalil's pupils?

Peter: mā shuft-hum min zamān, 'illa Liza. I haven't seen them for a
hiya lissa fi l-'umūr al-khārijīya. long time, apart from Liza.

kānat she was
al-bahrayn Bahrain
rāḥat she went
bayrūt Beirut
ka
mulḥaq as, in the capacity of
thaqāfī attaché
cultural
kānat fi l-bahrayn, u ba9dayn rāḥat She was in Bahrain, then
'ila bayrūt ka mulḥaq thaqāfī. she went to Beirut as
cultural attaché.

'ahā ah!
dāyiman always
tilmīd pupil
shāṭir clever
mujtāhid (NB stress) industrious
(u (here:) while, when
kān yudrus he was studying

khalīl: 'ahā, Līza. kānat tilmīdha muntāza. Ah, Līza. She was an
walākin yā lutfīya, Peter kān excellent pupil. But Lutfiya,
dāyiman tilmīd shāṭir u mujtāhid Peter was always a clever
kamān, u huwa kān yudrus 9indī. and industrious pupil as
well, when he was studying with me.

wādiḥ  clear
nisī  he forgot
'abadan  ever, (+ negative:)
never, not at all

ya9tik al-9āfiya  (God) give you health, well done!,
keep it up!

'akhir  my brother
u min al-wādiḥ 'inmu mā nisī 9arabīyitu
'abadan. ya9tik al-9āfiya, yā 'akhirī.
And it's clear he hasn't forgotten his Arabic at all. Well done (my brother).

'alla ya9tik  (God restore you)
thank you
9ala fikra  by the way,
incidentally
9āwij  wanting
= qahwa

'ahwi
shī  (also:) something
bārid

Peter:  'alla ya9tik yā 'ustādhī. laţf jiddan. Thank you. You're most kind.

Iuţfiya:  9ala fikra, yā Peter, shū 9āwij,
'ahwi willa shī bārid? By the way, Peter, what would you like, coffee or something cold?

2. 9ibārāt
min zamān since a long time ago, for a long time now.
wayn kunt/kunti/kuntī fī hal-ghayba?  (Where were you in this absence?)
Where have you been all this time?
inshāllā (God wills) I hope (so).
māshāllā! Good Heavens! (expressing surprise or admiration).
ysallim/ysallimū 9alāyik/y9alayha/9alayhum. He/she/they send(s) his/her/their regards.
sallim/sallimū 9alāy/y9alayha/9alayhum Give him/her/them my/our regards.

'alla yihfāzu/yihfazha/yihfazhum (God keep ...). God bless him/her/them. Used
more frequently than its English counterpart.

'abadan ever, (+ negative) never, not at all. 'abadan! Never!

ya9tik/y9tikum al-9āfiya, ya9tik l-9āfiya  (God) give you health Bravo; Well
done. This is a greeting, with the response:

'alla ya9tik/y9tik/y9tikum  (God restore you) Thank you.
9ala fikra by the way
3. mufradāt ʿidāfiyya. al-bayt wa l-ḥayla – House and Family

shaqqa apartment | 9imāra building, block
sāloun living-room | māthakh kitchen
gārāji garage | shubbāk window
sullam staircase | jinayna, hustān garden
fouq (also) upstairs | taht (also) downstairs
ʿujra (also) rent | sāhib bayt landlord
āthāth furniture | kursī chair

fawla (Levant/Peninsula), ʿarabaya (Egypt/Sudan), ʿabl (NW Africa) table*
barrādā refrigerator | mukayyifa airconditioner
ṭafīya heating | sakan yuskun to live (reside)
9ayla family | ṣuluđ children
rajul man | mara woman
ʿab father | ʿumm mother
walad child, boy | ʿalid parent
ʿibn son | bint girl, daughter
ʿakh brother | ʿukht sister

* ʿawla is from Italian, ʿarabaya from Greek, ʿabl from French.

an-naḥū

4. Past tense of hollow verbs

Hollow verbs are those whose middle root letter is one of the weak consonants w or y. In most forms of such verbs, the weak middle root letter vocalises, i.e. becomes a vowel. Examine the past tense of a typical hollow verb:

Root sh w f, first principal part shāf to see, look (at):

(ʿana) shuft (ʿihna) shufna
(ʿint) shuft (ʿintū) shuftū
(ʿintī) shuftī
(huwa) shāf (hum) shāfū

The personal endings are the same as for the sound verbs. Also, when the personal ending begins with a consonant, the middle root letter takes the form of its related short vowel: w becomes u. Elsewhere in the tense, the middle root letter becomes ā. Another example:

Root r w h, first principal part rāḥ to go:

ruḥ, ruḥt/ruḥti, rāḥ/rāḥat; rūḥa, ruḥṭā, rāḥū l, you, he, she (etc.) saw, looked (at)

so also:

Root k w n, kān to be q w l, qāl to say
z w r, zār to visit q w m, qām to rise, get/stand up
s w q, sāq to drive q w m, qām bi to undertake

Similarly, middle root letter y changes to ā (the related short vowel) and ā, under the rule given earlier:

Root s y r, first principal part sār to become:

ṣīr, sīrīt/sīrīti, sār/sārat; ʿīrā, ʿīrāt, ʿārū l, you, he (etc.) became

so also:

Root b y 9, hābīb to sell ṯ y r, ṯār to fly
Two important verbs with middle root letter \( w \) form their past tense as if this root letter were \( y \):

Root \( n \ w m \), first principal part \( n \ām \) to sleep:

- \( nımıt \), \( nımıt/nımți \), \( nımına \), \( nımtı \, nımă \) I, you, he (etc.) slept

Root \( kh \ w f \), first principal part \( kh \āf \) or \( kh \āf \min \) to fear:

- \( khıft \), \( khıft/khıftı \), \( khıftı/khıftaı \); \( khıftına \), \( khıftı \, khıftı \) I, you, he (etc.) feared

### Hollow verb rule
In hollow verbs, the middle root letter, when vocalised, is short before a consonantal personal ending and long elsewhere.

5. **Negative; Object pronoun**
All these verbs form their negative past tense with \( mā \), and take the object-pronoun suffixes, as do the sound verbs:

- \( mā \shaftu \)? Didn’t you see him/it?
- \( mā \jābu \). He didn’t bring it.

6. **kān**
Unlike the concept \( dū \) be\( ān \) present time, the past tense of \( kān \) is never omitted:

- \( huwa moujūd \, mish kadha \)? but: \( kān moujūd \, mish kadha \)?

7. **kān fi**
The past form of \( fī \) in its meaning \( dūr \) is, there are\( ē \) and in its use with 9ind, is expressed with \( kān \ fī \ dūre \ was \), there were\( ē \) negative \( mā \ kān \ fī \). These expressions are normally invariable for gender and number. Note that the stress is on the first syllable of the whole expression in each case:

- \( kān \ fī \nās \) ikthīr \( fī \) l-maktaba. \( mā \ kān \ fī \) 9indu waqt.

The \( fī \) may be omitted from the affirmative \( kān \ ( fī \) 9ind, but not from the negative \( mā \ kān \ fī \) 9ind.

8. **sār lī**
The past-tense form \( sār \ lī \) be\( āmedū \) with the preposition + pronoun suffix \( lī \), \( lāk \) (etc.), gives us an idiom indicating or enquiring how long a situation has been so for the person indicated:

- \( kam \) waqt \( sār \) lak huna? How long have you been here?
- \( sār \ lī \) shahrayn huna. lāe been here for two months.

9. **ha-**
\( hàđhə \) (etc.) preceding a noun can be abbreviated to the invariable prefix \( ha- \):

- \( hàđhə \) l-balad → \( hal-balad \)
- \( hàđhı \ s-sayyāra \) → \( has-sayyāra \)
- \( hadhoul \ an-nās \) → \( han-nās \)
- \( ıстādḥ hàđhə \ t-tilmād \) → \( ıстādḥ hat-tilmād \)

10. **Circumstantial u**
\( u \) can also mean \( dū \)while\( ē \) (either in the sense \( dū \)nen\( ē \)r \( dū \)where\( ē \)s\( ē \)) or \( dōw \) (that)\( ē \) in some contexts. The \( u \) must be followed either by a personal pronoun or a
negative mā or mish to give this meaning. We call such expressions clauses of circumstance:

kull shī tamām u 'int moujūd.  
Everything’s fine now you’re here.

kān mujāhid u huwa (kān) tālib.  
He was hardworking when/while (he was) a student.

kunt ‘ana fi l-bahrayn u mā ‘a9raf shī ‘ār li l-‘asyiqā’. I was in Bahrain, while/whereas I don’t know what happened to my (dear) friends.

11. Broken plurals

We have already studied in 1/10 and 3/13 the regular or so-called sound plurals. Most nouns and many adjectives have an irregular or so-called broken plural, formed on a different pattern and without suffixes like the sound plurals. Some have more than one possibility. Here are the broken plurals of the most important nouns already learnt (singular/plural), grouped according to the plural pattern:

bank bunūk  'amr 'umār  sha'n shū'n bayt buyūn  jisr jusūr  sha'n shū'n bayt buyūt

mudīr mudarār’  safīr safarā'  wazīr wizarā'  wakīl wukalā'

bāb 'abwāb  ha'il 'ahwāl  shakhīsh‘ashkhash  habar 'akhabār

shughl 'ashghāl  wāqt 'ouqāt  raqm 'argām  qism 'aqāsām

fikra fikār  rajul rijāl  balad bilād

ghrufa gharaf  'onqa 'owād  dawla duval  furṣa furās

kuskhı̄ nusakh  šūrā šwar

kitāb kutub  ṭariq turūq

mafaqı̄ maqā'ı̄m  mansha' manashīf  madkhal madkhīl  maktab maktabāb

maktuba maktabīb  makhraj makharīj  makhzan makhtāzin  moufid mawāfūd

shāhı̄r shawārīf  daqiqa daqāyiq  tadhkara tadhākir

ṣanādiq suqādiq  miftāh mafātiḥ  dinār danānīr  'as̱hūr9 'aṣbāb9

shubbāk shababīk  tilmūd talāmūd  bustān basātān

and less common examples:

sayyid sāda  'ustādīh 'asātīda  ṣadīq 'aṣdiqā'  shahr 'ashhūr

ṣu'al 'as'ila  bilād bulānd  mara niswān (from another root)

talīb tullāb  ṭarīb 'atība  sana sinin (also sound:) sanawāt

Before a plural beginning with hamza, the numbers from 3 to 9 add a final -t:

thĀlāthat 'aṣdīqā'  three friends

sittat 'aṣbāb9  six weeks

thamāniyat 'ashhūr  eight months

Learn also in this context the essential word 'ayūm, pl. 'ayyām dīyādī

ṣabāt 'ayyām  seven days

Here are important adjectives with broken plurals, some already known to you:

kẖīr khār  kẖīr khār
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Example Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sghīr sghār</td>
<td>distributive of sghīr, sghār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latīf lutaftā</td>
<td>light, pleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rkhīs rkhās</td>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazīz lizzāz</td>
<td>pleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khaṣf khesaf</td>
<td>light (in weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qadīm qudamā`</td>
<td>old (of things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḡanī <code>aghniyā</code></td>
<td>rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busīt busatā`</td>
<td>simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naḥf nuḥafa`</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marīd mardā</td>
<td>sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remember, with respect to the adjectives:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· khīr is often used invariably (3/17),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· the inanimate plural rule (1/5) still holds,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· the adjective plurals shown above are used only with animate meaning, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with (animate or inanimate) dual nouns (Dual noun rule, 4/12).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some adjectives have a broken feminine:

m. `awwal, f. `ila, pl. (sound) `awwalīn first
m. `akhir, f. `akhra, pl. (sound) `akhirīn other

`awwal, and a broken plural `awā`il, are used as nouns with special meanings:

(f) `awwal as-sana (at) the beginning of the year
(f) `awā`il as-sana early in the year

Likewise `akhir (NB not `akhhar) plural `awākhir `astō

(f) `akhir ash-shahr (at) the end of the month
(f) `awākhir ash-shahr late in the month

12. In addition to `akhir and `akhir shown above, the root ` kh r provides a third important adjective. Do not confuse the three:

`akhir, `akhirīn other
`akhir, `akhirīn `awākhir last
`akhir, `akhirīn `arūnīn recent

(see above)

13. We shall show new nouns and adjectives having broken plurals thus: qism `aqṣām. Where no plural is shown, it is sound.

14. `ab, `akh, `ikh, `umm

These words merit special attention:

`ab `ābā father `umm `ummahāt mother
`ikh `ikhwāt sister `akh `ikhwā brother(s) (in a family)
`akh `ikhwān brother/brother (of a community)

`ab and `akh add -ū- before the possessive suffixes, on the pattern of fī. Note the stress of `abū and `akhū:

`abū, `abūk/`abūkī, `abū/`abbā: `abūna, `abūkum, `abūhum my (etc.) father
`akhū, `akhūk/`akhūkī, `akhū/`akhirā: `akhirā, `akhirūkum, `akhirūhum my (etc.) brother
'akhūū also has the variant 'akhī. The suffixed forms of 'akh- (with or without a name) are used as a cordial form of address or reference to a male colleague or friend:

- tfaddal, yā 'akhūū/ 'akhī. Please come in, old chap.
- wistil al-'akh ġhasan. (Our friend) Hassan arrived.

'iikhwān is commonly used to address or refer to a group of male associates; it can be used even in formal situations:


Women use 'akht 'ikhwāt identically for women friends:

- kasf hālik, yā 'akhtī? How are you, dear?
- al-'ikhwāt muqādān ġhasan. The girls are here now.

A Christian clergyman is addressed or referred to as 'abūnā.

- 'abū followed by the given name of the eldest son is a cordial way (used by men and women) of addressing or referring to a man:

  - 'abū 'alād ǧuadā fatherō

Similarly, 'umm (also pronounced 'imm in this context) for a woman:

- 'umma/ 'imm ġhasan ǧhassanā motherō

If an Arab calls you 'akh or 'ukht, you have cause to feel flattered. You have been accepted as a friend.

15. Finally, 'abū is also used jocularly in construct, combined with a recognisable characteristic of a man:

- 'abū ḥaṣya (father of a beard) he/him with a beard
- 'abū 'aghlaṭ (father of errors) the bungler

This picturesque idiom occurs in the opening lines of James Elroy Flecker’s haunting drama of medieval Baghdad, ‘Hassan’ (1911). Our hero is unhappy in love, and is boring his friend Selim with the fact:

HASSAN (rocking on his mat):

Eywallah! Eywallah!

SELIM: Thirty-seven times have you made the same remark,

O father of repetition.

You should know this structure, but be wary of using it yourself.

16. Continuous past tense

The verb kān in the past tense, followed by another verb in the present, makes the continuous past tense, which can be used for a continuous or repeated action in the past:

- ... u huwa kān yudrus ǧindī ... while he was studying with me
- kān dáyīmī yis 'al ḥawālak. He always used to ask about you.

17. Use of adjectives

Most adjectives can be used as nouns, whether to indicate a person or persons, or an understood thing:

- al-ghanī the rich man
- al-9arab The Arabs
- al-muḥimm 'immak muqādā. The important thing is that you're here.

It is ... that ...ās often expressed with min al-... 'imm ...:

- min al-wāḏīḥ 'innhum 'aghniyā jūddan. It抯 clear (that) they抮e very rich.
18. Prepositions and conjunctions
Distinguish between prepositions and their related conjunctions. A preposition governs a noun or pronoun; a conjunction introduces a further clause (a clause is a group of words centred on a verb and its subject). A few examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition (+ noun/pronoun)</th>
<th>conjunction (+ clause)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qabl</td>
<td>qabl mā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba9d</td>
<td>ba9d mā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9ind at the time of</td>
<td>lamma when</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

wisilā qabl/ba9d al-ijtimā9. They arrived before/after the meeting.
wisilā qabl mā/ba9d mā kharajt. They arrived before/after I left.
shift-ha 9ind wuṣūlha. I saw her on her arrival.
shift-ha lamma wuṣīlat. I saw her when she arrived.

19. Regional variations: Egypt and Sudan
We examine below two important characteristics of Egyptian and Sudanese speech.

da. The demonstrative hādha (etc.), used in the Levant and the Peninsula, is close to the standard written form. In Egypt and Sudan, another form is commoner:
da m., dī ṣ, doul pl. this/these
dāk m., dīk ṣ, dulāk pl. that/those

When used as adjectives, they follow (NB) the qualified noun, which always has the article:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levant/Peninsula</th>
<th>Egypt/Sudan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hādha sh-shakhs</td>
<td>ash-shakhs da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadīk ar-risāla</td>
<td>ar-risāla di</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudīr hādha l-bank</td>
<td>mudīr al-bank da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudīr al-bank hādha</td>
<td>the manager of this bank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9āwiz. This word, meaning ‘wanting’ is used in Egypt and Sudan to express the verb do want. It agrees with its subject, and can be followed by a direct object (noun or pronoun), or a present tense:

‘ana 9āwiz jāwabu. I want (ām wanting) his answer.
’int 9āwiz? Do you want it?
hiya 9āwiza tuktub al-jawāb. She wants to write the answer.

The past sequence dwantedū is expressed with kunt 9āwiz(a) (etc.), with the same structures:

shā kānā 9āwizūn minnak? What did they want from you?

In present time-sequence, this expression is negated with mish; in past sequence we negate the kān (etc.) with mā as usual:

’iḥna mish 9āwizūn. We donā want it.
mā kunna 9āwizūn. We didnā want it.

20. jumal mithāliya
šār lak kam waqt tudrus al-lugha How long have you been
LESSON 6


jābū lana l-milaff ma9 ’arqām ’intāj

has-sana.

They brought us the file with

this year’s production

figures.

kam nuskha lāzima? – ’ī9mal ’arba9a

nusakh, ’alsan.

How many copies are

necessary? Make four

copies, that’s better.

muhandisīn ash-sharika zāru l-youm

9iddat tūruq wa jusur qadīma

fi l-balad, ṣatta yikhudhū fikra

bi-khuṣṣūs al-murūr 9alayha.

The company engineers today

visited a number of old

roads and bridges in the

town, to get an idea of the

traffic on them.

kayf ’ashrah lu r-risāla u huwa mā yifham

al-9arabī?

How do I explain the letter to

him, when he doesn’t

understand Arabic?

21. at-tamārīn

1. Give the first person singular and plural of the past tense:

e.g.: kān – kunt, kunna

(a) shāf

(b) tār

(c) sa’al

(d) nām

2. Put into the past continuous tense:

e.g.: darasti l-kitāb. – kunti tudrus al-kitāb.

(a) dakhalna l-bayt.
(b) wisīlū li l-balad.
(c) yūsalū l-massāna.

(d) katabu l-jawāb.
(e) sakan huna.

3. Put into the abbreviated form of hādha (etc.):

e.g.: hādhi s-sana – has-sana

(a) kutub hādha l-mu9allim

(b) hadhoul at-tullāb

(c) fī hādha l-wa9t

(d) 9ind hadhoul an-nās

(e) hādha l-maktab

4. Give the plural:

e.g.: kitāb – kutub

(a) bayt

(b) tarīq

(c) zamāl

(d) mara

(e) bint

5. Put into the plural:

e.g.: kitāb qadīm – kutub qadīma; musāfir 9arabī – musāfirīn 9arab

(a) tālib shāṭir u mujtāhid

(b) makhzan ikbīr

(c) nuskha wādiha

(d) shakhṣ laṭīf

(e) 9andūq ṭa9qīl

6. Put into the past tense:

e.g.: fī 9indak fakka? – kān fī 9indak fakka?

(a) 9indna waqt ikhṭīr.

(b) kam tālib fī huna?
(c) ạt-ṣaḥāb 9ind al-maɾiḏ.  (d) ʾiḥna mish mabsūṭin.
(e) huwa muʿjaḏ al-youm.

7. Put the number with the noun:
   e.g.: ʾalīb (3) – thalātha ʿullāb
   (a) ʾalīb (2)  (b) ʾouḍa (12)  (c) ṣūra (6)
   (d) musāfīr (4)  (e) shakhṣ (1)
الدرس السابع

1. **الحوار**

**تليفون المهام**

(Peter يَكاَل المهام من التنظيم إثر الأشياء من قبله.)

**halóu**

Hello (على الهاتف)

**mitayn**

two hundred

**sitt méya**

six hundred

**šawt 'āšwāt**

voice, noise

**madrasa madā'āris**

school

**thānawī**

secondary

Peter: halóu, huna mitayn u thalāthu u ṣaba9în, sitt méya u sab9în?  

Yes, this is the secondary technical school. Can I help you?

**siyāda**

Excellency (courtesy title)

**muta 'assif**

sorry

**hāshim**

Hashim (name)

**ghāyib**

absent

**musā9id**

assistant

(Also:) message

Peter: siyādat al-mudīr moujūd, law samah?  

Is the Director in, please?

**aš-sawt:**

muta 'assif, ad-duktur hāshim ghāyib al-youm. 'ana musā9idū. fi khabar 'ilu?  

I'm sorry, Dr Hashim is absent today. I'm his assistant. Is there a message for him?

'ashūf

I see, I look

Peter: 'ana Peter Brown, muhandis min 'ingiltra, u lāzīm 'ashūf siyādatu.  

I am Peter Brown, an engineer from Britain, and I have to see the Director.

**9ala 9ilm bi**

informed of, aware of

**'asaf**

regret

**yišīr**

(Here:) it will do

Peter: 9ala 9ilm bi buhūthkum. ma9 al-'asaf al-youm mà yišīr,  

Yes, Mr Brown, I know about your discussions. Regrettably today won't do,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARABIC TODAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he goes  he's going to a conference all day, and there's no possibility of your seeing him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he's going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he sees you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour, clock, watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And tomorrow, will it be possible?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let me see, Sunday, yes, I'll ask him to see you at half-past nine or twenty to ten; what do you think?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We'll see you tomorrow, Mr Brown. Goodbye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excellent idea. I'll be there at half-past nine. Goodbye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodbye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We see you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(here:) exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, is that the exchange (dhere?)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, sir. Is there a problem?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes. I have dialled a number, but there's absolutely no sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What number?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415601.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Peter: ‘akūn mammūn jiddan. 
shūf yā sīdī
ghayr musta9mal

One minute, lāl look. Perhaps the lineā out of order.

Look, sir, this number is out of use. Dial another number:
415670.

Peter: mumtāz. ‘ashkurak jiddan.

Excellent. Thank you very much.

15. 9āfwan. Don’t mention it.

2. 9ibārat

siyāda Excellency. Used either with a possessive suffix:
siyādatkā/siyādati/kis-yādadā/m His/Her Excellency, Their Excellencies, or in construct with certain titles:
siyādat    al-wāzir     His/Her Excellency the Minister
siyādat    as-suffarā     His/Her Excellency the Ambassadors

shārīrāt 9imārāt siyāda. at-tilifoun wa z-zaman – Telephone and time
darab yudrub* tilifoun to telephone ittiṣāl (telephone) call
daf‘ ‘adilla directory tilifounīyān by telephone
9āmil 9ummāl (tilifoun) telephone operator (m.)
9āmilat(ī) 9āmilāt (tilifoun) telephone operator (f.)
maqtūf cut off ‘ams yesterday
‘awwāl ‘ams the day before ba9d bukra the day after
yesterday tomorrow
sūb ‘asbāb morning zuhr ʿazhār noon, midday
ba9d az-zuhr afternoon nahūr ʿanhuur daytime
layla laylī night musī layl midnight
me9 murūr az-zaman/za9mān with the passage of time
* (darab yudrub to strike)

NB.: In some Arab countries the person being telephoned may answer simply with mīn? ʿWho (is it)? if expecting the caller to identify him/herself first.
4. Present tense of hollow verbs

In the present tense of hollow verbs the weak middle root letter vocalises. Since this tense has no consonantal endings, the vocalised root letter is always long ā or ī.

The prefixes and endings are the same as for sound verbs, except that the prefixes t- and n- have no vowel after them.

Verbs with middle root letter w:

Root sh w f; shāf/yishāf to see, look (at):
- ‘ashāf, tshāf/tshāfi, yishāf/tshāfi; nshāf, tshāfī, yishāfī
  l, you, he (etc.) look(s), see(s)

In some situations the personal prefixes t- and n- may need a transition vowel:
- al-youm inshāf al-wāzīr.
  So also other middle-w verbs:
- zār yizār qāl yiqāl rāh yirāh qām yiqām (bi)
  sāq yisāq kān yikān

The present tense of kān yikān is used with future meaning:
- ‘akān mammān. lāl be grateful.
- ‘int tākān moujād bukra? Will you be present tomorrow?

The two anomalous w-verbs have -ā- throughout the present:
Root n w m, nām:
- ‘anām, tnām/tmāmī, yinām/māmī; nnām, tnmā, ynmā
  l, you, he (etc.) sleep(s)

Root kh w f, khāf:
- ‘akhāf, tkhāf/tkhāfī, yikhāf/tkhāfī; nkhāf, tkhāfū, yikhāfū
  l, you, he (etc.) fear(s)

Verbs with middle root letter y:
Root j y b, jāb to bring:
- ‘ajāb, tjāb/tjābī, yijāb/tjābī; njāb, tjābū, yijābū l, you, he (etc.) bring(s)
  so also:
- bāy yibā yār yisār tār yifīr zād yisād

In the present tense all such verbs form their negatives, and take suffixes, in the usual manner: tshāfū? ma nihat ma9na.

5. Imperative of hollow verbs

To form the affirmative imperative of these verbs, drop the t- prefix of the present:
shāf/shāfi shāfū jīb/jibī/jibū

etc.; the negative imperative is formed regularly, by negating the appropriate person of the present tense with lā:
- lā tqu/mālī/lā tqu/ūlī etc.

6. yisād

This word, used invariably, can mean dāl is acceptable
dīb mā yisār. Tomorrow won’t do/Tomorrow’s no good.
khamis danānīr, yisār? Five dinars, all right?
7. yikūn
The future of fier is yikūn fier; that of mā fier is mā yikūn fier. The verb is invariable, and
the stress is on the first word of each expression:
   yikūn fier/ mā yikūn fier
   yikūn fier/ mā yikūn fier nās ikhār.
In the affirmative expression yikūn fier 9ind- the fier is optional:
   yikūn (fier) 9indna māshākil ikhār.

8. mumkin, lāzim, yumkin
These are important invariable verbal forms. They are all followed by the present
tense, in the appropriate person. If the subject is expressed, it usually stays with
the present-tense verb:
mumkin means 'may/might/can ...?' in questions and suggestions:
   mumkin 'ashū f al-mudār?
   mumkin itqūn l lī mata fādī.
   mumkin āhū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū lī mata fādī.
   mumkin āhū rū lī mata fādī.
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū lī mata fādī.
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
   mumkin āhū rū f al-mudār?
Compounds are made following the rules already learned. mīya, 'alf and malyūn are nouns. They have a dual and a plural:

mīya, mitayn, mīyāt, 'alf, 'alfayn, 'ālāf/ūlāf malyūn, malyūnayn, malyūn

The duals are used for counting, with or without a noun, in a compound or not. The plurals are used to indicate indeterminate numbers; with a pronoun we use min + suffix; with a noun min + the article:

mīyāt, 'ālāf/ūlāf, malyūn, malyūnayn, malyūn

mīya (mī immediately before a noun) is singular after another number, including 3 to 9:

'arba9 mīya u thālāth shakhs

but 'ālāf and malyūn are used in the plural after 3 to 9, and in the singular otherwise:

khamsat 'ālāf * (jālib) khamsīn 'alf (jālib)
arba9a malāyūn (dinār) arba9īn malyūn (dinār)

* Numbers 3 to 9 add -t before hamza (see 6/11). Further, the unit numbers do not lose their final -a before malyūn as they do before mīya and mī.

Telephone and similar long serial numbers are expressed differently in different Arab countries:

446762

{'arba9a, 'arba9a, sitta, sab9a, sitta, ithnayn
'arba9a u 'arba9īn, sab9a u sittīn, ithnayn u sittīn
'arba9 mīya u sitta u 'arba9īn, sab9a malyūn u sittīn

11. Fractions and percentages

Fractions other than 'half' have the pattern of thulth dhirdā:

nusṣ* (one/a) half thulth (one) third
rub9 quarter khums fifth
suds sixth sub9 seventh
thumān eighth tus9 ninth
9ushīr tenth

* Some speakers use the written form nisf

wāhid is not used, but the dual is:

an-nisfayn both halves thulthayn/khumsayn two thirds/fifths

The plurals are mostly formed on the model 'athlāth dhirdā:

'anṣāf, athlāth, 'arba9, 'akhmās, 'asdās, 'asbā9, 'athmān, 'atsā9,
'atshār/9ushūr

halves, thirds, quarters, fifths, ...
These are the forms used without a numerator. Not all denominators are in frequent use; the commonest are:

- (thalāthat) 'arbā9
- ('arba9at) 'akhmās
- (sab9at) 'athmān
- (tis9at) 'aš9ār

We can also express such fractions with the cardinal numbers and min or 9ala:

- khamṣa min/9ala sab9a
- 'īḥdāshhr min/9ala 9ishrīn
- wāḥid min/9ala thn9āshhr
- ithnayn min/9ala khamṣt9ashr

For percentages we use fi l-mīya or bi l-mīya:

- sittīn fi/bi l-mīya

12. Time

Time on the hour is expressed with the number 1 to 12 (1 and 2 in the feminine), preceded, optionally, by as-sā9a:

- (as-sā9a) wāḥida, thintayn, thalātha, 'arba9a, khamṣa ...

We do not use the dual of sā9a in this context.

Minutes in the first half-hour are expressed with u and nus/rub9/thulth or a number of minutes; for minutes not in multiples of five add daqīqa, daqīqayn,

daqāyiq 6minute(s)ā

- (as-sā9a) sitta u nus
- (as-sā9a) sab9a u rub9
- (as-sā9a) tis9a u thulth
- tis9a u 9ashra
- 'īḥdāshhr u daqīqayn
- ithn9āshhr u saba9t9ashr daqīqa

In the second half-hour we use 'illa and the next hour:

- 'arba9a 'illa khamṣa 9ishrīn
- 'īḥdāshhr 'illa thulth
- thalātha 'illa rub9
- khamṣa 'illa daqīqayn

In the middle third of the hour, we can also refer to the half-hour:

- (as-sā9a) tis9a u nus 9ashra
- thalātha u nus 'illa daqīqayn

Note also: kam as-sā9a?/as-sā9a kam? ḍālās:u fi 'ayy sā9a?

13. Other time expressions

Distinguish between:

- waqt 'ouqāt: time in general
- zaman/zamān 'azmān: time in general, period of time
- mudda mudad: period
- fatra fatarāt: interval, period
marra  
a time, occasion
youm 'ayyām  
day (24 hours)
nahār, 'anhur  
period of daylight, daytime
as-sāḥa thintayn  
two o'clock
sāḥayn  
two hours

Note also an important noun thāniya thawān  

da second, seconds

and important adjectives:

jārī  
current
hāḍir  
present
māḍī  
past
muqbil, jā'ī  
next

jā'ī is invariable in this usage; the other adjectives agree with their noun. jārī and māḍī have f. and pl. forms like fāḍi, fāḍiy, fāḍiýn:

as-sāna l-jā'ī/l-muqbilīn  
al-fatra l-hāḍira/l-jā'īya

ash-shahrayn al-māḍīyīn

14. Days of the week

The days of the week are:

(youm) al-jumā  
Friday
(youm) as-sabt  
Saturday
al-'ahād  
Sunday
al-thalātha  
Monday
ath-thalātha  
Tuesday
al-'arba'ān  
Wednesday
al-khamīs  
Thursday

The word youm is often used, especially before those names most resembling the numbers.

15. Indirect commands and requests

Direct command or request is the imperative, studied in 5/9. Indirect command or request is expressed with 'inn and the present tense:

'a'llūb minnu 'innu yishūfak.  
lā ask him to (ask that he) see you.
'talabū minnī 'innī 'adkhul.  
They asked me to come in.

The indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

16. ghayr

This word is used as an invariable adjective meaning other, different. It precedes the qualified noun when the latter is singular:

hāḍhī ghayr mushkilī.  
That's another/a different problem.

With a plural noun, it is usually followed by min, and the noun is defined. In this construction, ghayr can be regarded as a pronoun:

shūfī hāshim u ghayr min az-zumālī.  
I saw Hashim and other colleagues

'fi ghayr min 'asdiqā'ī moujūdīn?  
Are there other friends of mine

When the noun is inferred, ghayr itself is usually made definite:

tulub ikthār min al-ghayr.  
You're asking a lot of others (he) other(s).

mā fī ghayr.  
There's nothing else/but this/other than this.

laysh tkhāfī min ghayrak?  
Why are you frightened of others?

ghayr is also used as a preposition, except (for), besides:

ghayr hāḍha, shā qālū lak?  
What did they tell you besides this?
Note also u ghayru/u ghayrha and so on, etc.Ø

al-murūr, ya9nī sayyārātī, takṣiḥāt u ghayru traffic, that is to say cars, taxis and so on.

Finally, an important adverbial use of ghayr. It negates almost any adjective or other adverb, as an alternative to mish:

ghayr/mish mumkin impossible
ghayr/mish musta9mal unused, disused
ghayr 9arabī non-Arab, un-Arab, non-Arabic

17. Regional variations: u, a → i

In Egypt and the Levant the short vowels u and a in the vicinity of ī, i, ay or y are frequently pronounced as i:

yimkin, 'imkānī, tilthayn (= thulthayn)

18. jumal mithāliya

'ana mish fādi bukra, wallākin ba9d bukra

yişir. lān not free to morrow, but the
day after tomorrow all
right.

shū rā’yak inqul ba9d bukra, bayn as-sā9a

'iḥd9ashr u 'iḥd9ashr u thulth?

Supposing we say the day
after tomorrow, between
eleven o'clock and twenty
past?

'udrub lī tilifoun lamma tūsal li l-bayt.

Give me a ring when you get
home.

fi ’awwā’il as-sana l-jāfī mā yikūn fī

maḥall ’ilhum. ’aḥsan ’ilhum ’innhum

yūsalīlī hassa. Early next year there will be no

kān lazīm yib9īl d-dukkān u yirūlū

9a sh-shām. mā kān ’ilhum ghayr

‘imkāniyya. There was no other possibility for

al-’oulād kānū yināmū u ’ana dakhalt.
The children were sleeping as
I came in.

19. at-tamārīn

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:

e.g.: rāh – rāh yirūh

(a) shāf’ (b) ṭalab (c) nām

(d) tār (e) bā9

2. Put into the present tense:

e.g.: al-walad nām. – al-walad yinām.

(a) ’ana shuftu l-youm. (b) wayn rāḥ? (c) šīra ’aghniyā’.

(d) bā9ā bayt-hum fī bayrūt. (e) jibtu l-fulūs ma9kum?
3. Add *kān lāzim*, changing the verb where necessary:
e.g.: 'ana shuft-hum. – kān lāzim 'ashūfhum.
(a) ruḥna li l-balad.   (b) 'ashūf bukra.   (c) zāru l-mudhir.
(d) jābu l-kutub?   (e) ṭalabna minnu.

4. Give the affirmative and negative imperative:
e.g.: shāf – shūf, shūfī, shūfū, lā tshūf, lā tshūfī, lā tshūfū
(a) kān
(b) khāf
(c) kharaj
(d) qāl
(e) jāb

5. Today is Saturday. Answer the questions:
e.g.: bukra yikūn 'ayy youm? – bukra yikūn youm al-'ahād
(a) 'ams kān 'ayy youm?   (b) ba9d bukra yikūn 'ayy youm?
(c) 9indak shughl al-youm?   (d) 'awwal 'ams kān 'ayy youm?
(e) kam youm fī fi l-‘usbū9?

6. Report the command or request, using *ṭalabt min*…:
e.g.: rūḥ bukra. – ṭalabt minhum 'innhum yirḥū bukra.
(a) shūfī kitābik.
(b) jīb al-fulūs ma9ak.
(c) rūḥ 9a l-madrasa.
(d) 'udkhulū 9indī.
(e) 'irkabu t-taksī.

7. What time is it?
e.g.: 12.20 – as-sā9a 'iğd9ashr u thulth
(a) 4.15
(b) 6.30
(c) 10.14
(d) 11.40
(e) 1.38 (two possibilities)

8. Read the number:
e.g.: 345 – thalāth miya u khamsa u 'arba9īn
(a) 200
(b) 4,338
(c) 369½
(d) 4,500,000
(e) 772

9. Put the number with the noun:
e.g.: sana (3) – thalātha sanawāt.snīn
(a) youm (12)
(b) 'usbū9 (2)
(c) shahr (6)
(d) ‘imkānīya (4)
(e) thāniya (45)
1. **al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār**

   - munāṣib
   - bada
   - ma9had ma9āhid

   (ba9d mā 9imil Peter al-mawā9id al-munāṣba, bada jawltu fi 9iddat madāris wa ma9āhid ta9līmiya fi l-balad,

   - yihkī
   - ta9āwun
   - ta9līm
   - 9ilmī
   - 'ahmad

   hatta yihkī ma9 al-mudarā' ġawl at-ta9āwun 9ala t-ta9līm al-9ilmī wa l-fannī. fa 'awwal mou9id kān 9ind mudīr al-madrasa th-thānāwīya l-fannīya, ad-duktur 'ahmad hāshim.)

   - 'azunn
   - ḥaka
   - gharad 'oghraḏ min

   'ahmad: 'ahlan yā sayyid Brown. 'ana 'ahmad hāshim, mudīr al-madrasa.

   Peter: furṣa sa9īda, yā 'ustādh 'ahmad. 'azunn 'inn mudīrī ḥaka ma9ak bi khusūṣ al-gharaḏ min ziyyārī?

   - jālas yīlis
   - mas'ala masāyīl
   - 'ahībb
   - 'awwalan

   (yīlīsū.)

   'ahmad: 'ayna9am, 'ana 9ala 9ilm bi l-mas'alā. 'ahībb 'awwalan 'ashrah lak shughl al-madrasa.

   - takhaṣṣus
   - mukhtālīf

   (They sit.)

   - suitable, appropriate
   - he began
   - institute
   - educational

   (After making the appropriate appointments, Peter began his tour of some schools and educational establishments in town,

   - he talks
   - cooperation
   - teaching, education
   - scientific

   - Ahmad (name)

   so as to talk to the directors about cooperation on scientific and technical education. His first appointment was with the Director of the Secondary Technical School, Dr Ahmad Hashim.)

   - I suppose, I presume
   - he spoke, he talked
   - purpose of

   Welcome, Mr Brown. lān Ahmad Hashim, Director of the school.

   - Very pleased to meet you, Dr Hashim. I presume my director has spoken to you about the purpose of my visit?

   - to sit
   - matter
   - I like
   - firstly

   Yes, I know about the matter. I would like first to explain to you the work of the school.

   - specialisation
   - varied, various
kullha all of them

'asāsī field

We have various specialisations, all of them in the basic fields.

qarayt I (have) read

kull all

'asās 'usus basis, foundation

9ilm 9ulūm science

Peter: qarayt 'inn yudrusū 9indkum I read that boys and girls both study here.

'ahmad: 'ab9an. kull at-țullāb wa ț-țalibāt Of course. All the students, boys and girls, study basic sciences (the bases of science).

yudrusū 'usus al-9ulūm.

bi șūra nazariyya theoretically

gidir yiqdar can, to be able

al-‘ān now

khiyāta sewing, dressmaking

țibākha cookery

bi-șūra nazariyya, yiqdaru l-banāt Theoretically, the girls can study any specialisation.

yudrusū 'nyy takhaṣṣūṣ. țatta Until now they have studied

al-‘ān yudrusū l-khiyāta dressmaking and cookery,

wa ț-țibākha,

yīfī he comes

bā9dl some of

yibdā they begin

kahraba electricity

mathalan for example

musta9idd ready, prepared

walākin lamma yīrī l-youn but when the day comes that

wa bā9d l-banāt yibdā yudrusu electricity for example, lān

l-kahraba mathalan, ‘ana ready and the institute's ready.

musta9idd, wa l-ma9had musta9idd. I supposed/presumed

zannayt situation, position

wad9 'oudā9 what

mā huwa/hiya condition

sharț shurūṭ entry

Peter: zannayt ‘inna l-wad9 kadha. fa I presumed that was the

mā hiya shurūṭ ad-dukhūl fi situation. So what are the condi-

l-ma9had? tions of entry to the institute?

murashshah candidate

illī who, that, which (relative pronoun)
LESSON 8

raghba fī dirāsa

'āhmād: al-murashshah illi 9indu raghba fī d-dirāsa huna, mutawassit

shahāda yibdā

mamnū9 läzim yuṭhruṭ min al-madrasa l-mutawassitu mu9 ash-shahāda l-munāsiba. mà yiqdar yibdā huna 'illa bi ħādhi sh-shahāda. ħādha mamnū9.

9ādatan 'ākhariya yibqū 'imma ... 'aw 9ādatan mà fī mushkila. 'ākthariyat at-talāmūdī al-mutawassitiṅ, 9īnd-hum shahāda. yibqū huna 'imma thalātha 'aw 'arba9a sanawāt.

hāla istithnāʾī lájī ājānib fī hālāt istithnāʾīya, ya9nī lájī 'aw ājānib u kadha, nḥūṭtu

ṣaff ṣuṭāf ḥatta tamm

imtiḥān

tahḍirī yumūn ṣuṭūtī fī ṣaff khaṣṣ ḥatta tamm imtiḥān tahḍirī.

māfūm yihimmma nāmāli

Peter: māfūm. yihimmma kthīr at-tā9īlim al-nāmāli ḥaydān. I see. For us practical instruction is also very important.
**ARABIC TODAY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ma9lūm</td>
<td>known, (here: of course)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mashghal mashāghil</td>
<td>workshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hayk</td>
<td>so, therefore, thus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirib yishrab</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nafs-ha</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ʿahmad: ma9lūm; ash-shughl fi l-mashghil ġarūrī yā9ūnī. fa hayk, khallīna nūr ba9dayn al-mashghil ḥatta tākhudh fikra mazbūţa. wälākin ʿawwalan, tishrab qahwa, yā sayyid Peter? 9imilat-ha zoujī nafs-ha. Of course; work in the workshop is essential. So let's visit the workshops later so that you get an accurate impression. But first, will you have some coffee, Mr Brown? My wife made it herself.

2. 9ibārāt

ḥatta l-ʿān until now, up to now
al-gharad min the purpose of

3. mufradāt ʿiqāfīya. at-ta9līm wa t-tadrīb

tārbiya | education, upbringing |
tarbawi | educational |
tadrīs | instruction |
ʿijbārī | compulsory |
thaqāfa | culture |
girāya | reading |
riyādiyyāt | mathematics |
hisāb | arithmetic |
tārīkh tawārīkh | history, date |
kīmiya | chemistry |
fann junūn | art |
līhām | welding |
tabrīd | refrigeration |
nijāra | carpentry |
taqīr taqārīr | report |
kullīya | faculty, college |
kāslān kastla | lazy |
at-ta9līm al-ʿ9ālī /al-jāmiʿī | higher/university education |
najah yinjah (fi mtihān) | to pass (an examination) |
rasab yursub (fi mtihān) | to fail (an examination) |

al-lugha l-9arabīya l-fusaha; al-9arabīya l-fusaha; al-fasīh | literary Arabic |
al-lugha l-9arabīya d-dārīja; al-9arabīya d-dārīja; ad-dārīj | colloquial Arabic |

an-naḥū

4. Past tense of doubled verbs

In doubled verbs the middle and final root letters are identical, e.g. ḥaff ṭō put, to placeō These two root letters stay together in both tenses. Note the diphthong
-ay- inserted before the ending of the first two persons of the past tense:

Root **hāṭt** to put, to place:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Personal Endings</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>hāṭt</strong></td>
<td>-t, -ti, -tū</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hāṭṭayt</strong></td>
<td>-t, -tū</td>
<td>put, placed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. you, he (etc.) put, placed

so also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>habb</strong></td>
<td>to like, love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>marr bi/9ala</strong></td>
<td>to pass by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hall</strong></td>
<td>to solve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hass</strong></td>
<td>to feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shakk fi</strong></td>
<td>to doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>qall/zall</strong></td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Present tense of doubled verbs

The present tense prefixes of doubled verbs are the same as for the hollow verbs (i.e. t- and n- have no vowel). The middle vowel of the verb varies with the verb:

Root **hāṭt**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>habb</strong></td>
<td>to like, love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>marr bi/9ala</strong></td>
<td>to pass by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hall</strong></td>
<td>to solve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hass</strong></td>
<td>to feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shakk fi</strong></td>
<td>to doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>qall/zall</strong></td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Imperative of doubled verbs

The imperative of doubled verbs is formed under the same rules as for hollow verbs:

Root **hāṭt**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>hut</strong></td>
<td>put(s), place(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Past tense of final-weak verbs

Final-weak verbs have a weak (i.e. unstable) final root letter, w, y or '. In the past tense this final root letter takes the following forms:

- before consonantal personal endings (-t, -ti, -tū): _-ay_
- in the third person masculine singular (huwa): _-a_
- before the personal endings -at and -ū: it disappears

Apart from the third person m. sing. (huwa), the personal endings are the same as for verbs with a sound final root letter.

Root **h k y**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>hakayt</strong></td>
<td>to speak, to talk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

so also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>r j w</strong></td>
<td>to request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>r m y</strong></td>
<td>to throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n w y</strong></td>
<td>to intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>q r ʾ</strong></td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* **nawa** has also a weak middle root letter, but this remains stable as w:
8. Present tense of final-weak verbs
Whereas in the past tense all three final weak root letters behave similarly, in the present tense each one has its own pattern. In the present tense each final root letter vocalises into a different vowel:
- final root letter \( w \) vocalises to \( ā \)
- final root letter \( y \) vocalises to \( ā \)
- final root letter \( ʼ \) vocalises to \( a \) and each is dropped before the vocalic personal endings -\( ā \) and -\( ē \).

The prefixes are the same as for the sound verbs (’a-, ti-, ni-, yi-).

Final \( w \) ; raja yirjā ā:
- ’arjā ā, tirjā ā/tirjā ā, yirjā ā/tirjā ā; nirjā ā, tirjā ā, yirjā ā, you (etc.) request(s)

This is the only common final-\( w \) verb used in this form of spoken Arabic.

Final \( y \) ; hāka yihkā ā:
- ’ahkā ā, tihkā ā/tihkā ā, yihkā ā/tihkā ā; nihkā ā, tihkā ā, yihkā ā, you (etc.) speak(s)/talk(s)

so also:
- masha yimshi ā rama yirmī ā jara yijrī ā nawa yinw ā (w stable)

Final hamza; bada yibda:
- ’abda, tibda/tibdā ā, yibda/tibda; nibda, tibdā ā, you (etc.) begin(s)

so also:
- qara yiqra ā

9. Irregular final-weak verbs
Three final-weak verbs are irregular, two of them similarly:
Root \( n s y \), nisī ā yinsa ā to forget:
Past: nisī ā t, nisī ā t/nisī ā ti, nisī ā /nisyat; nisū ā t, nisū ā t ā, nisī ā ā, you (etc.) forgot

Pres.: ’ansa, tinsa/tinsā ā yinsa ā/tinsa ā, ninsa, tinsū ā t ā, you (etc.) forget(s)

Root ’\( j \) y; ’aja ā jī ā to come:
Past: ’ijī ā t, ’ijī ā t/’ijāt; ’aja ā jī ā, you (etc.) came

Pres.: ’ājī ā, ’ājī ā, ’ājī ā ā ā ā ā ā, you (etc.) come(s)

10. Imperative of final-weak verbs
The imperative of final-weak verbs is formed under the same rules as that of sound verbs:
- ’ihkā ’ihkā ā/lā tihkā ā/lā tihkā ā
- ’insā ’insā ā/lā tinsā ā/lā tinsā ā

The affirmative imperative of ’aja ā jī ā is not used. Use instead:
- ta9ālāl’/ta9ālāl’ ā (from another root) Come

The negative imperative is regular: lā jī ā/lā jī ā/lā jī ā Don’ t come

Final-weak verb rule: In the tenses and imperative of final-weak verbs, the weak final root letter is dropped before the vocalic endings -\( ā \), -\( ā \) and -\( ā \).
LESSON 8

11. Negatives and pronoun suffixes
Both doubled and final-weak verbs are negated as usual: tenses with mā, imperative with lā. Suffixes are added as usual. For the final-weak verbs, the object pronoun rule (4/6) is especially important:

he reads it  lā tinsāhum  donā forget them

12. Auxiliary verbs
An auxiliary verb expresses the will, inclination or potential to carry out the action of another (‘dependent’) verb: He wants to know, I can go. The English verbs italicised here are auxiliaries. Almost any Arabic verb whose meaning permits it can be used as an auxiliary. Examples are:

qidir yiqdar  can, to be able  nawa yinwa  to intend
bada yihda  to begin  nisī yinsa  to forget
hābb yihibb  to like  khallī-  let
najah yinjah  to succeed  samaḥ yismaḥ  li  to permit

The auxiliary can be in any form, but the following dependent verb is always in the present tense, as after mumkin, lāzim and yumkin:

mā yiqdar yihdā 9arabī.  He can’t speak Arabic.
‘anwī ‘araḥ ma9kum.  I intend to go with you.
‘ahibb ākul huna.  I like eating/to eat here.
lā tinsa ūjī.  Don’t forget to come
khallī‘ismah li ‘ashraḥ kayf.  Let me/Permit me to explain how.
bada yimshī warāī.  He began walking/to walk behind me.
mā qidirt/mā kunt ‘aqdar ‘ashūfā.  I wasn’t able to see him.
mā najah tī9malu?  Didn’t you succeed in doing it?

The present tense of kān yikūn has present meaning after an auxiliary verb:
khallī yikūn kadha.  Let it be so.

13. Adjective (relative) clauses
See 6/18 for the definition of a clause. Relative clauses are those which qualify an antecedent, i.e. a preceding noun or pronoun.

After a definite antecedent, we use the relative pronoun illī erah, that, whichū
at-tilmādī illī yihda yudrus 9indna, lāzim yikūn 9indu ... The pupil who begins studying with us must have ...

at-tilmādī illī katabat hādha ...  the pupil who wrote that ...

In these examples illī is the subject of its verb. When illī is the direct or prepositional object of its verb (3/16), the verb or preposition carries the appropriate pronoun suffix:

al-kitāb illī qaraytu ...  the book which I read (it) ...
wayn al-falūs illī jiḥ-ha?  Whereas the money which you brought (it)?
al-bilād illī kānū yusamū ḍī ...  the country in which they were living/ which they were living in (it) ...

an-nās illī darast 9ind-hum al-9arabī ...  the people with whom I studied Arabic/whom I studied Arabic with (them) ...

After an indefinite antecedent, illī is omitted:
Subject: shakhī yiqūl hādha ...  a person who says that ...
14. Pronoun antecedent

In a relative sentence having a pronoun as antecedent, the same rules apply as shown above, except that the pronoun antecedents huwa, hiya, hum are omitted:

illī yihkā kadha ma ya9raf al-9arab.  He who/Whoever talks like that
doesn’t know the Arabs.

shuftu illī ‘aja?  Did you see the person who came?
illī shuft-hum ...  those (whom) I saw ...

15. Interrogatives

With the interrogative ‘ayy ‘what, which the pronoun suffix on the verb or preposition is optional:

‘ayy kitāb tiqrā'ā?  What book are you reading?
khilāl ‘ayy fatra sakantū hūnāk?  For how long (During what period) did you live there?

But better is mā huwa/mā hiya plus illī, with obligatory suffix:

mā huwa l-kitāb illī tiqrā?  What is the book that you are reading?
mā hiya l-fatra illī sakantū khilāla hūnāk?  What is the period during which you lived there?

mā here is ḍwhat not a negative.

Note also mīn illī, often preferred to mīn:
mīn illī kān yihkī?  Who (is it who) was speaking?
mīn illī haka ma9u ‘ams?  Who (is it who) spoke to him yesterday?
mīn illī ḥakayt ma9u ‘ams?  Whom did you speak to (Who is it that you spoke to) yesterday?

If you know French, you will recognise a close parallel for the first two examples:

Qui est-ce qui parlait? Qui est-ce qui lui a parlé hier?

16. Nafs

The noun nafs ḍself ḍhas three important uses:

- in the m. sing., in a definite construct: ḍhe same
  nafs ash-shīl the same thing  ḍnafs an-nās the same people
- reflexive or emphatic pronoun with suffix: ḍself ḍ
  9imilat-ha zouji nafs-ha.  My wife made it herself.
  badā yishukkū fī ḍnafs-hum.  They began to doubt themselves.
- in its original meaning as a noun: ḍself ḍ
  i9timād 9ala n-nafs  self-confidence
17. ba\textit{\textacuten}d

This word has three important uses:

- invariable reciprocal pronoun: \textit{each other}  
  \textit{mashū 9an ba\textit{\textacuten}d}  
  They walked away from each other.

- reciprocal pronoun or noun: \textit{each other} repeated; first with a suffix, next with the article:  
  \textit{mā 9irifū ba\textit{\textacuten}hum al-ba\textit{\textacuten}d}.  
  They didn’t know each other.

- in a definite construct or with a possessive suffix: \textit{some (of)`:  
  \textit{ba\textit{\textacuten}d waqtak} some of your time  
  \textit{ba\textit{\textacuten}d al-waqt} some of the time  
  Some of them did not come at all.

18. \textit{kull}

Three important uses:

- as a definite noun: \textit{the whole}  
  \textit{al-kull} the whole (lot)

- before an indefinite singular noun: \textit{every, each}  
  \textit{kull shī} everything  
  \textit{kull wāhid wāhid bas! Only one each!}

- in a definite construct or with a possessive suffix: \textit{all (of)`  
  \textit{kull al-\textit{awlad} all the children  
  kullu/kullha all of it

19. \textit{jamī\textit{\textacuten}}

This is a synonym for \textit{kull} \textit{al-lān} the plural only:  
\textit{kull/jamī\textit{\textacuten} an-nās all the people  
\textit{li l-jamī\textit{\textacuten}} for all/everybody

20. Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers show a position in a sequence. The ordinal numbers 1st to 10th are as follows. All but the first two are derived on the model \textit{thāli\textit{\textacuten} dhir\textit{\textacuten}}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>thāli\textit{\textacuten}</th>
<th>thāni, thāniya, thāniy\textit{\textacuten}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>khāmis</td>
<td>6th sādis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>sābi\textit{\textacuten}</td>
<td>8th thāmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>tāsi\textit{\textacuten}</td>
<td>10th 9āshir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They are used in two ways:

- m. sing. form in indefinite construct with the qualified noun. The construct is, however, definite in meaning:  
  \textit{rābi\textit{\textacuten} wāhid} the fourth one  
  \textit{thāli\textit{\textacuten} marra} the third time

- as an adjective, following and agreeing with the noun:
  \textit{as-sana l-\textit{\textacuten}la} the first year  
  \textit{ash-shahr as-s\textit{\textacuten}dis} the sixth month

\textit{thāni} also means \textit{other}`

\textit{thāni marra} the other/another time; the second time  
(fī) shī thāni? (Is there) anything else?

Note also \textit{thāni youm} \textit{the next dayō

21. For ordinal numbers above \textit{tenth} we use the cardinal number following the noun, or after a noun such as \textit{raqm}:

\textit{ad-dars (raqm) \textit{\textacuten}d9ashr al-youm al-9ishrīn}
22. **mithl**

Note the structure

mithl hādha sh-shakhs  
a person like this/that; such a person

mithl hādhi l-buyūt  
houses like this; such houses

Distinguish between:

- **Preposition:** mithl
  - like

- **Conjunction:** mithl mā
  - as

huwa mish mithlak.  
He isn’t like you

9imil mithl m  
He did as I did.

23. **Activities, instruments, places**

Some activities have typical patterns for profession, person, instrument and place:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Profession, model nijāra</th>
<th>Person, model najjār</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n j r</td>
<td>carve: nijāra</td>
<td>carpentry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭ b h k</td>
<td>cook: ṭibākh</td>
<td>cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḫ y ẗ</td>
<td>sew: ḥiyātha</td>
<td>sewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s b k</td>
<td>smelt: sibāka</td>
<td>smelting, plumbing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l ḥ m</td>
<td>weld: lihām (no final -a)</td>
<td>welding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n q sh</td>
<td>paint: niqāsha</td>
<td>painting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Instrument**, models miftāh minshafa manāshif

| f t h | open: miftāh         | key                  |
| n s h r | saw: minshār        | saw                  |
| s m r | nail: mismār         | nail                 |
| q y s | measure: miqyās      | measure(ment)        |
| n s h f | dry: minshafa       | towel                |

**Place**, models maktab/maktaba makātib

| k t b | write: maktab        | office               |
| ṭ b kh | cook: maḥbakh      | kitchen              |
| 9 h d | know: maḥhad        | institute            |
| sh gh l | work: mashghal   | workshop             |
| 9 m l | make: maḥmal       | workshop, laboratory |
| ṭ 9 m | taste: maḥ9am       | restaurant           |
| d r s | study: madrasa      | school               |
| 8 n 9 | fabricate: masna9   | factory              |
| ḥ ṭ ṭ | put: maḥatta        | station              |
| ḥ k m | judge: maḥkama      | law-court            |
| ṭ y r | fly: maṭār          | airport              |
| f r q | split: mafraq       | crossroad            |
| n z l | reside: manzil       | residence            |

24. **Regional variations: Iraq, Gulf, North-west Africa**

In Iraq and north-west Africa q is often pronounced g:

- gāl → gāl
- qism → gism
- mafraq → mafırq
An a or ā next to the g in such words may be velarised (see Pronunciation):
gāl, mafrāg.

In Iraq and some parts of the Gulf, k next to a front or middle vowel (i, ī, a, ā) sounds in some words like ch in English church, a sound not represented in the Arabic alphabet. We can transcribe it ch:
kām → cham  kāfīlik? → kāfī likch

Iraqi and the Gulf have a special word for ‘how’, shloun:
shlounach/shlounich/shlounkum? = kāfak/kāfik/kāfukum?

Iraqis pronounce ch and p (the latter also as in English) for certain words borrowed from their Turkish and Persian neighbours:
chāī = shāī
pūst = būst

25. jumal mithāliyya

at-ta9wun ma9 mithl hal-‘askhās ghayr mumkin. mā yisma9ū ‘abadan.

mīn illi ‘aja yiḥkī ma9kum?

mīn illi ‘ijit tiḥkī ma9u?
mā hiya l-fatra līl kānat tiṣrī khilāla l-buḥūth bayn al-ḥukūmatayn?

hiya mara muthaqafa jiddan tiḥkī thalātha ‘aw ‘arba9a lughāt.

kānu l-mudarrisīn yiḥkū ma9 ba9d bi khasūṣ tawārīkh al-īmtihānāt.

26. at-tamārīn

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:
e.g.: nawa – nawa yinwī
(a) bada  (b) shakk  (c) ’aja
(d) nisī  (e) zann

2. Give the affirmative and negative imperative of the verb:
e.g.: ḥakā – ‘iḥkī, ‘iḥkī, ‘iḥkū; lā tiḥkī, lā tiḥkī, lā tiḥkū
(a) dall  (b) biqī  (c) ’aja
(d) ḫatt  (e) dahlak

3. Put into the present tense:
e.g.: dallaynā – ndill
(a) nisyat  (b) marr  (c) mā ’ajū
(d) shū nawaytū?  (e) bada yiqra
4. Rephrase, using *qidir yiqdar* in the present tense:
e.g.: 'ana mā qarayt al-kitāb. – mā ’aqdar ’aqra l-kitāb.
(a) mashayna hatta l-mafrāq.
(c) dallū lana ṭ-ṭarīq.  
(b) mā yibda l-youm.
(d) ’asma9ak kwayyis.

5. Give the ordinal number, in the masculine and feminine:
e.g.: thalātha – thālith, thālitha
(a) ithnayn  
(c) thamāniya
(b) wāḥid
(d) ’arba9a

6. Make the two sentences into one relative sentence:
e.g.: hay al-kitāb. ’akhadhtu minnu. – hay al-kitāb illī ’akhadhtu minnu.
(a) ta9raf al-mu9allim? katab hādha t-taqrīr.
(b) fī thānī su’āl. nisīt ’as’alu.
(c) 'ishrah lī l-mushkila. kuntū tiḥkū ḥawlha.
(d) wayn al-milaff? ḥaṭṭaytu ’amāmāk yā ’akhū.  
(e) bā9ū bayt. sakanū fī min 9ishrīn sana.
1. **al-ḥiwar**

(Dr Sharif has invited Peter out to dinner in a restaurant.)

(9ala ṭarīq al-маṭ9am)

* al-ḥiwar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“al-ḥiwar”</th>
<th>“On the way to the restaurant”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>twaṣṣilna</td>
<td>you take us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṣarrīfık</td>
<td>I acquaint you with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>Where are you taking us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li wayn ṭwaṣṣilna?</td>
<td>ṣarrīfık “ahl maṭ9am fi 1-balaď.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’ād:</td>
<td>ṣarrīfık “ahl maṭ9am fi 1-balaď.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaddadi</td>
<td>They renewed/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamāman</td>
<td>renovated it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(fī 1-маṭ9am)

* al-ḥiwar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“al-ḥiwar”</th>
<th>“In the restaurant”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zayy</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listá</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’ād:</td>
<td>Here you are, Peter, make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfadjal ya Peter, zavy baytak.</td>
<td>yourself at home. Here’s the menu. What will you order?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hay al-lista. shū tu’mur?</td>
<td>I prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘afaddil</td>
<td>maza (hors dı̈ uvres)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maza</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dajay</td>
<td>cooked in spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musakhkhan</td>
<td>rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruzz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>I prefer to begin with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘afaddil ́ abda bi l-maza, u ba9dayn dajay musakhkhan bi r-ruzz.</td>
<td>the maza, and then spiced chicken with rice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’ād:</td>
<td>Excellent. And what are you drinking, Peter?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muntáz. u shū tishrab yā Peter?</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birā</td>
<td>Rashid (name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rashid</td>
<td>waiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gərsoun</td>
<td>soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouraba</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(fī 1-маṭ9am)

* al-ḥiwar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“al-ḥiwar”</th>
<th>“In the restaurant”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter:</td>
<td>Beer, please</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birā min faḍlac.</td>
<td>Rashid ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’ād:</td>
<td>Rashid ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yji l-gərsoun rashid.)</td>
<td>(Rashid, the waiter, comes.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rashid:</td>
<td>Yes, doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na9am, yā duktur.</td>
<td>Please bring us one maza, and for me a tomato soup, and then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu’ād:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jib lana min faḍlac wāḥid maza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u ‘ilay shourabat banadéra,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u ba9dayn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plate of fried fish with mixed vegetables.

For my guest spiced chicken with rice, I'll have a plate of fried fish with mixed vegetables.

(drinking) glass

And one beer, and for me a glass of arrack, if you would be so kind.

Certainly. Right away.

Peter: I would like some dates, please.

Peter: I would like some dates, please.

Peter: I would like some dates, please.
Peter: wala shī, salāntak.
Nothing, thank you.

fu’ād: yā rashīd, ‘i9mal ma9rūf u jīb lana tamr u tuffāḥa, u thnayn mazbūta kamān.
Rashid, please bring us some dates and an apple, and also two medium sweet coffees.

(quddām ’utayl Peter) (in front of Peter’s hotel)
(jārī, jāriya, jāriyīn (also:) flowing
quduman ahead)

fu’ād: fa kayl shughlak, yā Peter? lissa jārī quduman?
So how’s your work, Peter? Still moving ahead?

ʃirt (here:) I began
ḥill ḥalāl solution
al-wāḥid one (ind. pronoun)
yijarrib he tries

Peter: bi sūra 9āmma, māshi kwāyyis.
In general, it’s going well. I began to encounter a few problems, but we’ll find a solution for them. One must try.

ta9bān tired
’ashadd stronger
jadīdan recently
‘idha (here:) if

fu’ād: walākin ’int mish ta9bān shwayy? fi ra’yī, kunt ’ashadd lamma shuftak jadīdan. ‘udrub, fī tilifoun 9ala tīl ‘idha mish kwāyyis. lā tinsa.
But aren’t you a bit tired? I think you were stronger when I saw you recently. Ring me at once if you’re not well. Don’t forget.

sharrāfīna (you honoured us)
(tsharrāfna it was a great pleasure
(qalbiyān (dwe were honoured)
tiṣbiḥ 9ala khayr the pleasure’s mine/ours
wa ’int bi khayr (awake in wellbeing)
sharrāftāna yā Peter. (dānd you in wellbeing)
(Peter: It was a great pleasure, Peter.
(tsharrāfna yā fu’ād, wa ’ashkurak wa ’int bi khayr, yā Peter. The pleasure’s mine, Fuad, and thank you very much for this evening. Good night.
fu’ād: wa ’int bi khayr, yā Peter. Good night to you, Peter.

2. 9ibārāt
zayy baytak/baytik/baytkum (ālike your house) Make yourself/yourselves at
home.

'ı9mal/'ı9malī/'ı9malī ma9rāf (Do a kindness) Be so good as to ...
salām/k/salāmik/salāmikum (I wish only) your safety No, thank you. A polite way of refusing an offer.

jārī/jāriya quduman going (flowing) ahead, proceeding
sharrāfiya (You honoured us) It was a great pleasure. Said by the host on parting, always in the plural. The guest’s response is:
salāt/salātik/salātikum (I wish only) your safety No, thank you. A polite way of refusing an offer.

3. mufradāt 'idāfıya. al-'akl wa l-mashrūbāt

| sufra sufar | dining table | sikkīn sakākin | knife |
| shouka shwak | fork | mal9aqa malāq | spoon |
| finjān fanajīn | cup | khubz | bread |
| milih | salt | filfil | pepper |
| sukkar | sugar | sukhn | hot |
| zibda | butter | jībra | cheese |
| murabba | jam | qinnīna qanānī | bottle |
| nbūdīh | wine | 9ašīr | juice |
| may* | water | may* ma9danī | mineral water |
| thalji | ice | hūza/būza | ice-cream |
| hālih | milk | maslāq | boiled |
| lahm | meat | mubhammar | roast(ed) |
| sāda | (invariable) plain | tāza | (invariable) fresh |
| hilu, ī hilwa | sweet | mubahhar | spicy |

jou9ān, jou9a, jiyā9 hungry 9ašān, 9aša, 9išak thirsty
qahwā: sāda no sugar; ma9būt(a) medium sweet; hilwa very sweet

* The word may (may) has the only velarised m in spoken Arabic.

an-naḥū

4. Ordering food and drink

When ordering food and drink we use the masculine of ìneb and ìwōb we do not use the dual or plural of the noun:

wāhid bīra ithnayn qahwā thalātha shāī

Also, with the exception of hilwa, the feminine adjective is little used:

‘arba9a (qahwā) ma9būt(a) four medium-sweet coffees

5. Collective nouns

Many living creatures, natural substances and artisanal products are designated with a singular collective noun, usually masc. with no plural, for the whole species or group:

| samak | fish | baqar | cattle | dajjāj | chickens |
| khayl | horses | ìbil | camels | dhubāb | flies |
| tuffāh | apples | 9īnab | grapes | tīn | figs |
LESSON 9

6. Most such words have a (fem.) unit noun with final -a, pl. sometimes sound, sometimes broken:

- samaka ‘asmāk
- dajāja
- 9inaba ‘a9nāb
- mouza
- tuffāha
- burtuqāna

7. Some of the vegetables and fruits have an alternative unit noun formed with habba (pl. hubāb) in construct. The plural of this form is little used:

- habbat tuffāh
- habbat 9inab/mouz/tin/tamr

8. Two important animals have unit nouns different from their collectives:

- hišān hin
- jamal jimāl

Otherwise, most mammals have only a unit noun:

- kharāf khirāf
- bissas būs
- 9asāf 9asāfī

and note: hayawan animal

9. Increased forms of verbs

The verbs studied so far are all in the so-called Form I or ‘unincreased’ form of the root. There exist also ‘increased’ forms, II to X, for all the verb classes. No root has all forms; some even lack Form I. Only existing forms may be used; do not derive your own. Form II is examined below.

10. Verbs of Form II

Verbs of Form II are built on the models:

- Verbs with sound final root letter: ḥaddar yihaddir to prepare
- Final-weak verbs: rabba yirabbī to educate, bring up

Note: The middle root letter doubles, and the vowels are invariable.

Form II verbs can take a direct object. Some have a causative meaning, i.e. they cause their object to perform the action of the verb. Personal endings and prefixes are as for Form I hollow verbs, except that the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies to final-weak roots.

Sound final root letter (sound, initial-w, hollow, doubled classes):

- Root ḥ d r, Form II ḥaddar yihaddir to prepare:
  Past: ḥaddart, ḥaddart/ḥaddartī, ḥaddar/ḥaddarat;
  ḥaddaruna, ḥaddartū, ḥaddaratū I, you, he (etc.) prepared
  Pres.: ’ahaddir, thaddir/thaddirī, yīhaddir/yihaddir;
  nḥaddir, ḥaddirū, yīhaddirū I, you, he (etc.) prepare(s)
so also many verbs, e.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>faddal</td>
<td>to prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faddal</td>
<td>to take down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qaddam</td>
<td>to offer/serve/present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhakkar</td>
<td>to remind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kallaf</td>
<td>to cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kassar</td>
<td>to shatter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jarrab</td>
<td>to try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khallas</td>
<td>to finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'akhkhar</td>
<td>to delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aththar</td>
<td>to affect, have an effect on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9arratif</td>
<td>to decide, to report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kallafn</td>
<td>to let, let go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqqaf</td>
<td>to stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mawwal</td>
<td>to finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawwar</td>
<td>to depict, photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghayyar</td>
<td>to change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. Imperative of Form II

The imperative of Form II is made in the same manner as for Form I hollow verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jarrhib</td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khalli</td>
<td>let, let go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* see 5/11 and 8/12.

12. șär as auxiliary verb

șär, in the past tense only, can mean  do begin as an auxiliary verb (see 8/12), mainly in involuntary or unwelcome situations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>șirt</td>
<td>I've begun to encounter problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>șär</td>
<td>He began breaking up the furniture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

The comparative degree of simple (i.e. triliteral, basic form) adjectives and adverbs is made on the following models:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound (three stable consonants)</td>
<td>kbīr</td>
<td>'akbar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Initial-
| w                                  | wādīh | 'awdah      |
| Hollow (middle w or y)              | tawīl | 'atwāl      |
| Doubled (identical last two consonants) | jadīd | 'ajadd      |
| Final-weak (final w or y)           | qawī  | strong      |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kbīr, 'akbar</td>
<td>big(ger)</td>
<td>kbīr, 'akbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sghīr, 'agghar</td>
<td>small(er)</td>
<td>rkhīs, 'arkhas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sārī, 'asra9</td>
<td>fast(er)</td>
<td>qaṣīr, 'aqṣar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāsī9, 'awsa9</td>
<td>wider(r), (more) widely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wādīh, 'awdah</td>
<td>clear(er), (more) clearly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tawīl, 'atwāl</td>
<td>long(er)</td>
<td>jadīd, 'ajadd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qalīl, 'aqall</td>
<td>little, less</td>
<td>khafīf, 'akhaff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shadīd, 'ashadd</td>
<td>(more) severe(ly), (more) vigorous(ly)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qawī 'aqwīyyā`, 'aqwa</td>
<td>strong(er)</td>
<td>9ālī, 'a9la</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(tayyib forms a comparative 'atyab, but 'aḥsan, derived from a different root and learned in Lesson 4/1, is more often used for 'better kwāyīs does not form a comparative.)

Comparative adjectives in this form are invariable for gender and number:

walad 'aqwa bint 'asīr kulūb 'arkhas nas 'akbar

For the comparatives of derived adjectives and adverbs (e.g. nisba, derivatives beginning with mu-), put 'akhar after the adjective or adverb. The adjective agrees:

kitāb 'asāsī 'akhar a more basic book
nās muthaqafīn 'akhar more cultured/educated people

Comparative adjectives, in whatever form, are always indefinite.

Decreasing comparison of all adjectives and adverbs is made with 'aqall. The adjective agrees:

nās kura'ma 'aqall less generous people

'dhanīs min as a preposition (i.e. before a noun or pronoun) or mimma as a conjunction (i.e. before a clause, see 6/18):

huwa 'aqwa mimma huwa ya'raf. He is stronger than I/me.

'ana nisit 'akhar mimma huwa ya'raf. I have forgotten more than he knows.

14. Superlative of adjectives

The superlative (biggest) of adjectives is expressed by using the comparative in the same way as the ordinal numbers, i.e. either:

'akbar bayt the biggest house 'aqghar wālād the smallest boy

or by making both noun and comparative adjective definite:
al-bayt al-‘akbar
at-talāmidd mujahidīn al-‘akthar/al-‘aqall the most/least hardworking students

The latter is the only possibility with derived adjectives.
Note also: ‘akbar al-‘oulād the biggest (one) of the children
A few important adjectives have a feminine superlative on the model kхr → kubra, used whenever the adjective has to agree:
m. ’akbar, t. kabra ‘agghar, ‘ughra ‘ahsan, ‘husna
‘atwal, ṭila ‘ata, ṭuyla
So: ‘asghar bint but: al-bint as-sughra
‘ughra l-banāt hiya s-sughra fi s-saff

The superlative of adverbs is studied in Lesson 11.

15. Equal comparison

Equal comparison (as ... as) is expressed with mithl:
huwa ghanī mithlak.
huwa mish šā瑚 mithilha.

as ... as possible is expressed with the comparative, thus:
bī ’arkhas mà yumkin as cheap(ly) as possible
bī ’asra9 mà yumkin as fast/soon as possible

Note also: fī ‘aqrab/asra9 waqt mumkin (in the nearest/fastest time possible) as soon as possible

16. Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronouns are best summarised in tables. All are masc. singular.
Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun as subject of the verb</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anim-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-wāhid one</td>
<td>‘ayy wāhid anyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fī ‘ahad 1 someone</td>
<td>‘ayy shakhs anyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fī shī 1 something</td>
<td>‘ayy shī anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mā fī shī 1 nothing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun as object of the verb, or governed by a preposition</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anim-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-wāhid one shakhs someone</td>
<td>‘ayy wāhid anyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ahad someone</td>
<td>‘ayy shakhs anyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shī something</td>
<td>‘ayy shī anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shī 2 nothing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
- Two of the words (shakhs and shī) used as pronouns are in fact singular nouns already known to us. ‘ahad is a variant of wāhid:
LESSON 9 91

‘ayy shakhs/‘ayy wāhid yiqdar yizawwirhum. Anyone can show them round.

wa‘salt ‘ayy shakhs/‘ayy wāhid li l-balad? Did you take anyone to town?
ta‘raf shakhs yiqdar yidabbiru? Do you know someone who can fix it?
‘akhadhū shī ma‘9hum. They took something with them.
dabbarū ‘ayy shī? Did they arrange anything?
kān fī shī? Was there something?
lāzim al-wāhid yijarrib. One must try.

• Negation: for the negative subject pronouns, it is the pronoun which is negated; for the object pronouns, it is the verb:
lā ‘āhad yuqaddim mithl ādha l-‘akl. No one (there is no one who) serves food like this.
mish lāzim yishukkū fī ‘ayy shī. They must doubt nothing/mustn’t doubt anything.

• The structures with fī/mā fī are made past as shown in 6/7 and future as shown in 7/7. NB stress.

• The pronouns marked 1 are followed by an indefinite relative construction (see 8/13) with an affirmative verb. In other words, Arabic says (there is) no one who/anything which does rather than (no one/anything (does) Note also that, unlike huwa, hiya and hum (8/14), the indefinite pronouns shown above are not omitted when appearing as an antecedent:
fī ‘āhad yutlub ylbīka ma‘9ak. Someone (there is someone who) is asking to talk to (with) you.
fī shī yihimmna kthīr fī hādhi l-mas’ala. Something (there is something which) greatly interests us in this matter.

• The pronouns marked 2 are preceded by a negative verb. In other words, Arabic says don’t ... anything rather than nothing:
mā shufna ‘āhad. We saw no one (didn’t see anyone).
mā qarrarī shī. They decided nothing (didn’t decide anything).
(mā) fī 9indna raghba fī shī thānī. We would like something/ wouldn’t like anything else.

17. Lastly, two shortened replies; lā ‘āhad 60body‘and wala shī 60thingô
mīn illī kunt tībak ma‘9ū? – lā ‘āhad. Who were you talking to? I Nobody.

18. jumal mithāliya
‘ahsan ‘imkānīya, hiya ‘inna njaddid al-maṣna9 kullu.
šaddiqū, yikallifak ‘akhar bi kthīr kadha.

‘afaddil ‘innak itwasilhūm ‘int, yā ‘akhī.
lāzim nu‘mur kamān tōub; tibqa 9indna kam tōuba bas.

The best possibility is that we renovate the whole factory.
Believe me, it costs you much more this way.
I prefer that you take them.
We need to order more bricks; we have only a few bricks left.
19. *at-tamārīn*

1. Give the principal parts of the verb:
e.g.: qarrar – qarrar yiqarrir
(a) faddal
(d) rabba
(b) waqqaf
(e) ṣaddaq
(c) ḥabb

2. Give the unit noun, with alternatives where possible:
e.g.: tamr – tamra, ḥabbat tamr
(a) baqar
(d) mouz
(b) tuffāḥ
(e) bayd
(c) balāṭ

3. Give the comparative and superlative, m. sing., of each adjective:
e.g.: kbīr – ḏakbar, al-‘akbar
(a) ṭawīl
(d) rkhīṣ
(b) kwayyis
(e) muthaqqaf
(c) daraḏīf

4. Connect as one relative sentence:
e.g.: ’aḏraf an-najjār. jaddadu. – ’aḏraf an-najjār illī jaddadu.
(a) huwa muḏallim. dāyimān yishrah kwayyis.
(b) mā qidir yiwaqqif as-sayyāra. kān yisūqha.
(c) kān yisūq sayyāra. mā qidir yiwaqqifha.
(d) 9allamtu shī. mish lázmā yinsā ḏabadu.
(e) qarraru mas’ala. t-himmma kullna.

5. Re-express, putting the superlative adjective after the noun:
e.g.: ḏakbar bināya – al-bināya l-kubra
(a) ṭaḏwa’il kitāb
(d) ḏakram ‘ab
(b) ajmal sayyāra
(e) ḏakram ‘umma
(c) 9allam ‘aḏrīt wāfshār
(d) ‘aḏrīt ḏawādshār
(e) 9allam ‘aḏrīt ḏis’iṣhār

6. Re-express, putting the superlative adjective after the noun:
e.g.: ḏakbar bināya – al-bināya l-kubra
(a) ṭaḏwa’il kitāb
(d) ḏakram ‘ab
(b) ajmal sayyāra
(e) ḏakram ‘umma
(c) 9allam ‘aḏrīt wāfshār
(d) ‘aḏrīt ḏawādshār
(e) 9allam ‘aḏrīt ḏis’iṣhār
ad-dars al-9āshirī Lesson 10
mashrū9 jadīd ī A New Project

1. al-ḥiwar
(Peter is discussing a new project with Abdarrahman.)

mudhakkira memorandum
mashrū9 mashārī9 project

9abdarrahman: ṭayyib yā Peter, qarayt mudhakkirtak, u khallīna
nshūf mashrū9ak al-jadīd.
tfāḍdal.
tahsīn improvement
9alāqa relation(ship)
munazzama organisation (body)
9āmil working

Peter: shukran. al-gharad محمد min
hādha l-mashrū9 huwa tahsīn
9alāqatma ma9 ghayr min
al-munazzamāt al-9āmil
fi l-qitāl al-khāṣṣ.
şan9/sun9

9abdarrahman: fi ș-sun9 bas, 'aw fi t-taswīq
kamān?
wujha direction, aspect
tajmiţ collection
ma9lūmāt (pl.) information
di9āya advertising

Peter: fi kull wujha, ya9nī fi tajmiţ al-ma9lūmāt, wa d-di9āya,
khidma service
tawzīf recruitment
wa l-khidmat, wa t-tawzīf u kadha.
shāmīl comprehensive
bi l-`asas basically

9abdarrahman: mashrū9 shāmīl ya9nī.
bii l-`asas gharadu ma9fūm.
rāyiḥīn n'assīs we shall establish
mukawwan min composed of,
mumaththil consisting of
representative
Peter: ráyiîn n’assis lajna şghûra
mukawwana min mumaththînîn al-qiţâ9
mandâb
ghurfat tijâra
tarwîj
u mandâb ghurfat at-tijâra,
tkûn mas’ûla 9an dirâsat
u tarwîj al-mashrû9.

We shall establish a small committee consisting of representatives of the sector delegate Chamber of Commerce promotion
and a delegate from the Chamber of Commerce, which will be responsible for studying and promoting (the study and promotion of) the project.

tamwîl
kayfiya
mu9ayyan
‘ijâbî
9âbdarrahman: wa t-tamwîl? And the financing?
Peter: bi khuşûs kayfiyat at-tamwîl lâzîm inshîf taqrîr al-lajna.

As to the mode of financing, we shall have to see the committee’s report. Nothing more is definite at present (and present time). Hopefully its report will be positive, be issued, appear February

shadar yûsdur
shubût
ta9limât
(also:) instructions
9âbdarrahman: mata yûsdur? When does it come out?
Peter: fi ‘awâ’îl shubût.
9âbdarrahman: waqt qaşîr yâ ‘îkhî. (That’s) a short time.
Peter: mu9lûm. al-lajna lâzîm itkûn 9ind-ha ta9limât wâdîla jîddan.

Of course. The committee will have to have very clear instructions.

2. 9ibârât
bi l’-asâs basically
ghurfat (at-)tijâra Chamber of Commerce
fi l-waqt al-hâdir at present

3. mufradât ‘îdâfiya. al-‘ijtimâ9ât
9âdî ordinary ghayr 9âdî extraordinary
jadwal ‘a9mâl agenda majâl al-baḥth terms of reference
ra’is ru’asâ’ chairman maḥdar ‘ijtimâ9 minutes
bahâth yibhâth to discuss musawwada draft
wathîqa wathîq tool to discuss tawqîa
qarûr resolution tawqîya recommendation
‘aqallîya minority tâswît voting ḥadâr yuḥdur to attend
4. Participles

Participles are verbal adjectives, e.g. *writing*, *reading* Arabic has two kinds of participles:
- active participles, describing or identifying the subject of the verb,
- passive participles, describing or identifying the object (direct or prepositional) of the verb.

Participles are formed regularly. Most have sound f. and pl. forms (but see paragraph 9 below).

5. Participles of Form I

Participles of Form I are made on the following models (the m. sing. is shown):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb class</th>
<th>Model verb</th>
<th>Active participle</th>
<th>Passive participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(initial ‘)</td>
<td>katab</td>
<td>kātib writing</td>
<td>maktūb written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(middle ‘)</td>
<td>‘akal</td>
<td>ākil eating</td>
<td>ma’kūl eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sa’al</td>
<td>sāyil asking</td>
<td>mas’īl (asked)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial-w</td>
<td>wajad</td>
<td>wājij finding</td>
<td>mawjud present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow (-w-)</td>
<td>shāf</td>
<td>shāyif seeing</td>
<td>mashāf seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-y-)</td>
<td>bāğ</td>
<td>bāyi9 selling</td>
<td>mabi9 sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled</td>
<td>ḥatt</td>
<td>ḥāṭṭit putting</td>
<td>maḥṭūṭ put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final-weak (-w)</td>
<td>raja</td>
<td>rājī9 requesting</td>
<td>marjū requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-y)</td>
<td>ḥaka</td>
<td>ḥākī9 speaking</td>
<td>maḥkī spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-‘)</td>
<td>qara</td>
<td>qarī9 reading</td>
<td>maqrū read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other examples, from verbs already known:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Active participle</th>
<th>Passive participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td>9irif</td>
<td>9ārīf knowing</td>
<td>ma9rīf known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talab</td>
<td>jālīb requesting</td>
<td>maṭālīb requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘amar</td>
<td>‘āmir ordering</td>
<td>ma’mūr ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial-w</td>
<td>wiṣil</td>
<td>wāsil arriving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow</td>
<td>rāh</td>
<td>ṭāyīh going</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>khāf</td>
<td>khāyif fearing</td>
<td>makhāf feared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled</td>
<td>ḥass</td>
<td>ḥāsis sensing</td>
<td>maḥsūs sensed, tangible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shakk</td>
<td>shākik doubting</td>
<td>mashkūk fi doubted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final-wk.*</td>
<td>masha</td>
<td>māshī walking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bada</td>
<td>bādī beginning</td>
<td>mabdū begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jara</td>
<td>jārī current (flowing)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As adjectives, the participles with a sound final root letter have a sound feminine and plural: 9ārīf, 9ārīfa, 9ārīfin; ma9rīf, ma9rīfa, ma9rīfin.
6. Participles of Form II

The participles of all increased forms are made from the principal parts; the
active participle from the second principal part and the passive participle from
the first. Feminines and plurals are made as for Form I. Form II participles (m.
sing.) are built as follows, for all classes:
• Active: replace the yi- prefix of the second principal part with mu-,
• Passive: prefix mu- to the first principal part.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9allam</td>
<td>mu9allam</td>
<td>mu9allam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaddam</td>
<td>muqaddim</td>
<td>muqaddam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kawwan</td>
<td>mukawwin</td>
<td>mukawwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabba</td>
<td>murabbib</td>
<td>murabbba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Negation of participles

Since participles are adjectives, they are negated with mish or ghayr, not with mā:

\[
\text{mish/ghayr moujūd} \quad \text{not present}
\]
\[
\text{mish 9ārif} \quad \text{not knowing}
\]
\[
\text{mish/ghayr muhaddar} \quad \text{unprepared}
\]

8. Agreement of participles

An active participle agrees with the noun which it qualifies:

\[
al-	ext{munazzāmāt al-9āmila fi l-qūtā} \quad \text{the organisations working in the sector}
\]

A passive participle qualifying a noun which is a direct object agrees with that noun:

\[
\text{at-taqārīr al-muqaddama 'ams} \quad \text{the reports presented yesterday}
\]
\[
\text{nās ma9rūfīn} \quad \text{well-known people}
\]

but a passive participle qualifying a noun which is a prepositional object is
always made masculine singular; the gender and number of the noun are shown
by a pronoun suffix attached to the preposition:

\[
\text{ma9lūmāt mashkūfīha} \quad \text{doubtful information (information doubted about it)}
\]
\[
\text{al-būhūd al-maqūlim biha} \quad \text{the discussions undertaken}
\]
\[
\text{al-matlūb minhum} \quad \text{those (of whom it is) requested}
\]

The final-weak participles have the following patterns for agreement:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m. s.</td>
<td>active murabbī</td>
<td>passive murabba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an. pl.</td>
<td>active murabbīyīn</td>
<td>passive murabbayīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.s./inan. pl.</td>
<td>active murabbīya</td>
<td>passive murabba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Participles used as nouns

Like other adjectives, many participles serve as nouns, often with a special
meaning; most active Form I active participles then have a broken plural:

\[
\text{kāṭib kuttāb} \quad \text{clerk (m.)}
\]
\[
\text{jālib fūlāb} \quad \text{student (m.)}
\]
LESSON 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rākib rukkāb</td>
<td>passenger</td>
<td>9āmil 9ummul</td>
<td>workman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maktāb makātib</td>
<td>letter</td>
<td>9āmil 9awāmil</td>
<td>factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma9lāmāt (pl.)</td>
<td>information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il mu9allim</td>
<td>teacher (m.)</td>
<td>mu9allim</td>
<td>teacher (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudarris</td>
<td>instructor</td>
<td>muwazzaf</td>
<td>employee, clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqarrir</td>
<td>reporter</td>
<td>murabbi</td>
<td>educator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Verbal nouns

Verbal nouns denote the activity or result of the verb:
- ma9rif - knowledge from: 9irif ya9rif Form I
- ta9l - teaching from: 9allam yi9allim Form II

Form I verbal nouns are irregular; those of Forms II to X are derived regularly. Not every theoretically possible verbal noun is in use.

11. Verbal nouns of Form I

Many patterns exist for Form I verbal nouns. Some verbs have alternative patterns:
- katab: kitāba - writing
- qara: qirāya - reading
- dakhal: dakhūl - entry*
- kharaj: khurūj - exit*

*the action, not the place, which would be madkhal or makhraj.

- tālab: tālab, matlab maṭālib - request
- daras: dirāsa - study
- najāb: najāb - success
- 9irif: ma9rif ma9ārif - knowledge
- baḥāth: baḥth buḥūth - discussion
- dafā9: daf9 madfū9ūl - payment
- rija9: rujū9 - return
- nizil: nuzūl - descent
- sa9al: su9al 'as'ila - question
- mas'āla masāyil - matter
- 'āmar: 'amr 'awāmīr - order, command
  - 'amr 'umūr - matter, affair
- 'akhdh: 'akhdh - taking, acceptance
- 'akl: akl - food
- wuṣūl: wuṣūl - arrival
- bay9: bay9 buyā9 - sale
- qawl: qawl 'aqwāl - saying, utterance
- kawn: kawm - existence
- zād: ziyādā - increase
- qām bi: qiyām bi - undertaking
- khouf: khouf - fear
- noum: noum - sleep
- murūr: murūr - traffic
- ḥulūl: ḥill ḥulūl - solution
12. Verbal nouns of Form II

Form II verbal nouns (shown here in the singular) are made on the following patterns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Verbal Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Sound       | ḥaddūf  
              | ḥākhkhar  
              | tadhīr  
              | preparation |
| Initial-w   | wazzaf  
              | tawzīf  
              | recruitment |
| Hollow      | mawwal  
              | tawwīl  
              | financing   |
|             | ghayyar  
              | taghyīr  
              | change      |
| Doubled     | qarrār  
              | taqrīr  
              | decision, report |
| Final-weak  | rabba  
              | tārbiya  
              | education   |

Plurals are mostly sound, some broken. Some verbal nouns have alternative plurals with different meanings, e.g.:

- taqrīr taqrīrāt decision
- taqrīr taqrīrāt report

More Form II verbal nouns:
- darrās: tadrīs instruction
- kallaf: taklīf taklīf cost
- 9allam: tāqālim teaching; tāqālimāt instructions
- qadam: taqālim offer
- sharraf: tashrīf honouring; tashrīfīt protocol
- dabbar: tādbīr arrangement
- tadhīr tādbīr measure, move
- jarrab: tajrīb test
- šanna9: tasni9 industrialisation
- waqqaf: tawqīf detention, parking
- kawwan: takwīn formation
- sawwar: taqswīr depiction, photography
- jaddad: tajdīd renewal, renovation

13. Use of verbal nouns

When a verbal noun has a direct object, the two terms are put into construct:
- dirāsat al-lughāt studying languages/the study of languages/language-study
- tajmīn mašānāt information-gathering

See 6/18. Often a preposition + verbal noun is used instead of a conjunction + verb. Compare
- ḥatta yudrusu l-‘argām (do that they study the figures)
- with li dirāsat al-‘argām (for the study of the figures)
14. rāyih, rāh-

rāyih is the active participle of rāh yirūh. It can be used as an auxiliary (see 8/12) to form a future tense. The participle agrees with the subject of the verb:

rāyih(a) 'aqaddīm al-mizānīya. lān (m./f.) going to present the budget.

rāyihn inzwirīm al-ma9had bukra. We'll show them round the institute tomorrow.

We also use the short invariable form rāh- prefixed to the verb:

rāh 'aqaddīmha. I'll present it.

rāh inzwirīm. We'll show them round.

Like all participles, rāyih (etc.) and rāh- are negated with mish:

mish rāḥ-/mish rāyih 'addabiru. I'm not going to arrange it.

This future tense is common in statements of intention.

15. Calendar

The months of the international (solar) calendar have two sets of names; one set is used in Asia, the other in Africa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asia</th>
<th>Africa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jan. Feb.</td>
<td>kānūn (ath-)dhānî, shubāî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar. Apr.</td>
<td>ʿādhār, nīsān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May June</td>
<td>ʿayr, ḥazīrān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July Aug.</td>
<td>tammāz, ʿāb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sept. Oct.</td>
<td>ʿaylūl, ṭishrīn (al-) ʿawwāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov. Dec.</td>
<td>ṭīshrīn (ath-)dhānī, kānūn (al-) ʿawwāl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For certain purposes the Muslim (lunar) calendar is in use. It is 354 or 355 days long, and dates from the flight of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina in AD 622. The months, for reference, are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asia</th>
<th>Africa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 mīharram</td>
<td>2 ṣafar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 rabī9 al- ʿawwāl</td>
<td>4 ṣafar ath-thānī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 jumāda l-ʿūla</td>
<td>6 jumāda l-ʿukhra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ṛajāb</td>
<td>8 shābān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 ṛamādān</td>
<td>10 shawwāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 ṛdu l-qa9da</td>
<td>12 ṛdu l-hijja</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use ʿawwāl for the first, and cardinal numbers for other dates. Ḍnūs fī:

( raided) ʿawwāl/ 9iṣhrīn tammāz (on) 1st/20th July
( raided) khamst9ashr mīharram (on) 15th Mīharram

The year is expressed as follows:

( raided) sanāt ʿalīf ṣīnīn mīya ṣīnīn (mīlādī) (in) (AD) 1999
bayn santayn ʿalayn u ʿalayn ṣīnīn 2000 u 2009
( raided) sanāt ʿalīf u ʿaḥba9 mīya ṣīnīn ṣibābū (hijrī) (in) (AH) 1417

(AH = Anno Hegiræ, Year of the Flight)

Additional vocabulary for the calendar, including public holidays:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARABIC TODAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| taqwim taqāwim | calendar | moulūd an-nabī | Prophet’s Birthday |
| sana hijrīya   | Muslim year, AH | sana milādiyya | international year, AD |
| rabi’         | spring    | kharij          | autumn             |
| shita         | winter    | 9īd ‘adḥā     | festival, holiday   |
| ‘ijāza        | leave, holiday | (9īd al-‘adḥā | Christmas          |
| ra’s as-sana   | New Year’s Day | (either calendar) |                     |
| fasl fusūl, mousim mawāsim | season |                     |                     |
| al-9īd al-kabīr* | 9īd al-‘adḥā | feast at the end of the pilgrimage |
| al-9īd as-ṣaghīr*/9īd al-fīr | feast at the end of fasting |
| 9īd al-fisih/9īd al-kabīr* | Easter |
| * kabīr, ṣaghīr: the written pronunciation is used. |

16. jumal mithāliyya

al-maḥāhad mukawwan min tisʿa mudarrisīn u mitayn u sittīn tilmādīh. The institute consists of nine instructors and 260 pupils.
takallīf ad-diḥāya mish maktuḥa fī musawwadat al-mīzāniyya l-ʿulā. Advertising costs are not shown (written) in the first draft of the budget.
maḥrifat al-muḥāsābat darūriyya li faḥm hādha t-taqrīr. A knowledge of accounts is essential in order to understand this report.
rāyiḥīn yiqaddīmū taqrīrum fī ʿawākhīr ʿayyār ʿaw ῥawāʾil ḥazfrān. They will present their report in late May or early June.

17. at-tamārin

1. Give the masculine singular of both participles of each verb:
e.g.: 9irif – 9ārif mārif
   (a) bāṣ (b) jaddad (c) ṣaddaq
   (d) katab (e) dabbar

2. Give the principal parts of the verb from which the participle is derived:
e.g.: muḥallim – 9allam yiḥallim
   (a) shāyif (b) muwaqqaf (c) maṭlūb
   (d) mukawwan (e) muḥaddīr

3. Give the verbal noun:
e.g.: 9allam – taṣḥif; fihim – faḥm
   (a) qara (b) rabba (c) ḥaddar
   (d) daras (e) 9irif

4. Give the principal parts of the verb from which the verbal noun is derived:
e.g.: taṣḥif – 9allam yiḥallim
   (a) dirāsa (b) tadrīs (c) kawn
   (d) takwīn (e) tadbīr
5. Make the participle fit the noun:
e.g.: al-lughā l-(mākhī) – al-lughā l-mākhīya
   taghyīrāt (maqūm bī) – taghyīrāt maqūm bīha
(a) bi sāẕāb al-‘arqām al-(mashkūk fī)
(b) musawwadāt (muḫaḍdar) ‘ams
(c) al-‘umūr al-(maktuḥ bi khusūs)
(d) min an-nās as-(sākin) huna
(e) li s-sikritayra l-(mas‘ūl) 9ān hādha sh-shughl

6. Give the date (international calendar) in both systems:
e.g.: 12/3/1996 – ithn9ashr māris/‘ādhār, ʿalī fī tisṭiūn nūna u sītta u tisṭiūn
(a) 1/1/1998  (b) 15/6/2010  (c) 25/10/1880
(d) 11/8/1996  (e) 23/2/1978
ad-dars ’iḥdāshrī Lesson 11
ziyārat maṣna9ī Visit to a Factory

1. al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥāwir
(NB: In this dialogue one speaker uses the Levantine form of spoken Arabic, examples of which are shown underlined in the vocabulary.)

tanfīdh execution, fulfilment
kān yurūd he wanted
yiqābīl he meets

(min sha’n tanfīd mahammmtu fī ḥaql at-tadrīb al-fannī Peter kān yurūd yiqābīl kam mumaththīl ṇṣ-ṣinā9a l-khaffīfā.

kānū nasharā they had published
nashar yunshur to publish
jarīda jarāyiḍ newspaper
maqāla (press) article
darūra necessity

qabūl wusūlu fī l-balad kānū nasharū fī l-jarīda maqāla ḥawl darūrat han-nou9 min at-ta9āwun.

sāḥadū he helped him
‘akhbaru bi he informed him
lāqa he found
yināsibhum it suits them
zābih accuracy, exactness

zamīlu 9abdarrāhāmān sāḥadū fī hādhā l-gharaḍ. ‘akhbaru bi īnnu lāqa khārij al-balad maṣna9 yināsibhum bi z-zābih.)

mushrif supervisor
fāyīz ḥasanayn Faiz Hassanein (name)

(fī qism al-’intāj lī maṣna9. yīhki l-mushrif fāyīz ḥasanayn.)

’ism ‘a’sām (In the factory’s Production Division. The supervisor, Faiz Hassanein, is talking.)
=intāj = qism ‘aqsām
’abl = ’intāj
warsha = qabl

fāyīz: Welcome to Production Division, Mr Brown. Before we
nzūr ṭarṣal al-’intāzh, visit the production floor,
yümīn = yumīn
biddak you want
iyiyā her, it, them
khāṣṣata ē especially
ḥāda = ḥāda

yümīn fī ’inda ḥās’il biddak Perhaps you have some
tis‘alni yāhō, khāṣṣatān ḫawā ḫās’ilīsm? questions you wish to ask me,
āzh = āzh
biddak especially about this Division?
yimkin biddak yīmmān ē āzh especially
yāhā = yāhā
khāṣṣātān her, it, them
biddak = biddak

‘īzmā = ‘idhā
bažharrib = ‘ajārrib
‘āzh = ‘āzh
wibak I answer
 ṭarṣal ē tīmdā可能会有某些
‘īzmā ‘īzmā
bažharrib = ‘ajārrib
‘āzh = ‘āzh
wibak you

yīmmān ‘īzmā yāhā = yīmmān ē ‘idhā
biddak yīmmān ē tīmdā = yīmmān ē ‘idhā
biddak = biddak

‘īzmā ‘īzmā
bažharrib = ‘ajārrib
‘āzh = ‘āzh
wibak I answer

Peter: ‘āyū min al-qitā 9 tintijū? What kinds of parts do you produce?

Peter: ‘āyū min al-qitā 9 tintijū? What kinds of parts do you produce?

badd hudūd limit
bnintīzh = nintij we produce
ṯarā ‘īta9 = qitā9 part, component
‘unbāb ‘anābīb you produce
blästīkīya = blāstīkīya plastic
šān communications
mūsālāt (pl.) market
ṣūq ḫaswāq (f.)

Peter: Sālā hūwa l-ḥāṣil illī Splendid. This is the field
yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull which interests us above all.
which interests us above all.

Peter: Sālā hūwa l-ḥāṣil illī Splendid. This is the field
yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull which interests us above all.
which interests us above all.

fāyiz: You see, the factory is new
shāyīf, al-maṣna9 jādīd u lissa and still small; up to now we
ṣughhr, li ḥadād al-‘ān ibnintīzh have produced only simple
ṯarā ‘īta9 básītā bas, zāyy ‘anābīb parts, like pipes and plastic
‘unbāb ‘anābīb u ‘īta9 iblästīkīya min shān
ibkahrabā wā l-mūsālāt. components for electricity and

Peter: Nāsīm. ḥāda huwa l-ḥāṣil illī communications.
Yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull which interests us above all.
So all your production is for

fāyiz: You see, the factory is new
shāyīf, al-maṣna9 jādīd u lissa and still small; up to now we
ṣughhr, li ḥadād al-‘ān ibnintīzh have produced only simple
ṯarā ‘īta9 básītā bas, zāyy ‘anābīb parts, like pipes and plastic
‘unbāb ‘anābīb u ‘īta9 iblästīkīya min shān
ibkahrabā wā l-mūsālāt. components for electricity and

Peter: Nāsīm. ḥāda huwa l-ḥāṣil illī communications.
Yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull which interests us above all.
So all your production is for

fāyiz: You see, the factory is new
shāyīf, al-maṣna9 jādīd u lissa and still small; up to now we
ṣughhr, li ḥadād al-‘ān ibnintīzh have produced only simple
ṯarā ‘īta9 básītā bas, zāyy ‘anābīb parts, like pipes and plastic
‘unbāb ‘anābīb u ‘īta9 iblästīkīya min shān
ibkahrabā wā l-mūsālāt. components for electricity and

Peter: Nāsīm. ḥāda huwa l-ḥāṣil illī communications.
Yihimmna qabl al-kull. fa kull which interests us above all.
So all your production is for
law kân fi fûra li tamwîl
tawṣîl, fa 'int wâfaq 9alây?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if there were a chance of financing an expansion, you would agree to it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btis'al</td>
<td>tis'al</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi šûra rasmîyi</td>
<td>bi šûra rasmîya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la'ayna</td>
<td>laqayna we found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'idâfî</td>
<td>additional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhiddan</td>
<td>jiddan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mâliyyî</td>
<td>maliyya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shakhṣîyan</td>
<td>personally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fîhim yiîham</td>
<td>to understand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(fîyiz yiîhak.)

(fâyiz)

btis'al as-su'al bi šûra rasmiyyî? ma9lûm, law la'ayna tamwîl 'idâfî, fa kunt mabsût zhiddan. walâkin bi khusûs hâda, âzîm tîkhî ma9 mudîrma li l-mâliyyî shakhṣîyan. 'ana l-'intâzh bas, fîhim?

9ala kull hâl, haṭṭa u law 'a9tûna mîzanîyyî 'awsa9, fa 'îhna faqâluna tawṣîl min shâh as-sû' ad-dâkhilîyyî. 'îza mî bidlak tis'al ghayr su'al, khallîna nshîf al-'ân al-warsha ...

(Faiz laughs.)

9ala kull hâl, haṭṭa u law 'a9tûna mîzanîyyî 'awsa9, fa 'îhna faqâluna tawṣîl min shâh as-sû' ad-dâkhilîyyî. 'îza mî bidlak tis'al ghayr su'al, khallîna nshîf al-'ân al-warsha ...

In any case, even if they gave us a wider budget, we would want to ask any other questions (îqâstonî), letâ look at the shop floor now ...

2. 9ibârât

li hadd al-'ân (do the limit of nowî) up to now
9ala kull hâl in any case

3. mufradât 'îdâfîyya. as-šînî9a wa l-îqâsâd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iqtisâd</td>
<td>iqtisâdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saddar yiîsadîr</td>
<td>to export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ra's mâl</td>
<td>capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istîthmîr</td>
<td>investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màdda tijârîyya</td>
<td>commodity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màdda 'awwâliyya</td>
<td>raw material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sâhîb al-9amal, pl. ašâhîb al-9amal</td>
<td>employer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Faiz laughs.)
niqābat al-9ummāl  
trade union

šanā yisna9, verbal noun šan9/sun9  
to manufacture

qitāl al-khidmāt  
services sector

rabīh yirba9 min, verbal noun ribḥ 'arbāh  
to (make) profit from

khasir yikhshar, verbal noun khasāra khasāyir  
to lose, make a loss

an-nahū

4. Verbs of Form III

Verbs of Form III follow the pattern of Form II, except that instead of a doubled middle root letter they have long -ā- after the initial root letter, and their verbal nouns are different. To begin with, examine their principal parts. Models are:

- All classes except final-weak: kātab yiktub to write, to correspond with
- Final-weak: lāqa yilāqi to find, encounter

Most verbs of Form III have a direct object for the person affected. Compare two verbs with the same root:

Form I  
katab yuktub  
to write

Form III  
kātab yiktub  
to write to, to correspond with

but there are some exceptions which add no special meaning.

Sound final radical  (sound, initial-w, hollow; doubled do not occur):

- Root k t b, kātab yiktub to write to:
  
  Past: kātabt, kātabti, kātab/kātabat; kātabna, kātabtū, kātabū
  
  Pres.: 'akātab, tkātab/tkātabī, tkātab/tkātabū

so also:

  sā9ad yisā9id  
to help

  nāsab yināsib  
to suit

  sāfar yisāfīr  
to travel

  ghādar yighādir  
to leave

  jāwab yijāwib  
to reply to

  hāwar yihāvir  
to dialogue with

Final-weak: Root l q y, lāqa yilāqi to find, encounter:

  Past: lāqayt, lāqayt/lāqayt; lāqayna, lāqaytu, lāqū 1 (etc.) found

  Pres.: 'alāqi, tlāqi/tlāqi, yilāqi/tlāqi; nlāqi, tlāqi, yilāqi 1 (etc.) find(s)

so also: nāda yinādī  
to call, to summon

The final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies.

5. Imperative of Form III

Follow the rules for Form II:

sā9id/sā9idī/sā9idū; lā tsā9idī/lā tsā9idū/lā tsā9idū

6. Verbs of Form IV

Verbs of Form IV are made on the following models:

- Sound: ʿarsal yursil to send; ʿantaj yintij to produce
- Initial-w: ʿawqaf yud  
  to stop
- Hollow: ʿudāf yuḍīf to add, to annex
LESSON 11

- Doubled: 'ahamm yihimm to concern, be important to
- Final-weak: 'ansha yunshī to construct, create

The written forms of the present prefixes (‘u-, tu-, yu-, nu-) are used in some verbs; in others the spoken forms ‘a-, ti-, yi-, ni-. Form IV is the only increased form to have this alternative vowelling, which is confined to the personal prefix. Most Form IV verbs have a direct object for the person affected, if they have a special meaning at all.

**Sound**
- Root r s l, ‘arsal yursil to send:
  - Present: ‘ursil, tursil/tursilī, yursil/tursilū (etc.) send(s)
  - So also: ‘akhraj yukhrij to publicise, expel
  - ‘antaj yintij to produce
  - ‘az9aj yiz9ij to disturb
  - ‘a9jab yi9jib to please
  - ‘akhbar yukhbir bi to inform
  - ‘anjaz yinjiz to implement, accomplish
  - E.g.: ‘akhbarna bi ‘innu yījī. He informed us that he was coming.
  - ‘yi9jibnī kühīr. I like it (it pleases me) a lot.

**Initial-w**
- Root w q f, ‘awqaf yūqif to stop:
  - Present: ‘ūqif, tūqif/tūqifī, yūqif/yūqifī, nūqif, tūqifī, yūqifū
  - So also: ‘awjab yūjib 9ala to impose (e.g. a tax) on
  - ‘awshak yūshik ‘inn to be on the point of (doing)
  - ‘awshak yūshik 9ala to be close to, almost to
  - E.g.: ‘awshakt ‘inn ‘aqūl lak ... I was on the point of telling you ...
  - ‘awshakū 9ala l-mughādara. They were close to departure.

**Hollow**
- Root d y f, ‘adāf yudāfī to add, to annex
  - Past: middle root letter w or y becomes -a- or -ā- (hollow verb rule, 6/4):
  - Present: middle root letter w or y becomes -ī- throughout the tense:
    - ‘udīf, tudīf/tudīfī, yudīf/yudīfī, nu’dīf, tudīfī, yudīfū
  - So also: ‘afād yufid to benefit
  - ‘arād yurūd to want
  - ‘adāhī yudīh9 to broadcast

With ‘arād yurūd the continuous past is preferred to the past, which is little used:
  - ‘urūd ‘asā9idak. I want to help you.
  - Kunt ‘urūd ‘innak itsā9idni. I wanted you to (that you) help me.

**Doubled**
- Root h m m, ‘ahamm yihimm to concern, be important to:
  - Past: the identical root letters separate before a consonantal personal ending, and come together elsewhere:
    - ‘ahmamt, ‘ahmamtī/‘ahmamti, ‘ahhamn/‘ahhammat;
    - ‘ahhamma, ‘ahmamū, ‘ahhamū
  - Present: identical to Form I hamm yihimm:
    - ‘ahimm, thimm/thimmī, yihimm/thimmū, nhimm, thimmū, yihimmū
  - So also: ‘asarr yiṣirr 9ala to persist in, insist on

**Final-weak**
- Root n sh ’, ‘ansha yunshī to construct, create:
Past; similar to Form I; the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies:

'anshayt, 'anshayt/'anshayti, 'ansha/'anshat; 'anshayna, 'anshaytū, 'anshū

Pres.; the final-weak verb rule applies:

'unshī, tunshī/tunshī, yunshī, tunshū, yunshū
so also: root l q y, 'alqa yulq ī: 'alqa khitāb to deliver a speech
al-wazīr 'alqa khitāb ḥavl mashākilna l-iqtisādiya.

Root 9 t w, 'a9t ī: to deliver a speech
al-wazīr 'alqa khitāb hānwī l-kilna l-iqtisādiya.

This last verb is important. It takes two direct objects:

'a9t ī: 'a9t īnī kitāb.
(l['a9tī lī...]) He gave me his book.

It has the syllable a9tī throughout (Pronunciation, paragraph 6):

Past:

'a9t ī, 'a9t ī/'a9t ī, 'a9t ī, 'a9t ī, 'a9t ī, 'a9t ī; 'a9tū, 'a9tū

Pres.

'a9ī, ta9ī/ta9ī, ya9ī/ta9ī, na9ī, ta9ū, ya9ū

7. Imperative of Form IV
To make the imperative of Form IV, replace the tu-, ti-, t-, ta-, tū- of the present
prefix as follows:

· tu-, ti-, t-, ta-: replace with 'a-
  'akhrij/'akhrij ī/'akhrij ū 'a9t ī/'a9t ī/'a9tū
· tū-: replace with 'aw-
  'awqif/'awqif ī/'awqif ū

The negative imperative is regularly formed:

lā tīzījī/lā tīzījī/lā tīzījū lā ta9ī/lā ta9ī/lā ta9ū
lā tūqīfī/lā tūqīfī/lā tūqīfū

8. Participles of Forms III and IV
Form III and IV participles are formed as follows:

· Active, Forms III and IV: replace the yi-/yu-/ya- prefix of the second
  principal part with mu-; replace yū- in Form IV with mū-.
· Passive: Form III (rare): prefix mu- to the first principal part.
  Form IV, all classes except initial-w: replace the 'a- prefix of the first
  principal part with mu-.
  Form IV, initial-w: replace the first syllable 'aw- of the first principal part
  with mū-.

Active Passive

III kātab: mukātab corresponet correspondent
sā9ad: musā9id assistant
nāsab: musnāsīb suitable
sāfar: musāfīr traveller
gābal: muqābil opposite, remuneration
gātal: muqātil fighter
i. muqātila fighter aircraft

IV 'arsal: mursil sender
'az9aj: muz9ij annoying
pl. muz9ijāt discomforts

'a9jab: mu9jib admirable
mu9jījī admirer
LESSON 11

9. Verbal nouns of Form III

Models for Form III verbal nouns:
- Sound, initial-w, hollow; katab: mukataba correspondence (rarer, see below) qatal: qitāl fight; jawab: jawāb answer
- Final-weak; laqa: mulaqā encounter, pl. sound; adds -t before a suffix or when it is the theme of a construct (see below).

Most plurals are sound; a few are broken.

10. Verbal nouns of Form IV

Models for Form IV verbal nouns:
- Sound; 'arsal: 'irṣāl despatch
- Initial-w; awqaf: 'iṣrāf stoppage
- Doubled; 'asarr: 'iṣrār insistence, persistence
- Hollow; 'adāf: 'iḍāfā supplement (NB. final -a)
- Final-weak; 'ansha: 'insha' creation, composition

11. Adjectives derived from verbal nouns

Many verbal nouns, especially those of the increased forms, produce nisba adjectives:

12. We shall from now on introduce new verbs thus:
- Form I: shack yishukk 1 fi, shack shukūk to doubt (principal parts, preposition if any, verbal noun if useful);
110 ARABIC TODAY

- Forms II, III and V – X (once the increased form has been studied):
  ṭaḏqīq III 9ala to agree on/to (first principal part, preposition if any);
- Form IV: ‘arsal yursil IV 9ala to send; ‘asarr yisirr IV 9ala to insist on, to persist in (as for Forms II, III etc., but with both principal parts).

13. Pluperfect tense
kān followed by another verb, both in the appropriate person of the past tense, makes the pluperfect tense, which can be used to denote an action or state previous to another one expressed in the past tense:

\[\text{kān 'adhāhī qabl mā 'aja.}\] They had broadcast it before he came.
The pluperfect is not very common; the past tense is often preferred.

14. Conditional sentences
A conditional sentence states that something is true only if something else is true. We distinguish between real or possible conditions (if it rains ...) and unreal or impossible conditions (if I had known ...):

**Real conditions** begin with ‘idha dō Tenses can be as in English:

\[\text{‘akhbirni, ‘idha fī mushkila.}\] Tell me, if there is a problem.

\[\text{‘idha huwa mish moujūd, (rāḥ-)‘akhī ma9 musāridu.}\] If he isn’t there, I’ll talk to his assistant.

Or either verb, or both, can be in the past, with present meaning:

\[\text{‘idha mā kān moujūd, ḥakayt ma9 musāridu.}\]
\[\text{‘a9ī ḍūd ‘idha ‘aja.}\] Give him this if he comes.

**Unreal conditions** begin with law dō with both verbs in one of the past tenses:

\[\text{law kunt ghanī, sakant/kunt sākin fī bayt ‘akbar.}\] If I were rich I would live in a bigger house.

\[\text{law lā, mā laqaynā.}\] But for you we wouldn’t find it.
\[\text{law lā, mā najahā.}\] But for you we wouldn’t succeed.

\[\text{ās fī}s ka ‘inn, which follows the indirect speech rule (4/7):
\[\text{kān yihīkī ka ‘innu ya9rafhum.}\] He spoke as if he knew them.

15. Concessive sentences
A concessive sentence states that something is true despite or irrespective of whether something else is true. Concessions (although ...) begin with:

\[\text{ḥatta u law even if (unreal)}\]
\[\text{mā ‘inn even though (real)}\]
\[\text{wayn mā wherever mata mā whenever}\]
\[\text{mahma kān (etc.)/mahma huwa/hiya whatever}\]
\[\text{mīn mā whoever kayf mā however}\]

so: ḥatta u law qābaltu, mā kān yisāridak. Even if you meet him, he won’t help you.
Although he is rich he lives in a small house.

Whatever the conditions (might be/are), I'm ready.

If I knew (then) I would tell you.

Whatever you say, I believe you.

They introduced me to them.

Give them to us.

I took/got it from him.

He wrote it for them.

Don't tell it to him.

I want(s) to help me?

They wanted the money immediately.

Don't/Do you want to help me?

We didn't want it.
19. Adverbs

Many adjectives in the m. sing. form can serve as adverbs: kwayyis, mazbūt.
Some other adverbs are formed by adding to the m. sing. of the adjective the ending -an (after -i, -yan):

- jādīdan recently
- tamāman completely
- shadīdan severely, vigorously
- sanāwī, sanāwīyan annual(ly)

-an is also added to a few prepositions and nouns (after -a, -tan):

- qablan before(hand)
- sabāhan in the morning
- (four) boiling
- (four) habit
- (taqrīb) approximation
- (mathal 'amth āl) form

We negate -an adverbs with mish or ghayr:

mish/ghayr rasmīyan unofficially

and we make their comparative either with the adjective or with 'akthar:

'ashadd, shadīdan 'akthar more vigorously

20. Some adverbs are made with a preposition + noun. In some examples the noun is definite, in others indefinite:

- (suhūla) ease
- (zāīf) precision
- (surqā) speed
- (tāfīlūl tafsīl) detail
- (haqīqa haqīqīya) truth
- (shakl shukūk) doubt

We make the comparative with 'akthar after the noun, which is then indefinite:

bi suhūla 'akthar more easily
bi tafsīl 'akthar in more detail

21. A third device used is bi šūra (ṣūra šawwar dorm, image):

- bi šūra 9āmma generally
- bi šūra 9āmma in practice

Negation: bi šūra mish/ghayr 9ādī in an unclear manner
Comparison: bi šūra 'awdāh more clearly
bi šūra 9āmma 'akthar more generally

22. The superlative adverb is best expressed with 'ānwore ... than allāh

hādana t-tilmīdī yītkī bi šūra 'awdāh min al-kull. This pupil speaks the most clearly (more clearly than allāh).
23. Finally, note variants of adverbs given above:

- min qarīb: recently
- 9an qarīb: soon

24. Participial verb

The active participle is frequently used in place of a tense; it agrees adjectivally with its subject:

- 'ana rāyih(a) lān going. shāyif/fāhim? Do you see/understand?
- hadhoul al-‘ikhwān musāfīrin? Are these chaps travelling?

The participle implies mostly present, but sometimes recently past, time:

- 'ana sāmi9 9anha. I’ve heard of her/it/them.
- hadsān, mish shāyifu. Haven’t seen Hassan.

When the subject is not stated, it is most commonly understood as first or third person in statements, and second or third person in questions:

- musāfīr(a) bukra. lān/He/She's travelling tomorrow.
- musāfīr(a) bukra? Are you/Is he/Is she travelling tomorrow?
- mish bāqiyin fī l-bayt. We/They aren’t staying at home.
- mish bāqiyin fī l-bayt? Aren’t you/they staying at home?

25. 'illa

‘illa with a negative verb means only:

- mà ‘adfa9 ‘illa bi dinār. I’ll pay in dinars only.

26. li

This preposition permits us to make a compound similar to a construct, but with all its elements explicitly defined:

- mudīrīn li l-mā́liyya our Finance Manager
- al-mudīr al-9āmnī li l-masnā9 the factory’s General Manager

A construct, i.e. mudīr al-masnā9 al-9āmm, is technically possible but it would break up the GM’s title.

li can be put with a ‘string’ construct:

- mushkilat tamwīl at-tadrīb al-fannī li l-sharika company’s technical training

– and it removes the ambiguity of some constructs with an adjective:

- mudīr al-bank as-sūrī (who or what is Syrian?)

27. jumal mithāliyya

mumaththilīn al-9ummāl kānū yurīdū The workers’ representatives

yiqābilu ‘ashāb al-9amal li buḥūth wanted to meet the employ-

kānat it-himmhum kullhum. ers for discussions which concerned all of them.

‘azumā inn al-wazīr kān yihkī shakhṣīyyān, I presume the minister was

u mà kān yinwi yulqī khitāb rasnī speaking personally, and

bi khusūs siyāsat al-ḥukūma l-iqtisādīya. did not intend to make an

official speech about the
government’s economic policy.

They published in the newspaper a report which says (in which is written) that the export figures for the quarter are higher than they were during the same period last year.

The matter is urgent; if they cannot take the appropriate measures quickly, let them agree at least on preparatory measures; if not, we shall lose up to twenty percent of profits.

28. **at-tamārin**

1. Answer the following questions on the narrative:
   e.g.: fi’āyy haqūk kānāt mahammat Peter?– kānāt fi haqal at-tadmīrib al-fannī.
   (a) mīn illī Peter kān yurūd yiqābilu?
   (b) mā huwa shughl fiyiz?
   (c) shū kānū yintijū fī l-mas‘āla9?
   (d) al-mašna9 kān yintijū min sha’n as-sūq ad-dakhilīya, willa l’ajnabiya?
   (e) mīn illī kān mas’ūl 9an as-siyāsa l-māliya?

2. Give the principal parts and the verbal noun of each verb:
   e.g.: sā9ad – sā9ad yisā9id, musā9ada
   (a) ‘adhā9
   (b) jāwab
   (c) kharaj
   (d) rabba

3. Give the principal parts of the verb of which this is a participle:
   e.g.: munāsib – nāsab yināsib
   (a) mukawwan
   (b) mursil
   (c) muwazzaf
   (d) mu‘īd
   (e) rākib

4. Re-express with a participial verb:
   e.g.: ‘int tilmāl ar-risāla?– fāhīm ar-risāla?
   (a) ‘ana mā ‘asāfīr bukra.  
   (b) tshūfū?
   (c) mā 9irīfīna

5. Join the clauses as a conditional sentence:
   e.g.: mā taqrab. lāzim tis’al. – ‘idha mā taqrab, lāzim tis’al.
   (a) ‘ana 9irīfī, kunt ‘aqūl lak iyyā.
   (b) huwa muwāfīq. khalīf yisā9idna.
   (c) wišlā ‘ams. ‘ana shult-hum.
LESSON 11

(d) mish munāsib. 'akhibīnī.
(e) mā kān munāsib. kunt 'akhbartak.

6. Replace the noun objects with pronouns:
e.g.: 'aṭṭayt ṣaḍīqī l-fūlūs. – 'aṭṭaytu yyāhi.
(a) 'arsalna r-risāla li sh-sharīka.
(b) qūl al-ḥikāya li-'aṣdiqā'ak.
(c) 9allam al-walad kitābat al-lugha 9arabiyya.
(d) kunt 'urīḍ 'as'āl al- 'ustādh nafs as-su'āl.
(e) 'uktub al-jawāb min ša'n al-mumāththilīn.

7. Put everything possible into the plural:
e.g.: ḍana simi9t at-taqārī al-muwāfaq 9alāy.
– simi9na t-taqārī al-muwāfaq 9alayhā.
(a) mā dhakarat li l-khabar al-jadīd.
(b) musāfir hassa? 'ashūfak ba9dayn.
(c) fī tilmīdh yurīḍ yiqābilak.
(d) ḍana mish fāhim laysh 'int mā turīḍ tishrah li yyā.
(e) hādhī hiya 'akbar muskhīla lī lāzmīm 'aḥīlla.
Lesson 12  
fi l-riyāda  

At the Surgery

1. al-ḥikāya wa l-hāwar

- tarashshaḥ  
- rashḥ  
- khoufan 9ala  
- taqaddum

(mīn youmayn Peter kān marīd. kān mīn al-wādīh ḫinnu tarashshaḥ rashḥ shadhīd. fa khoufan 9ala taqaddum mahammtu,  

- tadhakkar  
- talfan  
- ‘ashār yushīr IV ‘ila  
- layla hilāl)

tadhakkar mā qāl lu d-udktur fu’ād u  
talfan lu tālib musāḥadatu. ad-udktur  
fu’ād kān khārij al-balad, wilākin  
sikritayrtu ‘ashārāt ilā tabība muntāza,  
isimha layla hilāl.)

shū mâlak?  
ḥarāra

duktur layla: shū mâlak, yā sayyid Peter?  
9indak ḥarāra?  

Peter: mish 9ārif mazbūt,  
yā udktur.  

- faḥas yifḥas I, faḥṣ  
- tfařīj  
- lisān ‘alsina (m./f.)  
- ‘ahmar, ḥamrā’, ḥumr  
- ḥalq ḥulūq

duktur layla: khallim ‘afhašak, mumkin  
itfarjīnī lisānāt ḥalqak  
‘ahmar shadhīd.  

- daraja  
- darajat ḥarāra  
- taba9  
- li husn al-ḥazz  
- taraddadīt  

nshūf al-ḥarārā ... ’ayna9am,  
darajat al-ḥarāra taba9ak  

- he caught a cold  
- a cold  
- fearing for  
- progress  

(For two days Peter had been ill. It was clear that he had caught a severe cold. Fearing for the progress of his assignment,  

- he remembered  
- he telephoned  
- to indicate, point out  

Leila Hilal (name)  

- he remembered what Dr Sharif had said to him, and telephoned him asking for his help. Dr Sharif was out of town, but his secretary pointed out an excellent doctor called Layla Hilal.)

- what’s wrong with you?  
- heat, fever  

What’s wrong with you, Mr Brown? Do you have a fever?  
I don’t know exactly, Doctor.  

to examine (medically)  
you show to  
red  
throat

- degree  
- temperature  
- belonging to  
- fortunately  
- you hesitated

We’ll look at the temperature ... yes, your temperature’s 39,
tisāa u thalāthīn, mish qafil. li ḥusn al-ḥazz mā taraddadt ʿinn itshūfīn. barnāmāj barāmīj malān programme full

Peter: kayf ʿa9mal, yā duktur? 9indī barnāmāj malān...

Peter, wałākin lá buḍda min majbūr dār yidīr l bāl-

tirtāḥ kämil mā fish 9ilāj

duktur layla: (tibṭassam) 9ārifa, yā sayyid Peter, wałākin lá buḍda min ʿinnak majbūr itdid būlāk. lázim tirtāḥ ʿusbūl kämil. law lá, mā fish 9ilāj.

tadhkara tadhkākir (tibṭīya) dáwāʾ ʿādwiya saydalīya qurs ʿaqrās 9adam tanāwul sāyīl sawāyil khaṭīr

ʿaktub lak tadhkāra, khudh ad-dáwāʾ min aš-ṣaydalīya, khudh qurs wāḥid thalāthā marrāt bi 3-youm, u lá tinsa tishrab máy kthīr. 9adam tanāwul as-sawāyil khaṭīr jiddan.

tahassant tahassun malmūs talfin

ʿidhā mā taḥassant tahassun malmūs baʿūd youmayn, talfin ī u ʿashūfīk kāmān marra.

quite a lot. Fortunately you didnā hesitate in seeing me.

(smiles) I know, Mr Brown, but thereā no escaping it, you have to take care. You must rest for a whole week. If not, thereā no cure. (here:) prescription medicine pharmacy tablet lack intake (food, drink) fluid, liquid dangerous

Iā write you a prescription; get the medicine from the pharmacy; take one tablet three times a day, and donā forget to drink a lot of water. Lack of fluid intake is very dangerous.

you improved, got better improvement tangible telephone

If you havenā made a tangible improvement after two days, telephone me and Iā see you again.
LESSON 12

salāmtak

Peter: 'āshkurik qalbiyān, yā duktur. 'āna kthīr mammūn.

(Here:) Get well.

My sincere thanks, Doctor. I'm very grateful.

duktur layla: 9afvan yā sayyid Peter. salāmtak.

Glad to help, Mr Brown. Get well.

Peter: 'alla yisallimik, yā duktur.

Goodbye, Doctor.

2. 9ibārāt

khουfan 9ala fārīng for. khāf yikhāf' 9ala, khουf to fear for. Note also khουfan min for fear of, fearing.

shī mālī/mālik/mālu/mālu/mālum/mālum? What's wrong with me (etc.)?

mish qalīl (not a little at all) quite a lot

li husn al-hāzz (dōr good of fortune) by good fortune, fortunately. The opposite is li sā' al-hāzz (dōr ill of fortune) unfortunately.

lā buḍda min (no escape from) There's no escaping ...

Followed by a noun, or by a clause beginning with 'inn. Note also: lā buḍda It can't be helped.

dīr bālak/dīrī bālik/dīrū bālum 9ala Take care about

salāmtak/salāmtik/salāmtu/salāmit-ha/salāmitikum/salāmit-hum (your etc.)

safetyō Get well. The response (as for all greetings with the root s l m) is 'alla yisallimak/yisallimik/yisallimu/yisallimha/yisallimkum/yisallimhum.

3. mufradāt ʿidāfyya. al-jīsm wa ʿ-ṣiḥḥa – Body and health

jīsm 'ajsām body
ra's ruʿās head
zahr zuhūr, ḍahr ḍahūr back
ṣadr sudūr chest
ṣinn 'unsān tooth
9iyāda clinic, surgery
9ālaif III to treat (medically)
9amalīyā operation
9ibra ʿibar needle, injection

waja9 'oujā9 pain
'būn ʿayān(t.) stomach
qalb qulīb heart
9ayn 9ayn(t.) eye
salāmtikum/salāmit-hum (your etc.)
wazn 'ouzān weight
mumarrid(a) orderly, nurse
jirāhī surgical

4. Verbs of Form V

For Form V verbs we can use the following models:

· All classes except final-weak: tagaddām ytqaddām to advance, progress
· Final-weak: tawalla yitwalla to be put in charge

This increased form has three important characteristics:
ARABIC TODAY

- a prefix (ta- in the past tense and t- in the present),
- a doubled middle root letter
- (NB) the vowel a after the middle root letter in both tenses.

Written Arabic has the prefix ta- before both tenses, but in spoken Arabic it is usual to drop the a of this prefix in the present tense. In some expressions the a of the prefix is dropped in both tenses.

Most Form V verbs do not have a direct object; they often give the passive* or reflexive* meaning of Form II verbs.

* In a passive expression the subject does not perform the action, but undergoes it: 
**The kitten is being washed.**

In a reflexive expression, the action comes back to the subject: **The kitten is washing itself.**

Examine:

9allam yi9allim II to teach
ta9allam yit9allam V (to be taught) to learn

Typical Form V tenses:

All classes except final-weak:

Root q d m, taqaddam yitqaddam to advance, progress:

- Past: taqaddamt, taqaddamt/taqaddamt, taqaddam/taqaddamat; taqaddamna, taqaddamni, taqaddami 1 (etc.) advanced, progressed
- Pres.: *atqaddam, titqaddam/titqaddam, yitqaddam/titqaddam; niqaddam, niqaddami, yitqaddami 1 (etc.) advance(s), progress(es)

so also:

- takallam yitkallam to speak
- tabassam yitbassam to smile
- tasharraf yitsharraf to be honoured
- tasallam yitsallam to receive
- tadakhkar yitdhakkar to remember
- tadakkhal yitdakhkhal to intervene
- tarashshah yitrashshah to catch a cold
- tahassin yithassin to improve, get better
- ta9arraf yit9arraf bi to get acquainted with
ta9allaq yit9allaq bi to depend on, pertain to
- tamakkan yitmakkan min to be capable of, to possess
- ta akhkharr yitakhkharr to be delayed
- ta9assaf yit9assaf to be sorry
- takhasas yitkhasas fi to specialise in
taraddad yittraddad* to hesitate

* taraddad ‘inn when followed by a dependent verb:
taraddad ‘inn yudkhul. He hesitated to enter.

In initial-w and hollow verbs the weak root letter stabilises:

- tawaqqaf yitwaqqaf 9ala to depend on
- tawassa9 yitwassa9 to expand
- tawaqqaq yitwaqqaq 9ala to expect, await
- tawawwar yitwawwar** to evolve

** present-tense prefix t- assimilates to f of the root.

Final-weak: Root w l y, tawalla yitwalla to be (put) in charge:
Past: like Form II, but prefixed ta:-
   tawallayt, tawallayt/tawallat, tawalla/tawallat;
tawallayna, tawallaytū, tawallū
l (etc.) was/were (put) in charge

Pres.: final root letter becomes a and the final-weak verb rule (8/10) applies:
   'atwalla, titwalla/titwallī, yitwalla/titwalla; nitwalla, titwallū, yitwallū
l (etc.) am/is/are (put) in charge

5. Verbs of Form VI

For Form VI we can use the following models:
- All classes except final-weak: takātab yitkātab to write to each other
- Final-weak: talāqa yitlāqa to come together, meet

Form VI is exactly like Form V, except for having long ā after the initial root letter instead of a doubled middle root letter. Form VI verbs often have a reciprocal meaning (= 'each other'); some of them correspond to Form III verbs:
   kātab yikātab III to write to, correspond
   takātab yitkātab VI to write to each other, correspond

Examples of Form VI verbs:
- All classes except final-weak:
  Root k t b, takātab yitkātab to write to each other, correspond:
    Past: takātab, takātab/takātaba, tanīkātaba/tanīkātaba
    Pres.: 'atkātab, tkātab/tikātaba, yitkātaba/titkātaba
- Final-weak:
  Root l q y, talāqa yitlāqa to come together, meet:
    Past: talāqa, talāqa/talāqī, yitlāqa/titlāqa
    Pres.: 'atlāqa, titlāqa/titlāqa, yitlāqa

so also:
   tabādal yitbādal to exchange with each other
   tazāhar yitzāhar to demonstrate (politically)
   tadīkhāl yitdīkhāl to interfere
   ta9āwan yit9āwan to cooperate
   tanāwab yitnāwab to alternate
   tanāwal yitnāwal to reach for; to take (food, drink)

Final-weak: Root l q y, talāqa yitlāqa to come together, meet:
   Past: talāqayt, talāqay/talāqī, yitlāqa/titlāqa
   Pres.: 'atlāqa, titlāqa/titlāqa, yitlāqa

so also: ta9āfa yit9āfa to recover (in health)

6. Imperatives of Forms V and VI

For the imperatives of Forms V and VI, follow the rules for Form II:
Affirmative:
   V tkallam/tkallamī/tkallamū
   VI t9āwān/t9āwānī/t9āwānū

Negative:
   V lā titraddad/lā titraddadī/lā titraddadū
   VI lā titdīkhāl/lā titdīkhālī/lā titdīkhālū

7. Participles of Forms V and VI

For Form V and VI participles:
- Active: Replace the yit- prefixes of the second principal part with muta-, and (NB) change the a of the last syllable to i (for all classes except final-weak) or to ī (for final-weak verbs).
8. Verbal nouns of Forms V and VI

To make the verbal nouns of Forms V and VI, replace the last \( a \) of the first principal part:

- in all classes except final-weak: with -\( u \).
- in final-weak verbs (rare): with -\( i \).

Examples (with some nisba derivatives):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>taqaddum</td>
<td>progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>taqaddumī</td>
<td>progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>taqaddumī</td>
<td>intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tadakhkhul</td>
<td>specialisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>tawassu9</td>
<td>expansion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tawassu9ī</td>
<td>expansionist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tazāhir</td>
<td>demonstration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>ta9wun</td>
<td>cooperation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ta9wunī</td>
<td>cooperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>ta9dhul</td>
<td>interference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanōwil</td>
<td>intake (food/drink)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>tabādul</td>
<td>exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tapādul</td>
<td>exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tazāhir</td>
<td>demonstration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>ta9āwal</td>
<td>cooperation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ta9āwalī</td>
<td>cooperative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. \( mā = \) what

\( mā \) is \( \) what when introducing indirect questions and in the relative meaning \( dhat \) which\( Ĕ \) In the indirect question we can instead use \( shā \), except after a preposition, when \( mā \) is obligatory:

- mish 9ārif mā/shā sār. but: 'ashār 'ila mā sār 'ams.
- tadhakkar mā qult hu (yyā) d-duktur. tadhakkar mā 'asharti 'ilu 'ams.

Note also mimma and 9amma (for \( fmin mā, 9an mā\)), and the expression \( mā yaλ \) \( \) what follows\( ɢ \) the following\( ɢ \)

- 'ashār 'ila mā yaλ. He pointed out the following.
- mimma yaλ, min al-wādīh 'inn ... From what follows, it is clear that ...
- dās follows\( ɢ \)s kama yaλ.

10. Absolute object

We often use as object of a verb a verbal noun having the same root as that verb. We call this structure the **absolute object**:

- sa'altni su'āl. She asked me a question.
- taḥḥassat 9aḥḥasun mālmās. You made (improved) a tangible improvement.
- jaddadā tajdid muntāz. They have renovated it excellently.

The verbal noun may be of a different form from that of the verb:

- tarashshah (V) rashh (I) shadīd. He caught a severe cold.
11. Special adjectives

Certain adjectives denoting common colours and some physical afflictions are based on the comparative-adjective pattern (see 9/13) in the masculine singular. They also have special forms for the feminine singular/inanimate plural, and the animate plural. Models are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>masc.</th>
<th>f.s./inan. pl.</th>
<th>an. pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td>'ahmar</td>
<td>ḥamrā'</td>
<td>ḥumr</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow</td>
<td>'aswad</td>
<td>sawdā’</td>
<td>sūd</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'abyad</td>
<td>baydā’</td>
<td>bīd</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled</td>
<td>'ajashsh</td>
<td>jashsh</td>
<td>jushsh</td>
<td>hoarse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final-wk.</td>
<td>'a9ma</td>
<td>'a9myā’</td>
<td>9umī</td>
<td>blind</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

so also:

- 'azraq, zarqā’, zurq  blue  ‘akhdar, khadrā’, khudr  green
- 'aṣfar, safrā’, ṣuf  yellow  ‘a9raj, 9arjā’, 9urj  lame
- 'aṭrash, ṭarshā’, ṭarsh  deaf

A few colours are nisba adjectives:

- bunnī/binnī  brown  ramādī  grey

We make comparative and superlative of all these adjectives with ‘akthar, as with derived and nisba adjectives.

12. Quadriliteral verbs

A few verbs, some of them common, have quadriliteral roots, i.e. four root letters. We shall mark such verbs with Q.

Form IQ, examples:

- tarjam yitarjim  to translate  talfan yitalfin  to telephone
- barhan yibarhin 9ala  to prove  zalzal yizalzil  to shake
- talfaz yitalfiz  to televise  farja yifarj ī*  to show to

* farja takes two direct objects: farjū yyādī. They showed it to him.

Form IQ tenses, imperatives and participles are similar to Form II triliteral. Thus, for tarjam yitarjim IQ:

- Past: tarjam, tjarjame, tarjamem, tjarjame; tarjamna, tjarjamū, tjarjamū
- Pres.: ‘atarjim, tjarjime, tjarjim; ntarjim, tjarjīmah, yitarjīmah
- Imperatives: tarjīmū/yā translate, la tjarjīmū/yā donū translate

Participles: active mutarjīm translator, passive mutarjam translated

Most Form IQ verbal nouns have one of the following patterns:

- tarjama tarājīm  translation  burhān 9ala  proof of
- talfaza  television  zīlzāl  shock, earthquake

Form IIQ, the only common increased form, resembles Form V triliteral throughout:

- tazalzal yitazalzal  to quake
- tafalsaf yitafalsaf  to philosophise  \[ NB: ta- in both tenses \]
Imperative tazalzal/wa, lā tartazalzal/wa; active participle mutazalzil (no passive); verb noun tazalzul quaking.

We shall show Form IQ verbs in the vocabulary in the same manner as Form I verbs (but without the second principal part, since this is regular in Form IQ); and Form IIQ verbs in the same manner as Form II verbs; see 11/12.

13. Circumstantial verbs

In 6/10 we studied the use of u in circumstantial expressions. Arabic has two other circumstantial structures expressing simultaneous actions. The first of these is with the active participle, agreeing with the subject of the main verb:

talfan lu tālib musāxadatu. He telephoned asking for his help.
a'ājū ḍākīb (al-)-khayl. They came on horseback (riding horses).

In some expressions, the written form of the singular participle, carrying the suffix -an (f. -atan) is used in spoken Arabic:

'adāf gāyīlān 'inn ... He went on to say (He added, saying) ...
'tadāfat gāyīlātān ... She went on to say ...

The second verbal structure puts the accompanying verb into the present tense, irrespective of the tense of the main verb:

talfan lu yutālub musāxadatu. 'ajū yirkāb l-khayl/yirkābū khayl.

14. Age

A person's age is indicated with the noun 9umr 'a9mār 'age', 'life':

9umru kam? How old is he? 9umrī thalāthīn. I am thirty.

Note also:

9umrak/9umrik 'atwal. I bow to your greater experience.

and the compound adjectives, not used when the age is stated:

kbār as-sinn/kbār s-sinn/kbār as-sinn old
ṣghār as-sinn/ṣghār s-sinn/ṣghār as-sinn young

15. ḫusn, sū'; 9adam, 9ādim

The nouns ḫusn ǧoodō and sū ǧlō form a number of constructs with special meaning:

ĥusn al-ḥazz good luck sū' al-ḥazz bad luck
ĥusn al-ḥāl good conditions sū' al-ḥāl poor conditions
ĥusn al-qaṣd good will sū' al-qaṣd ill will
sū' al-mu9āmala ill-treatment (li) sū' al-ʿiddāra (by) mismanagement
li ḫusn al-ḥazz fortunately li sū' al-ḥazz unfortunately

The noun 9adam ǧakō can be used in construct with any definite verbal noun to make a negative concept, thus:

9adam at-tāfāhum misunderstanding
9adam at-tāwāwun non-cooperation
waqqafī‘awqafī sh-shughl li 9adam at-tamwīl. They stopped the work for lack of financing.

With a non-verbal noun, we interpose the verbal noun wujūd ʿexistenceō
9adam wujūd al-mawād al-ʿawwalīya lack of raw materials

The corresponding compound adjective is formed with 9ādim ǧakkīgō
LESSON 12

16. \textit{taba}\textsuperscript{9}

The invariable word \textit{taba}\textsuperscript{9} is used in one of the following ways:

- as the theme of a definite construct qualifying a preceding noun:
  \textit{al-milaff\textsuperscript{4} taba\textsuperscript{9} al-\textit{9iy\textsuperscript{a}}da} the files belonging to the clinic

- with a possessive suffix: \textit{mine} (\textit{yours} (etc.)):
  \textit{li m\textsuperscript{1}n al-kutub} – (hiya) \textit{taba\textsuperscript{9i}} Whose are the books? \textit{They} (\textit{They}) mine.

- with a possessive suffix: \textit{my}, \textit{your} (etc.) after a construct or other compound:
  \textit{darajat al-h\textsuperscript{2}r\textsuperscript{a}ra taba\textsuperscript{9u}} his temperature

17. \textbf{Regional variations: Negative -sh/-sh\textsuperscript{i}}

In the Levant, Egypt and Sudan, a verb negated by \textit{m\textsuperscript{a}} and not already carrying an object-pronoun suffix is often given the suffix -\textit{sh}:

\begin{align*}
\textit{m\textsuperscript{a} kunnash 9\textit{rif\textsuperscript{1}n} 'innak mar\textsuperscript{i}d.} & \quad \text{We didn't know you were ill.} \\
\textit{m\textsuperscript{a} k\textsuperscript{1}nsh mouj\textsuperscript{u}d.} & \quad \text{He wasn't there.} \\
\textit{m\textsuperscript{a} fi can also take -sh; it becomes m\textsuperscript{a} fish} \textit{(NB stress)} \quad \text{Sorry, there's no possibility.} \\
\textit{mit\textsuperscript{1}ssif, (m\textsuperscript{a}) fish 'imk\textsuperscript{1}n\textsuperscript{i}yi.} & \quad \text{Sorry, there's no possibility.} \\
\end{align*}

In North-west Africa, \textit{m\textsuperscript{a}} before the verb or quasi-verb (even one carrying a pronoun suffix), with the suffix -\textit{sh} or -\textit{sh\textsuperscript{i}} after it, is the standard negative formula in speech:

\textit{m\textsuperscript{a} 9indakh/9indaksh\textsuperscript{i} ful\textsuperscript{u}s?} \quad \text{Have you no money?}

18. \textit{jumal mith\textsuperscript{1}lliya}

\begin{align*}
\textit{kayf s\textsuperscript{1}h\textsuperscript{2}h\textsuperscript{i}h} \textit{Ali?} – \text{mimma simi\textsuperscript{9}tu,} & \quad \text{How Ali? From what I heard,} \\
\textit{yith\textsuperscript{2}ssan ishwasyy. 9in\textsuperscript{1}li lu 9am\textsuperscript{1}liya} & \quad \text{he is improving} \\
\textit{'awwal 'ams, u 9indu waja\textsuperscript{9} 'aqall, u yiz\textsuperscript{1}h\textsuperscript{2}r} \textit{innu y\textsuperscript{2}kul u yin\textsuperscript{1}m zayy al-\textsuperscript{9}\textsuperscript{a}da.} & \quad \text{They operated on him the day before yesterday, and he has less pain. It seems he is eating and sleeping normally.}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{al-mutaz\textsuperscript{1}h\textsuperscript{2}r\textsuperscript{a}n taqaddam\textsuperscript{i}m \textit{ha\textsuperscript{a}hta}} & \quad \text{The demonstrators advanced} \\
\text{madkhal as-s\textsuperscript{2}q, mahb\textsuperscript{i}l m\textsuperscript{a}} & \quad \text{as far as the market entrance, where the police stopped them.} \\
\text{waqqafat-hum ash-shur\textsuperscript{a}t.} & \quad \text{The police stopped them.} \\
\text{qarrarat titkhas\textsuperscript{i}s bi l-\textsuperscript{1}am\textsuperscript{r}\textsuperscript{a}d} & \quad \text{She decided to specialise in} \\
\text{ad-d\textsuperscript{1}khil\textsuperscript{a}ya khoufan min 9adam} & \quad \text{internal diseases, fearing a lack of employment} \\
\text{wuj\textsuperscript{2}d 'imk\textsuperscript{1}n\textsuperscript{i}y\textsuperscript{a}t at-tawz\textsuperscript{i}f f\textit{haql} at-tibb al-\textsuperscript{9}\textsuperscript{a}mm.} & \quad \text{possibilities in the field of general medicine.} \\
\text{taraddadna taraddud t\textsuperscript{-ibb al-\textsuperscript{9}\textsuperscript{a}mm.} & \quad \text{We hesitated a long time before telephoning you.}
\end{align*}
19. at-tamārin

1. Give the principal parts of the verbs from which these words are derived:
e.g.: mutażāhirīn – tażāhar yitzāhar
(a) ḥikāya (b) takhāṣṣūt (c) ’ijābi
(d) tadākhul (e) madkhal

2. Give the verbal noun of each verb:
e.g.: ’adāf – ’idāfā
(a) ’akhkhar (b) tawassā (c) tanāwal
(d) wīṣil (e) wazzāf

3. Give the affirmative and negative imperative, all forms:
e.g.: rāḥ – rāḥ, rūḥi, rūḥū; lā ṭuḥ, lā ṭuḥi, lā ṭuḥū
(a) taqaddam (b) ’aṯfa (c) aja
(d) taḇawān (e) ’akal

4. Complete the sentence with the right form of ’ahmar:
e.g.: lisānu – lisānu ’ahmar/ḥamrahā
(a) 9aynu (b) 9aynāy (c) al-kitāb
(d) al-kutub (e) as-sayyāra

5. Put into the present tense:
e.g.: tarjamū. – yitarjimu.
(a) talfanna lak al-youm. (b) farjāni kitāb ḫaḍīd.
(c) taḥfazū kull al-’akhbār. (d) taḥassan bi sur9a.
(e) mā tamakkanū min ’injāzu.
6. Collect together words of the same root:
e.g.: su’āl, sa’alû, mas’ūl, säyîl
mu9allima, ’imkânîya, ma9lûm, ma9rifâ, yitmakkan, ma9lûmât, n9arrifû,
ta9allamat, yumkin, ta9limî, ta9rif, yi9allim, ma9rûfa, 9ulûm.
(a) mumkin ... (b) 9ilm ... (c) 9irif ...

7. Complete the sentence with the right pronoun:
e.g.: ... hiya shurût ad-dukhûl? – mā hiya shurût ad-dukhûl?
(a) ... illî kunt titkallam ma9u?
(b) ... màlak, yâ ’akhûî?
(c) yitwaqqaf 9an ... turîd.
(d) nsît kull ... qâl lana.
(e) mish 9arf ... illî 9imilu.
1. al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwr

iqtārah
sawa
qāriya qura
ittāhz al-fursa
ittās bi
mukhtar makhār

he suggested
together
village
he seized the opportunity
he contacted
mayor (of a village)

(ba9d mā ta9āfā Peter, iqtārah zamīlu
9abdarrahmān 'innhum yizūrū sawa
qāriyytu, u Peter intāhaz al-fursa. fa
9abdarrahmān ittās bi l-mukhtar
fī hādha sh-sha’n.)

(After Peter recovered, his
colleague Abdarrahman
suggested that they visit his
village together. Peter seized
the opportunity. So
Abdarrahman contacted the
mayor on this matter.)

'āshraf
(9ind al-mukhtar 'abū 'āshraf fī l-qāriya)

honour
to increase (something)
good (noun)
it was said

'abū 'āshraf: 'ahlan wa sahlan, sayyid
Peter. 'iš sharaf ikbīr. kayf ḥālak?
Welcome, Mr Brown. It’s a
great honour for me. How are
you?

Peter: 'ilm sh-sharaf, siyādat al-
mukhtar. 'ana kthīr mabsūt,
al-ḥamdulillīa. fa kayf
hadīra? 'inshalla bi shīḥa?
The honour’s mine, Mr Mayor.
I’m very well, thank you. And
how are you? In good health, I
hope?

'abū 'āshraf: wallahī, sayyid Peter, mabsūt
jiddan, yikaththir khayrak.
walaakin inqāl 'innak mirid?
Very well indeed, Mr Brown.
God bless you. But it was said
that you have been ill?

Peter: kunt ta9bān ishwayy, walākinī
kthīr 'alshan hassa, shukran.
I was a little tired, but lān a lot
better now, thank you.

mā 'ajmalha!
manzara manāẓir
nasama
how beautiful it is!
view
person (in statistics)

'abū 'āshraf: al-ḥamdulillā. shū 9ān
qariyīnna, yā Peter?
Thank Heavens. What do you
think of our village, Peter?

Peter: mā 'ajmalha! al-manzara
9ażīna min huna. kam nasama
fī yuskunū fī l-qāriya?
How beautiful it is! The view is
superb from here. How many
people are there living in the
village?

'abū 'āshraf: 'ahlan wa sahlan, sayyid
Peter. 'iš sharaf ikbīr. kayf ḥālak?
Welcome, Mr Brown. It’s a
great honour for me. How are
you?

Peter: 'ilm sh-sharaf, siyādat al-
mukhtar. 'ana kthīr mabsūt,
al-ḥamdulillīa. fa kayf
hadīra? 'inshalla bi shīḥa?
The honour’s mine, Mr Mayor.
I’m very well, thank you. And
how are you? In good health, I
hope?

'abū 'āshraf: wallahī, sayyid Peter, mabsūt
jiddan, yikaththir khayrak.
walaakin inqāl 'innak mirid?
Very well indeed, Mr Brown.
God bless you. But it was said
that you have been ill?

Peter: kunt ta9bān ishwayy, walākinī
kthīr 'alshan hassa, shukran.
I was a little tired, but lān a lot
better now, thank you.

mā 'ajmalha!
manzara manāẓir
nasama
how beautiful it is!
view
person (in statistics)

'abū 'āshraf: al-ḥamdulillā. shū 9ān
qariyīnna, yā Peter?
Thank Heavens. What do you
think of our village, Peter?

Peter: mā 'ajmalha! al-manzara
9ażīna min huna. kam nasama
fī yuskunū fī l-qāriya?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARABIC TODAY</th>
<th>NUMBER</th>
<th>INHABITANT</th>
<th>IT INCREASED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9adad 'a9dād</td>
<td>number</td>
<td>inhabitant</td>
<td>it increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sākin sukkān</td>
<td>The population has greatly increased during the past years. Some years ago, there were no more than two hundred,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>izdād</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**'abū 'ashraf:** 9adad as-sukkān izdād bi kthār khīlās as-sanāwāt al-mādīya, qābl kam sana mā kān fī 'akthar min mitayn, iḥtallū 'isrā'īlī diffā diffāf gharb intāqalū | | |

 walākin lamma kānū ḥtallū l-'isrā'īlīyīn ad-diffā l-gharbīyā, intāqalū kthār min an-nās li hal-mānātīq, wa 'aktharīyat 'oulādhum līssā sākinīn huna. ibtīdā' | | |

| 9tāmādā 9ala | | | |
| hālhum | | | |
| 9āsh yīṬīsh I, ma₇īsha | | | |
| kayf mā kān | | | |
| yishtāghilū | | | |

| fī l-ibtidā' iḍṭāmadā 9ala hālhum, kānū yīṬīshū kayf mā kān, walākin iḥṣās kthār min ar-rījāl yīrūdū yishtāghilū youmīyān fī l-balād, | | | |
| | to farm, plant, cultivate land | | |
| | they look after child | | |
| | they work | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
LESSON 13

masībī
Peter: yānin yishtārikū fī ḥayūṭ al-qāriya tamāman?

Christian
So they participate fully in the life of the village?

'abū 'ashraf: tābān. 'ahilna, mīya bi l-mīya. u 'iẖdāhum mudīrāt al-madrasa tābāna. qabl kam sana fītaḥna kanīsā ḡhirā, u kṯīr min an-nās masḥyīn.

Of course. They're our people, a hundred per cent. One of them is the headmistress of our school. Some years ago we inaugurated a small church, as many of the people are Christian.

Peter: 9āzīm. fā kaf kānāt az-zirā9a has-sana, yā 'abū 'ashraf?

'abū 'ashraf: mish batāl. fī l-ibtidā kuant 'aḵāf 9a-īt qs, ya9nī kān al-māṯar basīt, wa r-rayy mu9aqqad. wa zdād ỉshwayy thaman al-hubūb wa s-samad. kunna majburyīn nittākhidh 'iqrā'ūt khāṣṣa.

Excellent. And how was the farming this year, Abu Ashraf?

'abū 'ashraf: not bad. In the beginning I was afraid for the weather, that is to say, the rain was poor and the irrigation was complicated. And the price of seeds and fertiliser went up somewhat. We were forced to take special measures.

Peter: al-hamdulillā. baladīya

'abū 'ashraf: yā Peter, tfaḏdal maḏī l-baladīya. 'a9tāqid 'inn shuyūkh al-qāriya yintādirūk, ijṭāma9ū 'ikrāman 'ilak ... Peter, come with me to the village hall. I believe the elders are waiting for you; they're gathered in your honour ...
2. 9ibārāt

tā‘ahhaz al-fursa. He seized the opportunity. See this verb below.
‘ilnā sh-sharaf. The honour is mine (āursā). The plural is used, as with
sharrasta‘a/sharrasfinā.

yikaththir khayrak (God) increase your welfare God bless you.
mā ‘ajmalu‘ajmalha‘ajmalhum How beautiful he/she/it is/they are! This type of
expression is studied below.

9adad as-sukkān (the number of inhabitants) the population
kayf mā kān (as it was) somehow; any way one (etc.) can/could
basī‘ busatā’ (simple) in poor supply (water, fuel etc.)
i‘krāman li in honour of. Adverbial form of i‘krām, verbal noun of i‘kram
yukrim IV do treat with deference

3. mufradāt ‘idāfiya, al-jughrāfiya wa t-ḥaṣas – Geography and weather

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geographical Features</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9ālam 9awālīmi, dunya (no pl.)</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘iqālim ‘aqālim</td>
<td>region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baḥr ‘abhār</td>
<td>sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jabal jibāl</td>
<td>mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wādī widāyān</td>
<td>valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṣahra ṣahāra/ṣahrāwāt</td>
<td>desert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madīna mudun</td>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ahl al-qura</td>
<td>country people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khali‘ī ḥulāj</td>
<td>bay, gulf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jazīra jazīrā</td>
<td>island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saḥāb (collective)</td>
<td>clouds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shams shumās (f.)</td>
<td>sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sama samāwāt (m./f.)</td>
<td>sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥanāb</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shimal sharqī/gharbī</td>
<td>NE/NW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hawa ‘ahwīya</td>
<td>air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭib ṭiyyāḥ (f.)</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9āṣifa 9awāṣif</td>
<td>storm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shīta /ṣītiyā; thālī ṣuḥāl</td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maṭar yuṃṭur</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yunṭur; as-sama ṭumṭur; yusqut al-maṭār</td>
<td>it's raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuṭhulj; as-sama ṭuṭṭulj; yusqut ath-thalīj</td>
<td>it's snowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʻāsiyā</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʻafriqīyā</td>
<td>Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-khalīl al-9arabī</td>
<td>Arabian Gulf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-furāt</td>
<td>Euphrates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-bahr al-ʻaḥmar</td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-muḥīt al-ʻaṭlas/al-ḥādī/al-hindi</td>
<td>Atlantic/Pacific/Indian Ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ash-sharq al-‘adna/al-ʻawsat/al-‘aqṣa</td>
<td>Near/Middle/Far East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-jazīra/shibīh al-jazīra</td>
<td>Arabian Peninsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-bahr al-‘abyad al-mutawassīt</td>
<td>Mediterranean Sea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
an-nahū
4. Verbs of Form VII
For verbs of Form VII we can use the following models:

- **Sound:** insāhab yinsāhib to withdraw, be withdrawn
- **Hollow (rare):** inzār yinzār to be visited
- **Doubled:** indamm yindamm to join, be annexed to
- **Final-weak:** inlāqa yinlāqī to be encountered

Initial-w verbs do not occur in Form VII.

Note also:

- the i- beginning the first principal part is a weak vowel,
- the first syllable of a Form VII verb is never stressed, despite the general rule.

We mark the stress wherever it is irregular.

Form VII often expresses the passive voice (see 12/4) of Form I:

I sahab yishab to pull, withdraw (something)

VII insāhab yinsāhib to be withdrawn, withdraw (oneself), retreat (of an army)

Form VII verbs cannot take a direct object. Typical tenses:

Sound: Root s h b, insāhab yinsāhib to withdraw, be withdrawn:

- Past: insah abt, insah abt/insah abti, insāh ab/insāh abat;
- insah abna, insah abtū, insāh abū

Pres.: 'ansah abt, insah abt/insah abti, insāh abt, insāh abū

so also:

inkātab yinkātib to be written

infās al yinfās il to be separated

infājar yinfājir to explode

inkāsar yinkāsir to be broken

inqāsam yinqāsim to be divided

inqālas yinqālas to join, be annexed to

inqālab yinqālab to be overthrown

in9āqad yin9āqad to be convened

inbāsat yinbāsit to be pleased, enjoy oneself

* In the past tense of this verb, the i- beginning any personal ending assimilates to the final root letter and becomes f-:

  | inbāsaff/inbāsaff/ibbāsaffū | I was/you were pleased
  | inbāsatt (no assimilation) | she was pleased

Hollow: the middle root letter becomes a or ā; the hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root z w r, inzār yinzār to be visited.

Past: inzar, inzar/inzarī, inzār/inzārīt, inzarna, inzarū, inzārū

Pres.: 'anzar, inzar/inzarī, inzār/inzārī; nizar, inzarū, yinzārū

so also: inqāl yinqāl to be said

Doubled: a after the initial root letter in both tenses; see also the rule given below:

Root d m m, indamm yindamm to join, be annexed to:

Past: indammnt, indammnt/indammntī, indamm/indammat;

indammna, indammntū, indammū

Pres.: 'andamm, tindamm/tindammī, yindamm/tindammī;

nindamm, tindammū, yindammū

so also:

in9add yin9add to be counted

inhall yinhall to be solved
Doubled verb rule: In all increased forms of doubled verbs except II and V, the identical root letters separate before a consonantal personal ending and fall together elsewhere.

**Final-weak**: Root ِلُقْي، ِيناَقِلَ لَغَّي to be encountered:

- **Past**: ِيناَقِلَتْ، ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَٰتْ، ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ; ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ; ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ
- **Pres.**: ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ; ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ/ِيناَقِلَتْ

5. Some Form VII verbs can be used to express -able, -ible:

- **ar-raml mā yin‘add**: Sand is uncountable.
- **tis‘a yinqásim bi thalātha**: Nine is divisible by (in) three.

6. **Verbs of Form VIII**

For Form VIII we can use the following models:

- **Sound**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
  - to propose, suggest
- **Initial-w**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
  - to contact
- **Hollow**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
  - to be distinguished
- **Doubled**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
  - to occupy
- **Final-weak**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
  - to buy

Form VIII is derived like Form VII, but with ِ after the initial root letter instead of ِ before it. Further:

- the i- beginning the first principal part is a weak vowel, as with Form VII,
- the first syllable of a Form VIII verb is stressed only in the present tense of final-weak verbs with final root letter ِ or ِ. See under the final-weak verbs below.

Some Form VIII verbs give a figurative meaning to the root. Compare:

- **fatah yiftah I**: to open
- **iftatih yiftatih VIII**: to inaugurate

But many add no special meaning.

**Sound**: Root ِلُقْيَ، ِيَقِتَّرِ to propose, suggest:

- **Past**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ;
  - ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ; ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ
- **Pres.**: ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ;
  - ِيَقِتَّرِ، ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ;

So also:

- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to assemble, congregate
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to think
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to discover
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to believe
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to consider
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to respect
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to (s)elect
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to wait for
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to move away
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to exert oneself
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to work
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to participate in
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to rely on
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to deliberate
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to inaugurate
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to tolerate, be probable
- ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ/ِيَقِتَّرِ to seize ((al-)furs an opportunity/the opportunity)

and many others.
"akhadh yákhadh I has an irregular Form VIII:

\[ ittákhadh ittákhidh \] to take

**Initial-w:** initial w regularly assimilates to the \( t \) of Form VIII, giving principal parts beginning \( it-, yt-; \)
Root \( w s l \), ittášal yittásil bi/ff to contact;

**Past:** ittášal, ittášal/íttášali, ittášal/íttášalat; ittášalna, ittášaltū, ittášalū

**Pres.:** ‘átásil, tításil/tításili, yittásil/tításil; nításil, titásilū, yittásilū

so also:

\[ ittáhadh yittáhid \] to be united \[ ittáfaq yittáfiq \] 9ala to agree on

**Hollow:** the weak middle root letter appears as \( a \) or \( ā \), and the hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root \( m y z \), imtáz yimtāz to be distinguished

**Past:** imtätz, imtätz/imtätz, imtätz/imtätzat; imtazna, imtazū, imtāzū

**Pres.:** ‘āmtz, timtāz/timtāzū, yimtāz/timtāz; nimtāz, timtāzū, yimtāzū

so also:

\[ ihtam yittham \] 'ila to need \[ irtāb yirtāb \] to rest

**Doubled:** The doubled verb rule shown in paragraph 4 above applies.

Root \( b l l \), ihtall yihallah to occupy:

**Past:** ihtalālt, ihtalālt/ihtalāltū; ihtall/ihtallat; ihtalalna, ihtalalū, ihtallū

**Pres.:** 'āhtall, tihtall/tihtallū, yihtall/yihtallū; nihtall, tihtallū, yihtallū

so also:

\[ ihtam yitthamm bi/ff \] to be concerned by; to look after

**Final-weak:** Verbs with final root letter \( w \) or \( y \) are stressed in the present tense on the prefix. In all other circumstances the stress is on the root, as in the other classes.

Root \( sh r y \), ishtāra yishtarū to buy:

**Past:** ishtārayt, ishtārayt/ishtāraytū, ishtāra/ishtārat;
ishtārayna, ishtāraytū, ishtārū

**Pres.:** 'āshtrū, tishtrū/tishtrū, yishtrū/tishtrū; nishtrū, tishtrū, yishtrū

so also: root \( n h w \), intāhā yintāhi to end

but: root \( b d ā \), ibthādā yibthādā to begin, stressed on the root throughout.

7. The \( t \) of Form VIII is modified after certain initial root letters:

- after initial-root letter \( t \), \( d \), \( s \), or \( d \) it becomes \( f \):
\[ idhārāb yidhārib \] to clash \[ ıştānū ıştānū \] to manufacture

- after initial-root letter \( d \), \( dh \) or \( z \) it becomes \( ē \):
\[ izdād yizdād \] to be increased

Note also izdāwāy yizdāwāy do be doubled irregular, with stable middle \( w \).

8. Imperatives of Forms VII and VIII

Make imperatives for Forms VII and VIII as for Form II:

VII \( insāḥūb/insāhubbū \) \( lā tinsāḥūb/lā tinsāhubbū \)

VIII \( ibthādū/ibthādū \) \( lā tibthādū/lā tibthādū \)
9. Participles of Forms VII and VIII

Form VII and VIII participles are derived as usual. Form VII has no passive; its active participle usually has passive meaning:

- **Active**: replace the yi- prefix of the second principal part with mu-.
- **Passive (VIII only)**: replace initial i- of the first principal part with mu-.

In all the participles, we keep the stress of the principal part, unless a stressed ending (e.g. a sound plural ending) is added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form VII</th>
<th>Form VIII</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munfāsil</td>
<td>separate(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munhāl</td>
<td>(being) solved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu9tāqad</td>
<td>believed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustārik</td>
<td>participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muñjāhid</td>
<td>industrious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muh tāmar</td>
<td>conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muntākhīb</td>
<td>elector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muttāhid</td>
<td>united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muntāz*</td>
<td>distinguished, excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūnhatt*</td>
<td>occupying; occupied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūdārij</td>
<td>agitated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muzdāwij</td>
<td>double(d)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In the hollow and doubled classes the Form VIII active and passive participles are the same.

10. Verbal nouns of Forms VII and VIII

The patterns for the verbal nouns of Forms VII and VIII are similar except that the only common Form VII verbal nouns are the sound and doubled ones. Models are given below. The stress is regular; plurals, if any, are sound:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Form VII</th>
<th>Form VIII</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td>insīḥāb</td>
<td>ihtirāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>withdrawal</td>
<td>proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial-w</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>ittisāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>intiyyāz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>intiyyāz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>ihtilāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled</td>
<td>inḍīmān</td>
<td>ihtilāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>annexation</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final-weak</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>ishtirā’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples, some with nisba adjectives derived from them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form VII</th>
<th>Form VIII</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infisāl</td>
<td>separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infijār</td>
<td>explosion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ijtimā9</td>
<td>meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i9tīqād</td>
<td>belief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intītār, intīzār</td>
<td>wait, expectation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishtirāk</td>
<td>participation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intīqāl</td>
<td>transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iḥtīmāl</td>
<td>tolerance; probability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intikhāb</td>
<td>election</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- **VII** infisāl: separation, infisāli: separatist
- **VIII** ijtihād: belief, ijtihādī: socialist
- **VII** intīqāl: transfer, ihtīrām: respect
- **VIII** iḥtiyār: respect, ihtirāk: socialist
- **VIII** iḥtiyār: respect, ihtirāk: socialist
- **VIII** iḥtiyār: respect, ihtirāk: socialist
- **VIII** iḥtiyār: respect, ihtirāk: socialist
LESSON 13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iftitāḥ</td>
<td>inauguration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ittiḥād</td>
<td>taking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ittiḥād</td>
<td>unity, union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihtimām</td>
<td>concern, attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihtimāj</td>
<td>need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibtidā’</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idīrāb</td>
<td>commotion, riot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihtimād</td>
<td>manufacture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also:
- 19timād 9ala | dependence on/confidence in
- ’awrāq al-ihtarād | (diplomatic) credentials
- ‘akhadh bi 9ayn al-ihtarār | to take into consideration
- ibtidā’ an min, ihtarār min | starting from, with effect from

11. Abstract nouns
An important type of abstract noun (i.e. a noun denoting an idea) is derived by adding -ya (plural, if any, sound) to a nisba adjective:
- ishtirākīya | socialism
- ittiḥādīya | federalism
- tawassūtiya | expansionsim
- dimūqrāfiya | democracy

and note 9urrīya | freedom (from 9urr ‘ahūr | free)

12. Exclamations
We can form an exclamation with mā 9what followed by the comparative form of a simple adjective (i.e. not a participle and not nisba), with a possessive suffix:
- mā 9ajmalu/9ajmalha! | How beautiful it is!
- mā 9akramak/ik/kum | How kind you are.

13. Kayf mà kān (etc.)
Note these invariable expressions:
- kayf mà kān | somehow or other, any way one (etc.) can/could
- wayn mà kān | somewhere or other
- mata mà kān | at some/any time

Those with pronouns are found mostly as direct or prepositional objects:
- is’al mà kān | huwa mabsūt bi mahma kān

14. Reflexive ḥāl-
ḥāl, invariable but with a possessive suffix, can be used like nafs 9anfūs (see 8/16) to express the reflexive pronoun 9elf/9elves:
- saḥāb ḥālū u riji9 li l-qāriya. | He took (dragged) himself off and returned to the village.
- 9ārī yishukkū ḥālū | They began to doubt themselves.
- ni9tamid 9ala ḥālū | We rely on ourselves.
- (kānat i)khār shāyīfā 9ālū | She is/was very conceited.

In this last idiom we use only a participial verb, not a tense.
15. Passive voice
It is incorrect to express the agent (by whom) of a passive expression in Arabic. However, many Arab journalists use min qibal on the part of for dayo imitating European style. Use this idiom yourself very sparingly, if at all:

\[
\text{al-mustashfa nfātah min qibal al-wazīr.} \\
\text{al-fatra mumaddada min qibal ash-sharika.}
\]

16. shibih
This noun, meaning resemblance, forms compound adjectives or nouns meaning semi-, quasi-etc.

- har-risālat ash-shibih rasmiyya: these semi-official letters
- 'ijrā'at shibih ṣukāmiyya: quasi-governmental measures

With a noun, shibih forms a construct:

- shibih al-jazīra l-9arabīya: the Arabian peninsula
- shibih al-qārra l-hindīya: the Indian subcontinent

17. Diminutives
Diminutive nouns are derivatives denoting something smaller than the original. Most Arabic diminutives are made on one of three models:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kitāb} & \rightarrow \text{kutayyib} & \text{booklet} \\
\text{bab} & \rightarrow \text{buhayrā} & \text{lake} \\
\text{kalb} & \rightarrow \text{kulayb} & \text{puppy}
\end{align*}
\]

18. jumal mithāliya

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{'a9táq} & \text{ 'inn 'ābsan shi' 'inna nintāţir} & \text{I think the best thing for us is to wait for him to contact us after the meeting.} \\
\text{haţta yittābal bīna ba9d al-ijtimā9.} & \\

\text{'akhf} & \text{ 'inn yikūn 9adam at-tafāhum bayn al-mushtariyayn} & \text{I fear there will be mutual misunderstanding between both participants at this conference.} \\
\text{fi hādha l-mu'tāmar.} & \\

\text{khillā l-mu'mār as-ṣuţuţ taba9u} & \text{During his press conference the minister informed us of the Government's new proposal concerning our main problem, namely the withdrawal from the occupied territories.} \\
\text{l-wazīr 'akhbarna bi qitrāţ al-ḥukūma} & \\
\text{l-jadīd bi khuṣūţ mushkilītina r-ra'isīya,} & \\
\text{u hiya l-insibāb min al-arādī l-mu9ālā.} & \\
\text{u hiya l-in9awār l-arādī l-mu9ālā.} & \\
\text{hādha t-tafsīl muhim, walākīmin} & \text{This detail is important, but it is likely that they will not take it} \\
\text{al-mu'tāmal 'in9um mā yakhudhū} & \text{into consideration. We must mention it again ourselves so that they don't forget it.} \\
\text{bi 9ān al-9ītimār. Lāzim 'iţma nudhkuru} & \\
\text{lāzim 'iţma nudhkuru} & \\
\text{marra thāniya ḥatta mā yinsū.} & \\
\text{marra thāniya ḥatta mā yinsū.} & \\
\text{'akhbarnī bu şūra shibih rasmiyya bi 'inn} & \text{He informed me semi-officially that the wait will be a long one} \\
\text{yikūn al-intiţār tawfīl li 9adam} & \text{because of disagreement between the two chief representatives.} \\
\text{al-muwafaqa bayn al-mumaththilayn} & \\
\text{ar-ra'isīyīn.} & \\
\text{ar-ra'isīyīn.}
\end{align*}
\]
19. at-tamārin

1. Give the principal parts and the verbal noun of each verb:
e.g.: insáh – insáhib yinsáhib, insihāb
(a) sā'ad (b) kān (c) ittiākhad
(d) 'ansha (e) ważzaf

2. Put into the present tense:
e.g.: intakhabū l-youm. – yintákhibu l-youm.
(a) tāb9an ishtaraka' fī l-mu'tármar.
(b) inqāl 'inmu marīd.
(c) ash-shurta ṭallat al-bināya.
(d) iktašaft shī jādīd?
(e) tawassā'at 'inmānīya' at-ta9āwun baynna u baynhum.

3. Use a tense instead of the participle:
e.g.: shāyifū 'ams? – shuftu 'ams?
(a) wāsīlīn fī l-layl, 'aftākir.
(b) mish 9ārifīn laysh.
(c) huwa kthīr muḥtāj 'īla musā9adatna.
(d) mīn sākin huna?
(e) fāhimī yā 'akhūf?

4. Give the active participle of the verb:
e.g.: taqaddam – mutaqaddim
(a) infāsal (b) 'arsal (c) masha
(d) ihtāj (e) ittiāḥad

5. Make one conditional sentence from the two sentences:
e.g.: kunna 9ārifīn 'akhibnāk min qabl. – law kunna 9ārifīn, 'akhibnāk min qabl.
(a) huwa mish moujūd. 'attāsil bi zamīlū.
(b) mā ndīr bāla, yikūn fī nʃīr shadīd.
(c) kān yidīr bālu, mā kān fī mithl ħadhā l-infījār.
(d) kānat al-'asā9ār 'aqall. qidirna nishtārī 'akthār.

6. Make feminine everything possible:
e.g.: huwa tilmīdī muntāz yishtāghīl kwayyīs.
(a) 'abū rajul laṭfī wa kbir as-sinn.
(b) at-tabiib kān yihāwil yisā9id al-marīd.
(c) ta9af al-mu9allīmīn al-judūd?
(d) ittāṣal fīnu 'ams.
(e) laysh mā tīṣṭārimu ḥṭirām 'akthār?
7. 

Fill the blank with the appropriate verbal noun, of the form indicated, from the list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbal Noun</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ta9āwun</td>
<td>az-zumalā’ fi hādhi (III) ḍarūrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitāba</td>
<td>ishtirāk az-zumalā’ fi hādhi l-muhāwala ḍarūrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhāwala</td>
<td>(a) 9adam (VI) bayn az-zamālayn huwa l-mushkila r-ra’īsīya.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanẓīm</td>
<td>(b) huwa yifhamnī (I) kāmil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāhīm</td>
<td>(c) mish qādir ’aqra (I) 9ala hal-warqa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishtirāk</td>
<td>(d) ba9d (VIII) al-ishtirākīyīn inbāsaṭu kthīr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intikhāb</td>
<td>(e) ‘ana mas’ūl 9an (II) hādha l-qism li sh-sharika.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Collect together words of the same root:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tafāh, muwazzaf, tawzīf, fahm</td>
<td>tafāh, fahm; muwazzaf, tawzīf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutakallīmin, mafātīḥ, ’abwāb, buwayb, infātaḥat, kalima, iftitāḥ, mumtadd, yin9add, bawwāb, 9add, yiṭaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāb</td>
<td>(a) bāb ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fataḥ</td>
<td>(b) fataḥ ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9idda</td>
<td>(c) 9idda ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madd</td>
<td>(d) madd ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takallum</td>
<td>(e) takallum ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. al-ḥikāya wa l-ḥiwār

yistafid min he benefits from
li ʿannu because
ḥāraka movement
yistaghrib min he is astonished at
bidāʾa baḍāyi9 merchandise
navwa9 II to assort, to vary

(li ḥadd al-ʿān Peter mà qidir yistafid min ziyārat as-sūq li ʿannu kān 9indu shughl ikthīr, dāyimān inbāṣat ikthīr min al-ḥaraka wa l-ḥayā wa l-ʿaṣwāt, fi s-sūq. kān dāyimān yistaghrib min al-badāyi9 al-munawwa9a l-muqaddama hunāk.)

qammāš draper, cloth merchant
ḥusayn Hussein (name)

(fī s-sūq; 9ind al-qammāš ḥusayn)

fattash II 9an (in the market; at Hussein the cloth merchant)

ḥusayn: ʿahlan yā sidī. tfad dado. tfattish 9an shi mu9ayyan? Welcome, sir. Are you looking for something in particular?

fustān fasāṭīn (woman's) dress
ṣayfī summer (adjective)
loun ʿalwān colour
qmāš ʿaqmisha cloth
qābil li l-ghasīl washable
wāṭī low

Peter: na9am, ʿahībb ʿashūf shī min shān fasūṭān ṣayfī ʿila zoujti. Yes, I would like to see something for a summer dress for my wife.

ḥusayn: tfadado huna. hay kull al-ʿalwān, qmāš qawī u khaafī li ṣ-ṣayf, u qābil li l-ghasīl tamāmān. Come this way. Here we have all the colours, strong and light cloth for the summer, and completely washable. I'll give it to you at the lowest prices.

Peter: hādha ṭayyib. kam yikallīf? This is good. How much does it cost?

ḥusayn: ʿaṣfīk iyā nīl kam mā turūd. I'll give it to you for however much you want.

ʿākhir kalima (the last word)

fāsal III your final price to bargain
Peter: la’, qul li ‘akhir kalima, u mā ‘urid ‘aʃṣil ma9ak.

husayn: wallāhi, tis9a danānīr bi l-mitr. jinsu muntāż, mustawrad mīn al-yābān, wa l-‘alwān thābita mīya fi l-mīya.

Peter: ghāfī shwayy, wallāhi, tis9a danānīr bi l-mitr. fāmā, fāmā, fāmā, fāmā.

husayn: miya u khamst9ashr santimitr bi l-9ard, yikaffī mitrayn u nusṣ. ‘a9tik iyāli thnayn u 9ishrīn dīnār, maʃwilīyī?

Peter: kthīr kwayyis. qaşṣ li mitrayn u nusṣ. Very good. Cut me two and a half metres.

husayn: tikram īkhār VIII to choose, select

Peter: ‘allah yibārīk fīk. tfaḍdal. Thank you.

husayn: u hay al-fakka. mamnūn jiddan. And here’s the change. Thank you very much. Goodbye.


2. 9ibārāt
‘akhir kalima (dhe last word) your best/last price
tis9a danānīr bi l-mitr nine dinars a metre
miya u khamst9ashr santimitr bi l-9ard 115 cm wide (dik width)
mbrūk (dilessed) Congratulations! A greeting; the response is: ‘allah yibārīk fīk/fik/fikum (God bless you) Thank you.

fī ‘amān ‘illā (dik the safety of God) Goodbye. A greeting; the response is: fī ‘amān al-9arīm (dik the safety of the Generous One) Goodbye.
3. mufradāt 'idāfiya. al-mushtarayāt wa l-malābis – Shopping, clothes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shackl 'ashkāl</td>
<td>(also:) pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wazan yūzin I</td>
<td>to weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zabūn zabāyin</td>
<td>customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zawwad II</td>
<td>to supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tawaffar V</td>
<td>to be plentiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khaffaf II</td>
<td>to reduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grām</td>
<td>gram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bantāloun</td>
<td>trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qanāṣ qumsān</td>
<td>shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kundura kānādir</td>
<td>shoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blīza</td>
<td>blouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanūrā tanānīr</td>
<td>skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malābis tātānīya</td>
<td>underclothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghasīl</td>
<td>washing, laundry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shatawī</td>
<td>winter (adjective)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Verbs of Form IX

Form IX is only useful for denoting colours or physical defects. It has only sound and hollow classes, both with stable root letters throughout. Form IX behaves somewhat like a Form VIII doubled verb, but without the -t- after the first root letter.

Model root h m r, ihmarr yihmarr to go red, to blush:

**Past:** ihmarart, ihmarart/ihmarrati, ihmarr/ihmarrat; 
ishmararra, ihamarra, ihmarrā (etc.) went red, blushed

The initial i- of the first principal part (hence also of the past tense) is a weak vowel.

**Pres.:** 'ahmarr, tihmarr/yihmarrī, yihmarr/tihmarr; 

nishmarr, tihmarrū, yihmarrū I go red, blush (etc.)

so also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isfarr yisfarr</td>
<td>to go yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ikhdārr yikhdārr</td>
<td>to go green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibyadd yibyadd</td>
<td>to blanch, go white</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperatives:** mumharr (etc.), lā tihmarr (etc.)

**Active participle:** mumharr  **Verbal noun:** ihmirrā

Form IX cannot have a direct object and has no passive participle.

5. Verbs of Form X

Form X has many useful verbs, made on the following models:

- **Sound:** istāmal yistāmil to use
- **Initial-w:** istawrad yistawrad to import
- **Hollow:** istarāḍ yistarāḍ to rest
• Doubled: istahaqq yistahaqq to deserve
• Final-weak: istathna yistathnī to except

Some students find that Form X is most easily formed by reference to the structure of Form IV (11/6-8, 10). Take the pattern of the appropriate verb class in Form IV and change it as follows to give Form X:

• Principal parts:
  IV ʿa-, yu-/yi- → X ista-, yista- respectively
  IV ʿaw-, yū- → X istaw-, yistaw- respectively

• Imperative (see paragraph 6 below):
  IV ʿa-, ʿaw- → X ista-, istaw- respectively
  IV là tu-, là ti-, là t-; là ta → X là tista-
  IV là tū- → X là tistaw-

• Participles (see paragraph 7 below):
  IV mi-, mū- → X musta-, mustaw- respectively

• Verbal noun (see paragraph 8 below):
  IV 'i-, 'ī- → X isti-, istī- respectively

One essential difference, however, between Forms IV and X is that while the first principal part of IV begins with hamza, that of Form X begins with weak ī-. Form X has two main additional meanings:

• causative, or seeking to achieve the result implied in the root:
  ista'9mal yista'9mil to use (to put something to work)
  ista'dhan yista'dhin to ask permission

• ascribing a quality to a thing or person:
  istaḥsan yistaḥsin to consider (a person/thing) good

Many have a person or thing as direct object.

Sound: Root 9 m l, ista'9mal yista'9mil to use:

Past:  ista'9mal; ista'9mal/ista'9malt, ista'9mal/ista'9malat;
      ista'9malna, ista'9malū, ista'9malū

Pres:  'ista'9mil; ista'9mil/ista'9milī, yista'9mil/ista'9mil;
      nista'9mil, tista'9milū, yista'9milū

so also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikstakhdam yistakhdim</td>
<td>to employ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaghraq yistaghriq</td>
<td>to last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istabdhar yistabdhir</td>
<td>to summon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaqbal yistaqbil</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istankar yistikir</td>
<td>to reject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istathmar yistathmir</td>
<td>to invest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥsan yistaḥsin</td>
<td>to consider good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ista'9lam yista'9lim 9an</td>
<td>to enquire of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaghrab yistaghrib min</td>
<td>to be astonished at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaghfār yistaghfīr min</td>
<td>to apologise for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istakbar yistakbir</td>
<td>to consider great; to be arrogant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥlam yistaḥlim 9an</td>
<td>to enquire about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istabdal yistabdil</td>
<td>to exchange, substitute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ista'dhan yista'dhin</td>
<td>to ask permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ista'9naf yista'9nif</td>
<td>to resume</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 14

Istā’ījār yistājīr to rent (as tenant) and many others.

Initial-

Root w r d, istawrad yistawrid to import:

Past: istawradt, istawradt/istawradt, istawrad/istawradat; istawradh, istawradhī, istawradū

Pres.: *astawrid, tistawrid/tistawrid, yistawrid/tistawrid; nistawrid, tistawridū, yistawridū

so also:

istawṣaf yistawṣif to consult (a doctor)

istawṭan yistawṭin to settle (in a place)

Hollow: The hollow verb rule (6/4) applies.

Root r w h, istarah yistarih to rest:

Past: istarah t, istarah t/istarah tī, istarah/istarahū

Pres.: 'astarahī, tistarīhī/yistarīhū; nistarīhī, yistarīhū

so also:

istafād yistafādīn to benefit from

yistarījīb to grant a request

The last cited root (j w b) has a variant with stable middle root letter:

Root h q q, istahqāq yistahqiq to deserve:

Past: istahqaaqīt, istahqaaqīt/istahqaaqītī, istahqaaqū/istahqaaqūtī

Pres.: *astahqiqīb, tistahqiqīb/yistahqiqīb; nistahqiqū, yistahqiqū

so also:

istaaqqall yistaaqqallīl to be independent; to consider small

istaaqmul yistaaqmulī to be ready

istamarr yistamirr fī 9ala to continue with

istamarr yistamirrī to interrogate

He continued to interrogate me.

Final-weak: Root th n y, istathna yistathnī to except:

Past: istathnayt, istathnayt/istathnaytī, istathnayt/istathnaytū

Pres.: *astathnīb, nistathnīb/yistathnīb; nistathnū, yistathnū

so also: istaghnna yistaghnīl 9un to do without

One important Form X final-weak verb is anomalous, with doubled middle root letter and final -a in the present tense:

istanna yistannaīl to wait for

6. Imperative of Form X

Derive Form X imperatives as for Forms VII and VIII, or by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above):

istaqmil/istaqmilīl/istaqmilū lā tistarīhī/lā tistarīhī/lā tistarīhū
7. Participles of Form X

Derive Form X participles as for Forms VII and VIII:
- Active: replace the initial yi- of the second principal part with mu-,
- Passive: replace the initial i- of the first principal part with mu-,

– or derive by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mustāmil</td>
<td>user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustakhdam</td>
<td>employer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustsabsan</td>
<td>approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustaqbīl</td>
<td>(radio, TV) receiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustathmir</td>
<td>beneficiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustawrid</td>
<td>importer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustawṣaf</td>
<td>clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustarīḥ</td>
<td>restful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustashār</td>
<td>counsellor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustāḥiqq</td>
<td>deserving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustashāda</td>
<td>ready for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustathna</td>
<td>excepted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mustāmil</td>
<td>user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustakhdam</td>
<td>employed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustsabsan</td>
<td>objectionable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustaqbīl</td>
<td>future (adj./noun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustathmir</td>
<td>tenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustawrid</td>
<td>imported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustawṣaf</td>
<td>native</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustarīḥ</td>
<td>lavatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustashār</td>
<td>responsive to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustāḥiqq</td>
<td>independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustashāda</td>
<td>continuous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Verbal nouns of Form X

Models for verbal nouns (plurals are sound):
- Sound: istiṣmāl use, utilisation
- Initial-w: istīrād import(ation)
- Hollow: istīrāḥa rest
- Doubled: istīḥqāq merit
- Final-weak: istīthnā‘ exception

– or derive by comparison with Form IV (para. 5 above).

You will also notice that the sound, doubled and final-weak verbal noun patterns are similar to those of Forms VII and VIII.

Other examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>istikhdām</td>
<td>employment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istithmar</td>
<td>investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istighrāb</td>
<td>astonishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isti‘jār</td>
<td>tenancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiqwāb</td>
<td>interrogation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istimrār</td>
<td>continuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiqbāl</td>
<td>reception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istībdāl</td>
<td>substitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istinḵār</td>
<td>rejection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isti‘nāf</td>
<td>resumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istīqlāl</td>
<td>independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istī9dād</td>
<td>readiness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. li ‘ann-

When li ‘ann- because is followed by a pronoun, that pronoun is suffixed to it. When no pronoun follows it, it becomes li ‘annu:

'aṣtahiqq al-‘idāfa li ‘annī shtaghalt daraja ‘īla I deserve the increase
because I have worked well (first class).
ruht wara t-tābīb li ‘annu ‘ummī kānah marīda I went for (after) the doctor
because my mother was ill.

10. -able (etc.)
The sound adjective gābil li, followed by a definite verbal noun, expresses the
meaning of English -able, -ible (etc.). It is negated with ghayr:

- renewable: qābil li l-ghasīl
- unremarkable: qābil li l-īhtimām
- extensible (maddad II to extend): qābil li l-tamādīd

11. jumal mithāliya

He came to the office wearing a summer suit, in this weather!

Whoever treats people in this manner does not deserve the respect of others.

The correct use of the educated spoken language is the mark of a person who understands the essentials of Arabic.

We shouldn’t forgo his cooperation in the future; that was our mistake in the beginning.

All the independent and progressive nations of the world will reject such a measure.

12. at-tamārin

1. Give the active and passive participles, m. sing., of each verb:
   e.g.: istaqqabl – mustaqbil, mustaqbal
   (a) fihim
   (b) istawrad
   (c) ihtāj
   (d) ’arsal
   (e) istarāḥ

2. Give the verbal noun of each verb in Ex. 1:
   e.g.: istaqbal – istiqbāl

3. Give the first person singular, and the third person plural, of the past tense of each verb:
   e.g.: istashār – istushart, istashārū
   (a) istaghna
   (b) inhāll
   (c) nuisī
   (d) istajwāb
   (e) istaḥaqq

4. Rephrase each sentence, beginning it with mish lāzim:
   e.g.: ’ana staghnayt ’an musā9adatu. – mish lāzim āstaghnhī ’ān musā9adatu.
   (a) istashārū mutakhassīṣ fī hal-mouḏūf9.
   (b) ista9malat ’ibāra mish kwāyyisa,
   (c) huwa dāyimān musta9idī yit9āwan.
   (d) istannaytnī khārīj al-bayt.
   (e) jaddadu 9ala ḥul.
5. Put into the present tense:
e.g.: ista'nalná – nista'nilu.
(a) inqāl 'innu marfūd.
(b) inḥallat al-mushkila.
(c) istabdalt shī fī l-makīna?
(d) nisū u mā dafa9u l-hisāb.

6. Collect together words of the same root:
e.g.: jawāb, qabl, yijāwbū, istiqbāl, muqābila
   – jawāb, yijāwbū, qabl, istiqbāl, muqābila
yi9malū, istithnā'īya, 9ulūm, isti9mal, 9ilmī, thānawīya, ma9lūm, mu9āmala, nista'nil, ihnahayn
(a) thintayn ...
(b) ta9lim ...
(c) 9imil ...
ad-dars khamst9ashrāi Lesson 15
al-'akhbār i The News

1. al-'akhbār

NB: This text introduces the written language read on television and the radio. Written forms are *underlined* in the vocabulary.

- *nashra* bulletin, publication
- *rådiyo* radio
- *'awjaz yūjiz IV* to summarise
- *mūjaz* summary
- *naba' 'anbā'* information, (pl.) news
- *yawm* twelfth

(Let us hear a short piece of the news bulletin on the radio.)

(Ladies and gentlemen, we bring you now a news summary for today, the twelfth of October.)

- *salām* peace
- *'a9lan yi9lin IV* to announce
- *9aqad ya9qid I, 9aqd* to tie;
- *9aqadahu* to hold (a conference etc.)
- *9āsima 9awāsim* capital (city)

Concerning the peace conference in the Middle East, the Foreign Minister announced yesterday at a press conference which he held in the capital,

- *'anna* = *inn* to negotiate
- *fāwad III* = *bayn* side
- *bayna* = *mā* (negative)
- *jānīb jawānīb* = *yit9allaq*
- *lā* that the resumption of negotiations between both sides
- *yata9allaq* depends not only on the two participants,

that but, but rather

- *bal* = *mawqif min* attitude towards
- *mawqif min* Israel

but also on the attitude of the

- *'isrā'īl* western countries towards the

- *bal yata9allaq 'aydān bi mawqif* ad-duwal al-gharbiya min siyāsat

bi khusūṣ al-mu'tāmar li s-salām
fi sh-sharq al-'awsāṭ 'a9lan wazīr
al-khārijīya 'ams fl mu'tāmar šaljufl
9aqadahu bi l-9āsima,

= bayna l-jānībayn lā yata9allaq bi l-mushtarikayn faqat,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/Phrase</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'isrā’īl.</td>
<td>policy of Israel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hādha, wa</td>
<td>furthermore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9ābbar II 9an</td>
<td>to express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'āmal bi 'āmal bi</td>
<td>hope (noun) for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9āhabb yihibb IV</td>
<td>ḥabīb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa tata9āwan</td>
<td>rāḥit9āwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hādhihi</td>
<td>ḥādhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hādha, wa 9ābbar al-wazīr 9an</td>
<td>Furthermore, the minister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-'amal bi 'anna jamā'ī 9 ad-duwal</td>
<td>expressed the hope that all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-muhḥbbā li s-salām sa tata9āwan</td>
<td>peace-loving nations would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fī ḥādhihi l-mas'ala.</td>
<td>cooperate in this matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ukkid</td>
<td>It was confirmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maṣdar maṣādir</td>
<td>source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa tabda’</td>
<td>= rāḥit9āda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa 'ukkid min maṣdar qābil li l-iḥtimād</td>
<td>It was confirmed from a reliable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'anna l-muṣfaḍāt sa tabda’ marra</td>
<td>source that the negotiations will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ukhra fī 'awākhir al-'usbā9 'inshalla.</td>
<td>hopefully restart towards the end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mā zāl lā yazāl</td>
<td>of the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūḥāwalāṭīha</td>
<td>not to stop, to continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min 'ajl</td>
<td>= mūḥāwalāṭ-ḥa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allātī</td>
<td>for (the sake of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lā yumkin</td>
<td>= ʾillī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'an</td>
<td>= mā yumkin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tubālāgh</td>
<td>= 'in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ahammiyya</td>
<td>it is exaggerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ahammiyyatuhu</td>
<td>importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kullīhi</td>
<td>= ʾahammiyyat-ḥa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wa mā zālāt al-ḥukūma mūḥāwalāṭīha</td>
<td>their importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min 'ajl isti'nāf ḥādhihi l-muṣfaḍāt</td>
<td>= kullu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allātī lā yumkin 'an tubālāgh</td>
<td>The government is continuing its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ahammiyyatuhu lī s-salām al-9ālam</td>
<td>attempts to get these negotiations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kullīhi.</td>
<td>resumed, whose importance for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aqād yufīd IV bi</td>
<td>the peace of the whole world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warad yūrid I</td>
<td>cannot be overstated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥadath yahdath I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khilāla l-yawmayn al-mādiyyān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tufīd al-'anbā' al-wārida min 'afāqīya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-janābiyya 'anna l-iḍṭirābāt allātī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥadrath khilāla l-yawmayn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-mādiyyān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabbab II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
khasʿír
-balāgh yiblagh I
-tablagh

qad sabbabat khasʿír tablagh ʿakthar
min malyūn doulār.
fi khilāl
ḥāditha ḥawādith
qutil
9indama
ʿaṭlaq yīlaq IV an-nār
ḥashd ḥashūd

wa fi khilāl ḥādhihi l-ḥawādith qutil
ithn9ashr shakhsh 9indama ʿaṭlaq
an-nār al-būlis 9ala l-ḥashd.

In the course of these events, twelve people were killed when
the police opened fire on the crowd.

2. 9ibārāt musta9mala fi l-ʿidhā9a
ʿilaykum al-ʿān (We bring) to you now. An ellipsis used in broadcasting,
hādha, wa ... Furthermore ... hādha refers to the previous passage.
dawla/duwal muḥibba li s-salām peace-loving nation(s) (states)
masdar gābil/masādir gābila li l-9timād reliable source(s)
tufid al-ʿanbāʾ bi ʿaṭlaq yīlaq IB the news benefits (us) with It is reported ...

3. mufradāt ʿidāfiya. as-siyāsa wa l-9alāqiya ad-duwalīya
– Politics and international relations
(hayʿat) al-ʿumam al-muttāḥa United Nations (Organisation)
al-wilāyāt al-muttāхиda United States (of America)
al-ittihād al-ʿarabī European Union
as-sūq al-ʿurabbiya l-mushāraka Common Market
jamīʿat ad-duwal al-9arabiyya League of Arab States
al-bank ad-duwalī World Bank
ṣanūdīq an-naqd ad-duwalī International Monetary Fund
al-ittihād as-sufiyāt (s-sūbiq) (the former) Soviet Union
as-ṣīn ash-sha9bī People’s Republic of China
al-9alām th-ḥālith third world
dawla nāmiya developing country
dawla sināʾīyya industrialised country
dawla kubra superpower
maslaha masālīh (legal/political) interest
rūsiyya Russia
sulta authority
ḥukm dhāṭi autonomy
hayʿa corps, body, group
mandāb (also:) commissioner
9udh ʿa9dāʾ member
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hizb 'azhāb</td>
<td>(political) party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu'ārada</td>
<td>opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majlis majālis</td>
<td>council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malik mulūk</td>
<td>king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamlıka mamālik</td>
<td>kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'amīr 'umarā'</td>
<td>prince, emir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'imāra</td>
<td>principality, emirate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dustūr dasāṭūr</td>
<td>constitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumhūrīya</td>
<td>republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumhūrī</td>
<td>republican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ra'is (al-jumhūrīya)</td>
<td>President (of the Republic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ra'is al-wuzarā'</td>
<td>Prime Minister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majlis al-wuzarā'</td>
<td>cabinet (of ministers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāıb nuwwāb</td>
<td>deputy, member of lower house of Parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaykh shuyūkh</td>
<td>(also:) senator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'amīn 9āmm</td>
<td>secretary-general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majlis an-nuwwāb/ash-shuyūkh</td>
<td>lower/upper house of Parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātiq(a) bi lisān</td>
<td>spokesman/-woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qādiya qadāya</td>
<td>cause, case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ittīfāq</td>
<td>(spoken) agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ittīfāqīya</td>
<td>(written) agreement, treaty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thawra</td>
<td>revolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inqilāb</td>
<td>coup d'état</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḫarb hurāb (f.)</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'irhāb</td>
<td>terrorism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuyūrī</td>
<td>communist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥālūnī</td>
<td>Zionist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamyīz 9unsūrī</td>
<td>racial discrimination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9unsūrīya</td>
<td>racism, racialism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**an-nahīs**

4. Broadcasting
Broadcast news is read in written Arabic. We study in paragraphs 5 to 12 below those elements of written usage which will help you to follow the news.

5. Passive
See 12/4. Written Arabic has passive tenses as well as active tenses. For the news, we need to be able to recognise only the third persons singular and plural (animate and inanimate). The passive tenses differ from the active tenses only in their vowels. In general, the passive pattern is *u-i* for the past tense and *u-a* for the present tense, with variations for weak (initial-*w*, hollow, final-weak) and for doubled root letters. Examples (meaning *he/it was/is ...* m. sing.):

I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiḥim yuṣlam</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wajid yuḥjad</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudd yu'madd</td>
<td>extended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9ullim yu9allam</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'akhīdh yu'khadh</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīq yusāq</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūmīya yurma</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmniya yusamma</td>
<td>named</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 15

III kātib yuƙātab  written to  wūfiq yuƙuwaƙaƙ  agree
hūwil yuƙāwal  attempted  nūdiya yuƙūdaƙ  summoned
IV 'ursil yursal  sent  'urdi yurūd  wanted
'unshi 'yunsuha'  constructed
V tudhukkir yutadhaƙkar  remembered  turuddid yutaraddad*  hesitated
VI tubuƙgir yutabuƙdal  exchanged  tumūwil yutanūwal  consumed
VIII u9tābir yu9tābar  considered  uttūƙhidh yuttāƙhadh  taken
uhtīj yuhtīj*  needed  uhtuƙuƙi yuƙuƙial  occupied
ushtūriya yushtāra bought
(NB: Present-tense stress also irregular in this verb)
X ustukhdim yustakhdum employed  ustufid yustafād*  benefited
ustuqill yustaqall  considered small  ustūthniya yustathna  excepted
* For verbs which take no direct object, the meaning is impersonal: turuddid dīnere was hesitation yuhtīj  'ilā dīnere is need of The impersonal passive always stands in the masc. sing. form.

6. Two common and easy impersonal expressions with passive meaning can be constructed using an active verb plus a definite verbal noun.

tamm/tammat I in the past tense, dī was completed plus a definite verbal noun (which may be one in construct) gives a completed passive meaning in past time:
tamm baƙūl al-moudū9. The matter was/has been discussed.
tammat dirāsat al-moudū9. The matter was/has been studied.
jaral yijri (jaral yajrī in written pronunciation) dū flowō in the past or present tense, plus a definite verbal noun (which may be one in construct) gives a passive meaning relating to an ongoing action or situation, past or present as appropriate:
tijrī/mijrī muƙuƙawdat aƙ-ƙalaƙ. The demand is being negotiated.
jarat dirāsat al-mawdū9 al-moudū9 mūdda ƙawila. The matter was (being) studied at length.
The verbal noun can also be from a verb with no direct object:
tamm al-wusūl 'ilā l-ittifāq ƙallal ḫuswords Agreement was reached on prices.
Do not interpret the opening verb too literally in this construction.

7. Written verb prefixes and endings, active voice.

In the written active voice the present-tense personal prefixes of all forms, I to X, and the prefix of Forms V, VI and IQ in both tenses, all have a vowel (i.e. they form a syllable). This vowel is u for the present-tense prefixes of Forms II, III, IV and IQ; and a everywhere else, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal prefixes, present tense</th>
<th>Forms II, III, IV, IQ: 'u-, tu-, yu-, nu-</th>
<th>Forms I, V-X, IQ: 'a-, ta-, ya-, na-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prefix of Forms V, VI and IQ (both tenses):</td>
<td>tā-</td>
<td>tā-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, verb forms with a sound final root letter often have a further short vowel. This vowel is usually dropped in pronunciation when the verb carries no object-pronoun suffix; but when there is such a suffix, the vowel is retained. The vowel is always -a- or -u-:
katab  he wrote  but:  katabahu  he wrote it
Do not let the presence of this vowel (or the unfamiliar form of the pronoun suffix) confuse you.

8. Diphthongs
The pronunciation of the written language has aw for spoken ou: yawm (for youm).

9. Written sentence structure
In written Arabic the verb often precedes its subject; this structure is called a verbal sentence. In such a sentence, when the subject is a noun, the verb is always in the singular, even if the subject is plural:

'ā9lan al-wazīr/al-wazārī 'annā ... dakhālat al-mu9allīmāt aṣ-ṣaff.

When the subject precedes the verb, the sentence is known as a nominal sentence, and the verb agrees normally with its subject. A nominal sentence may begin with the conjunction 'innā, which adds no meaning. If the subject is a pronoun, it is suffixed to 'innā:

al wazīr ('innā l-wazīr) 'a9lan 'annā ... ('innahum) qālu l-yawm ...

al-hikāya ('innā l-hikāya) ṣawūla.

10. Negative
In written Arabic, the negative of the present tense is formed with lā. mā is used only for the past tense:

lā yata9allaq bi d-duwal an-nāmiya faqat.

mā ta9allaq bi wad ad-duwal an-nāmiya.

But note the use of lā with the past tense to express a negative wish (in both written and spoken Arabic):

lā samah 'alla God/Heaven forbid.

11. qad
The verbal particle qad may be used to reinforce a past tense in written Arabic. It adds no other meaning:

al-idtīrahāt (qad) 'antajat khasā 'ir tablagh ...

12. Written future
Written Arabic does not use rāviḥ/rāḥ. The written future has the particle sawfa or sa before the present tense:

sawfa/sa tastaghriq az-ziyāra yawmayn. The visit will last two days.

13. mā zāl
Note the Form I hollow verb zāl yazāl do cease following the pattern of nām yinām but with -a- in the present prefixes:

Past: zāl, zilt/zilti, zāl/zālat; zilna, ziltū, zālū
Pres.: 'azāl, tazāl/tazālī, yazāl/yazāl; nazāl, tazālū, yazālū

Its main use is in the negative, as an auxiliary meaning do continue The written negative particle is always used, even in unscripted speech:
They are still trying to get the conference resumed.

They are still asking for your help.

We continued to benefit from his cooperation.

The are/were still living in Beirut.

14. Verb forms

The ten forms of the triliteral verb merit recapitulation. Here are the models again (first principal part, sound class only), with comments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form, model</th>
<th>Meaning, use</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I katab</td>
<td>basic; with or without direct object</td>
<td>very high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II haḍdar</td>
<td>causative or intensive of I; with direct object</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III kātab</td>
<td>= I but with person direct object</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV 'arsal</td>
<td>causative of I, with direct object</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V taqaddam</td>
<td>passive or reflexive of I; mostly with no direct object</td>
<td>very high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI takātab</td>
<td>reciprocal of I, II or III; mostly with no direct object</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII insāhab</td>
<td>passive of I; no direct object</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII iqtārah</td>
<td>no additional meaning; direct object</td>
<td>very high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX iḥmarr</td>
<td>colours, physical defects; no direct object</td>
<td>very low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X ista9mal</td>
<td>seeking or causing action or state of I; ascribing a quality to something/someone; with or without direct object</td>
<td>very high</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. jumal mithālīya

waṣal (= wsiṭil) al-yawm šabāḥan fi Damascus from Cairo on an official visit lasting two days.

It has been learned from a government source that the purpose of this visit has to do with the question of refugees in the region.

The question of world terrorism concerns us greatly, and needs the cooperation of all peace-loving countries.

This morning, the Egyptian Foreign Minister arrived in Damascus on an official visit lasting two days.

It has been learned from a government source that the purpose of this visit has to do with the question of refugees in the region.

No lasting solution of the problems in the Middle East
hall qaṭiyat al-filastinîyîn. will be found without a solution to the case of the Palestinians.

‘inn al-9alâqâ bayna d-duwal an-nâmîya Relations between the developing countries and the industrial-
wa d-duwal âş-şinâfîya hiya l-mushkila ised countries are the central
l-markâzîya llâfî ‘amâmana (= ‘amâmana).

kayfa (= kayf) yumkin ‘an nufâwid mithla How is it possible for us to nego-
(= mithl) hâdhîhi l-ittifâqîya wa mä zîna tiate this sort of convention
nabâhîth siyaṣatana (= siyaṣîna)
d-dâkhillîya?

16. at-tamârîn

1. Give the active voice, in spoken Arabic, of each passive verb:
e.g.: ‘ursil – ‘arsal
   (a) yusta9mal
   (b) ustu9milat
   (c) yûjad
   (d) uňtíj ‘îla
   (e) yustaghna 9an

2. Re-express in spoken form:
e.g.: ‘inna l-wazîr 9arbar 9an fikrathihi fi l-mu’tâmar. – al-wazîr 9arbar 9an fikritu fi l-mu’tâmar.
   (a) qâl as-sufarî ‘inna l-mushkila mu9aqqada.
   (b) kutibat risâla tuhimmuna jamî’9ana.
   (c) mä hiya l-mas’ala llâfî dhakaraha?
   (d) sa ‘aktub al-jawb l-‘ân.

3. For each of these verbal derivatives, give the principal parts and the form (I-X) of the original verb:
e.g.: isti9mâl – ista9mal yista9mil X
   (a) qawlna
   (b) muntakhibîn
   (c) ‘inshâ’u
   (d) tâbîtaytu
   (e) tâfâhum

4. Complete the sentence with the right preposition:
e.g.: kull shî yitwaqqaf ...hum. – kull shî yitwaqqaf 9alayhum.
   (a) mâ najâhû, ‘aftâkir, ... 9adam at-tâhadîr.
   (b) mâ fi 9indu ‘ayy i9timâd ... nafsu.
   (c) at-tâfâhum ...I u ...ak darîr.
   (d) shû tîfâkir ... hâdha?
Part II

Written Arabic
الмагرب
شبه الجزيرة العربية
المغرب
المصر
ليبيا
تونس
الجزائر
العالم العربي
الفرات
النيل
البحر الأبيض المتوسط
المجلة العربية
المجلة العربية
الدرس السادس عشر
ad-dars as-sādis 9ashar i Lesson 16
القراءة والكتابة
al-qirā’a wa l-kitāba ï Reading and Writing

1. Certain important principles first:
   • Arabic writing runs from right to left ←←.
   • Many letters (‘joined letters’) are joined to the letter following them in the same word. Most such letters have different forms for different positions in the word. A few letters (‘disjoined letters’) are never joined to the left, i.e. to a following letter. They have only one form.
   • Short vowels are normally not written. There is a means of marking them, but it is rarely used.

2. We use the following terms to refer to the different forms of a joined letter:
   • ‘initial’ form, i.e. either beginning a word, or after a letter not joined to its left,
   • ‘medial’ form, i.e. joined on both sides,
   • ‘final’ form, i.e. ending the word and joined to the preceding letter,
   • ‘isolated’ form, i.e. standing alone; for all but a few letters this is identical to the final form.

3. 

   \[
   \begin{array}{c|c}
   \hline
   \text{a, ‘a} & \text| \\
   \text{u, ‘u} & \text| \\
   \text{i, ‘i} & \text| \\
   \hline
   \end{array}
   \]

   This letter, called ‘alif, is disjoined, i.e. it is not joined to the following letter. It rests on the line of writing. When isolated or initial it is written downwards, thus: ↓. Write a whole line, starting at the right of the page:

   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓
   ↓

   Beginning a word, ‘alif indicates any weak short vowel, or hamza plus a short vowel.

4. 

   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \hline
   \text{‘ū} \\
   \hline
   \end{array}
   \]
hamza plus long vowel ā beginning a word is expressed with the combination called 'alif madda. 'alif madda is disjoined, like 'alif. Write a line:

The consonant b is expressed with the letter bā‘, which is a joined letter (i.e. joined to the following letter in the same word). It has a short initial/medial form ب and a full isolated/final form ب. bā‘ rests on the line of writing. Write:←

We can now write the words 'ab and 'āb:

Medial 'alif almost always expresses ā. Final 'alif also in theory expresses ā, but in practice final ā is almost always pronounced short: a (see Pronunciation, paragraph 2).

Whereas initial or isolated ‘alif is written downwards, medial or final ‘alif is struck upwards from its junction with the preceding letter. Now write:

Always write your words; do not trace or draw them. Avoid retouching a badly written word at this stage; rewrite it rather.

The joined letters tā‘ and thā‘ (sounds t and th) are written in a manner identical to bā‘ except for their dots. bā‘, tā‘ and thā‘ are ‘toothed’ letters; the initial/medial form بدون dot(s) is 'toothless'. The forms given above are as in print. In handwriting, two dots are often written like a hyphen (‘-‘) and three like a circumflex accent (‘^‘). Write:

We can now write thābit (long ā written, short i not written):
LESSON 16

9.

The sound \( \ddot{\text{n}} \) is written with the joined letter \( \ddot{\text{nu}} \). Initial/medial \( \ddot{\text{n}} \) is a toothed letter, normally resting on the line of writing; isolated/final \( \ddot{\text{n}} \) is deeper than \( \ddot{\text{b}} \) etc., and when joined it swoops below the line of writing and up again. In rapid handwriting, the dot of isolated/final \( \ddot{\text{n}} \) often becomes a small hook:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{print} & \text{handwriting} \\
\end{array}
\]

Write both isolated/final forms:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{nn} \quad \text{nn} \quad \text{nn} \quad \text{nn} \quad \text{nn} \quad \text{nn} \\
\end{array}
\]

We can now write a few other words. Wherever the written pronunciation or the choice of word differs from the spoken, we show the latter in angular quotation marks \( \langle \rangle \). Read and write:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\'ana} & \text{\'anta}, \text{\'ant} \langle \text{\'int, \text{\'inti} \rangle} \\
\text{bint} & \text{\'ibn \langle \text{\'ibn} \rangle} \\
\text{\'ath\'ath} & \text{\'athbar \ he \ proved} \\
\text{\'athbatna} & \text{nuthbit \ we \ prove} \\
\end{array}
\]

The initial \( \text{\'alif} \) written in some of these words is not itself a short vowel; it provides a ‘seat’ for the unwritten short vowel. Words beginning with a vowel of any kind, or with \( \text{hamza} \), must begin with \( \text{\'alif} \) in writing. Initial \( \text{hamza} \) can be added (we learn it below), but it is usually left unwritten.

10.

The joined letter called \( \text{\'a}\) represents:

- beginning the word (short form, \( \ddot{\text{y}} \)): the consonant \( \text{\'y} \),
- in the middle of the word (short form, \( \ddot{\text{y}} \)): the consonant \( \text{\'y} \), the long vowel \( \ddot{\text{i}} \) or the diphthong \( \text{\'ay} \),
- at the end of the word (full form, \( \text{\ddot{y}} \)): \( \ddot{\text{i}} \) or \( \text{\'ay} \),
- after \( \text{\'alif} \) \( \ddot{\text{y}} \) at the beginning of a word: \( \ddot{\text{i}} \) or \( \text{\'ay} \).
The short form is a toothed letter. The full form swoops below the line of writing and up again. Write:

In the combination of initial tooth + full-form yā', the tooth stands above the yā', the junction becomes an acute angle, and the yā' loses its first bend. Write:

Read and write:

11. The sound l is expressed with the joined letter lām. This letter has the same height as 'alif. Its short form rests on the line, while its full form swoops slightly below.

Despite first appearances, lām is never confused with 'alif because one is joined and the other is not. Write:

Read and write:

12. The article is always written with lām, no matter how pronounced. Read and write:

13. The combination lām-'alif is written in special ways both in print and in handwriting. When writing by hand, detach the 'alif and strike it downwards, either vertically to the foot of the lām or diagonally towards its angle. Examine the forms:
Lesson 16

- when not joined to the previous letter:
  - printed لا
  - handwritten ﻻ
- when joined to the previous letter:
  - printed لا
  - handwritten ﻻ

Read and write:
لا
ثلاثين ﻻ ﻻ
thalathin

The combination [ل] is never found in correctly written Arabic.

14. 

Hamza has only one form, and it is never joined to anything. Write:
ﺀ ﺀ ﺀ ﺀ ﺀ ﺀ ﺀ

Beginning a word it is written above or below 'alif, so:

However, it is usually left unwritten at the beginning of a word. Hamza is never written together with ٍ 'alif madda.

15. When a word beginning with hamza receives a prefix, the hamza ceases to be initial, and must therefore be written. Read and write:
الاثاث ﻷلابل
al-'ath al-'ibil

16. Note how certain sound plural and dual endings are written:
-ят، -يأyt

Read and write:
بنات بنات ﻷن ﻷن
lubnaniyat baytayn

Do not attempt yet to write the f. sing./inan. pl. endings -iya, -iya. These endings have a different spelling, which we study later.

17. Words consisting of one letter are always written as one with the next word, the spelling of which is usually unchanged, except that any unwritten hamza
must now be added (paragraph 15 above). Initial 'alif of the second word, or its article, is retained. Read and write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bi-'anābīb</td>
<td>بالبيت بالـأBeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi l-bayt</td>
<td>لإلي</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi l-'athāh</td>
<td>ببنين</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi bnī</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi 'athāthina ( athāthna)</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi bayt</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi l-'ibil</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi l-bayt ath-thālīth</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly, 'alif madda keeps its madda after the article and after an attached one-letter word. Read and write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-'ān</td>
<td>الـأBeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18. After li, exceptionally, the article (but not the word) loses its 'alif. This is the only such exception. Read and write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>li 'anābīb</td>
<td>النبيت لبيت</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li l-bayt</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li l-'athāh</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li bnī</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li l-'ibil</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li bayt</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li l-bayt ath-thālīth</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. Two successive identical consonants with an intervening vowel are both written. But doubled consonants (i.e. two successive identical consonants with no intervening vowel) are written single. Read and write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'anna (‘inn)</td>
<td>ين اBeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li 'anī</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li 'anī</td>
<td>لليس</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi 'anna (bi ‘inn)</td>
<td>ببنين</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunn</td>
<td>عين</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunn</td>
<td>عين</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>لثليل</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>لثليل</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>لثليل</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three important exceptions:

- initial lām is retained after the article:
  
  al-laban milk (written), yoghurt (spoken)

- two letters yak for yi, yay, lý, ýay:
  
  lubnāniyin/-īyayn
  libīyin/-īyayn

- no more than two identical consecutive letters are written, even if logic demands more: 
  
  li l-laban.
20. 

The sound \( m \) is expressed with the joined letter \( mīm \). The bead of this letter rests on the line of writing; the tail of the full form extends straight down.

The initial and isolated forms of \( mīm \) are written either anticlockwise \( \text{↺} \) or clockwise \( \text{↻} \); the medial and final forms are best written anticlockwise \( \text{↺} \). Write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{mīm} & \quad \text{mīm} \\
\text{mīm} & \quad \text{mīm}
\end{align*}
\]

In other words, when joined to the preceding letter, \( m\) is best approached from the top. This gives special combinations in handwriting, and sometimes in better print. Examine:

- tooth + \( m \)
- middle tooth* + \( m \)
- \( lm \)
- \( mm \)

* i.e. a tooth preceded by any joined letter.

Read and write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{māl} \quad \text{property} & \quad \text{man} \; \text{mīn}, \text{min} \\
\text{mīmmān} \; \text{min} \; \text{mīn} & \quad \text{mā} \\
\text{mumaththal/mumathhil} & \quad \text{bi} \; \text{mā} \\
\text{tīmthāl} & \quad \text{lamma}, \text{li} \; \text{mā} \\
\text{thāman} & \quad \text{'antum} \; \text{‘intū} \\
\text{thāmīn} & \quad \text{tamm} \\
\text{tamām} & \quad \text{li} \; \text{man} \; \text{li} \; \text{mīn} \\
\text{'amāmāna} \; \text{‘amānna} & \\
\text{ta‘mīm} \; \text{nationalisation}
\end{align*}
\]

21. 

The disjoined letter \( wāw \) represents:

- beginning the word: the consonant \( w \),
in the middle or at the end of the word: the consonant \( w \), the long vowel \( ū \) or the diphthong \( aw \) (\( ūw \)),
• after ‘alif at the beginning of a word: \( 'ū \) or \( 'aw \) (\( ūw \)).

\( w\)ā\( w\) has only one form. Its ring lies on the line of writing, and its tail curves below. Write:

\[
\text{ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ}
\]

Read and write:

\[
\text{ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ}
\]

Read and write:

\[
\text{ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ \ﻭ}
\]

The sound \( h \) is written with the joined letter \( hā \). In print this letter has one initial form, two medial and two final forms, one of which is also the isolated form. They are used as follows:

• initial form: \( ھ \). This form is also used instead of the isolated form to head a list in e.g. an index or directory.
• medial form: \( ہ \) or \( ھ \). The form \( ہ \) is the commoner of the two in print; in handwriting only \( ھ \) is used.
• final form \( ہ \); isolated form \( ھ \). The form \( ہ \) is very commonly written as \( ھ \). All forms lie on the line of writing, with the exception of the lower parts of \( ہ \) and \( ھ \).

Write:

\[
\text{ﮪ ہ ہ ہ ہ ہ ہ ھ}
\]

Read and write:
LESSON 16

23. Note the special spelling of allāh ('alla/'allāh): الله allāh.

24. A variant of final ḥā', joined or isolated, also expresses the feminine and inanimate plural word-ending -a. In this usage the letter is written with the dots of tāً, and the resulting hybrid letter ﺓ or ﺔ is called tā‘ marbūta bound tā‘ ﺓ In handwriting the two dots are usually omitted for the sound a, and restored when the ending is t in construct. Read and write:

- Thālīthā: تامة tāmma complete
- Ath-thālīthā: الثَّالِثَة al-thālīthā third
- 'Alā: عَلَى 'ālā machine
- Mahamma: مهمّة mahammatuhu
- Mahammat al-ṣibn: مهمّة ابن مهَّمة mahammat ibni l-hāmma

Tā‘ marbūta occurs only finally. Before a possessive suffix or a dual ending we write the t of such words with ت tā‘. The a before the t is kept in written pronunciation. Read and write:

- 'Alātī: عَلَّاتِي 'ālatī among
- Mahammatayn: مهمّة ابن الهامّة mahammatayn

Like -iyāt (paragraph 16 above), -iya and –iya have one yā‘:

- Māliya: ماليّة māliya
- Thānawīya: ثانو́ية thānawīya
168 ARABIC TODAY

ثانية ٥٠٠ٌ

اثنواية

٢٥. التمارين

١. أقرأ بصوت عالٍ:

ب) ابن

(أ) بيت

(ب) ثانية

(ج) مهمل

(د) أثاث

(ه) أثاث

٢. انضم الخمسة الأحرف لصنع كلمة أو حرف. قلها بصوت عالٍ:

ب) لبن

(أ) ماما

(ب) ماما

(ج) ماما

(د) ماما

(ه) ماما

٣. أكتب:

ب) البيت

(أ) ابن

(ب) ماما

(ج) ماما

(د) ماما

(ه) ماما

٤. أكتب حمزة في الأماكن الممكنة:

(أ) لاني

(ب) لاني

(ج) لاني

(د) لاني

(ه) لاني

٥. أكتب حمزة في الأماكن الضرورية:

(أ) لاني

(ب) لاني

(ج) لاني

(د) لاني

(ه) لاني

٦. قميص في البداية، ثم في نهاية كل كلمة:

(أ) ابن

(ب) ماما

(ج) ماما

(د) ماما

(ه) ماما

٧. كتب باللغة العربية:

(أ) بنات

(ب) الأم

(ج) المهمة

(د) المهمة

(ه) المهمة
Lesson 17
Reading and Writing

1.

The joined letters šīn and shīn express the sounds s and sh respectively. The two letters are written identically except for the dots. The letter rests essentially on the line, the extra curve of the full form swooping below and up again, like nūn. The two points are usually ‘ironed out’ in handwriting into a long shallow curve:

The points may be restored for extra clarity. Write each form:

Read and write:

2.

The sounds r and z are expressed with the disjoined letters rā’ and zayy respectively. The letters extend below the line. Write:

In handwriting, a middle tooth, i.e. one joined to a preceding letter, may assume a special form when followed by rā’/zayy, as it does before mim (16/20).

Compare handwritten and printed forms:
teeth + r/z
l + tooth + r/z
m + tooth + r/z
s + tooth + r/z

Read and write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{murūr} & \quad \text{surūr} \quad \text{pleasure} \\
\text{marra} & \quad \text{masrūr} \quad \text{pleased} \\
\text{mustamir} & \quad \text{‘ishāra} \\
\text{‘amtār} & \\
\text{raml} & \quad \text{mursil/mursal} \\
\text{risāla} & \quad \text{ishtarayt} \\
\text{at-tāriya} & \quad \text{zār} \\
\text{ziyāra} & \quad \text{lāzim} \\
\text{zāmil} & \quad \text{wazīr} \\
\text{tamyīz} & \quad \text{zaman (zamān)}
\end{align*}
\]

3. 

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{s} \\
\text{d}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{s} \\
\text{d}
\end{array}
\]

\(s\) and \(d\) are written respectively with the joined letters \(sad\) and \(dād\), identical but for the dot over the loop. The short form has a tooth-like element after the loop; it is always present and should not be omitted. Write:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{s} \\
\text{d}
\end{array}
\]

The quasi-tooth behaves like a middle tooth as described in paragraph 2 above, when followed by \(rā‘/zayy\) or \(mīm\). Read and write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sārat} & \quad \text{ṣirna} \\
\text{sawt} & \quad \text{wuṣūl} \\
\text{darab} & \quad \text{indamm} \\
\text{marīḍ} & \quad \text{marīḍa} \\
\text{muṣammim} & \text{determined}
\end{align*}
\]
LESSON 17

4. hamza

See 16/14. The writing of hamza is somewhat complex. It can be written in four ways:

- above or below 'alif: 
- above wāw: 
- above yā’ without its dots: 
- alone: 

Within this framework, hamza is written in its logical place in the word. Details are given below.

Initial hamza. We studied the writing of hamza as initial sound in 16/14.

5. Medial hamza

hamza as neither initial nor final sound is written:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ﺛ-</td>
<td>ﺭ-</td>
<td>ﻲ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺹ-</td>
<td>ﺩ-</td>
<td>ﻤ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺖ-</td>
<td>ﺗ-</td>
<td>ﻤ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻰ-</td>
<td>ﻰ-</td>
<td>ﻰ-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The form ﺛ- is less common.

Read and write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺃل</td>
<td>sa'al (question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻡ-ﻡ</td>
<td>ma'mūr (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺭ-ﺃ</td>
<td>ra'i (opinion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺅ</td>
<td>su'āl (question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺡ-ﺍ</td>
<td>'as'ila (illegitimate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻷ-ﺀ</td>
<td>zā'in (last)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻲ-ﺀ</td>
<td>'ayn (letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺍ</td>
<td>sa' (double)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺩ-ﺀ</td>
<td>mu'āsiss (founder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺕ-ﺍ</td>
<td>ri'ās (chairmanship)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that hamza never appears with madda (16/14). The glottal stop is already present in madda: ﺍل-ﺍٰn.

6. Final hamza

hamza ending the word is written:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺃل</td>
<td>sa'al (question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻡ-ﻡ</td>
<td>ma'mūr (completed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺭ-ﺃ</td>
<td>ra'i (opinion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺅ</td>
<td>su'āl (question)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺡ-ﺍ</td>
<td>'as'ila (illegitimate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻷ-ﺀ</td>
<td>zā'in (last)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻲ-ﺀ</td>
<td>'ayn (letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺱ-ﺍ</td>
<td>sa' (double)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺩ-ﺀ</td>
<td>mu'āsiss (founder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺕ-ﺍ</td>
<td>ri'ās (chairmanship)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Read and write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ﺍ} & \quad \text{ﺃ} \\
\text{ﺀ} & \quad \text{ﺃ'} \\
\text{ﻭ} & \quad \text{ﻭ'}
\end{align*}
\]

\[+ \text{hamza}\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ﺀ} & \quad \text{ﺃ'} \\
\text{ﺍ} & \quad \text{ﺇ'} \\
\text{ﻱ} & \quad \text{ﻱ'}
\end{align*}
\]

\[= \text{consonant}\]

7. Initial hamza may be omitted in writing. Medial and final hamza are always written.

8.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ﺥ} & \quad \text{ﺝ} \\
\text{ﺡ} & \quad \text{ﺡ} \\
\text{ﺝ} & \quad \text{ﺝ}
\end{align*}
\]

The sounds \(j\), \(h\) and \(kh\) are expressed respectively with the joined letters \(ji'm\), \(ha'\) and \(ka'\), which are identical but for the dot. The short form and the head of the full form rest on the line; the full form has a ‘reverse’ downward swoop. Write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ﺝ} & \quad \text{ﺝ} \\
\text{ﺡ} & \quad \text{ﺡ} \\
\text{ﺥ} & \quad \text{ﺥ}
\end{align*}
\]

In handwriting, and in better print, medial/final \(ji'm\) etc. are joined to the preceding letter from the left-hand corner, i.e. from the beginning of the outline. In typescript, and sometimes in print, they are joined at or near the right-hand corner. Compare (\(ji'm\) only):

- \(lj, mj\)
- \(sj, jj\)

Read and write:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ن} & \quad \text{ن} \\
\text{تا} & \quad \text{تا} \\
\text{ح} & \quad \text{ح}
\end{align*}
\]

\[\text{natijat} \quad \text{natij} \quad \text{result}\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{جملة} & \quad \text{جملة} \\
\text{ج} & \quad \text{ج}
\end{align*}
\]

\[\text{jumla} \quad \text{jumla} \quad \text{sentence}\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{جزء} & \quad \text{جزء} \\
\text{جزاء} & \quad \text{جزاء}
\end{align*}
\]

\[\text{juz} \quad \text{'ajza} \quad \text{part}\]
The disjoined letters ധ and ￄ, identical but for the dot, express the sounds ܣ and 开元棋牌 respectively. These letters rest on the line. Write:

Do not confuse ധ/开元棋牌 and ݕ/ݕ. ݕ is struck downwards, and is joined to the preceding letter at its head. דון/开元棋牌 strikes down and left, and is joined to the preceding letter at its middle or corner. Further, the special handwritten joining of ݕ after a middle tooth (paragraph 2 above) does not apply to 主营业/开元棋牌. Compare (ݕ and 主营业 only):
Read and write:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|}
\hline
r & d \\
\hline
teeth + r & teeth + d \\
\hline
mr & md \\
\hline
sr & sd \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Read and write:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|}
\hline
madd & dakhal \\
\hline
madkhal & ‘idāra \\
\hline
shadīd & jadīd \\
\hline
maydān & maddād \\
\hline
azdawaj & bada‘ (bada’) \\
\hline
yurīd & bidānī (bidūn) \\
\hline
ibtidā’ & ibtidā’ī \\
\hline
‘ustādha & ‘asātīda \\
\hline
tilmūd & talāmūd \\
\hline
itūkhadh & mundhu (mundh) \\
\hline
‘idha & ‘akhadhī (‘akhadhāt) \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Note two important but irregularly written words with this last letter:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hādha} & \quad \text{hādhīhi (hādhi)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

in which long ā in the first syllable is not written with ‘alif.

10.

The sounds \( t \) and \( ð/z \) are written respectively with the letters \( tā’ \) and \( dā’ \) (also called \( zā’ \)), which are identical but for the dot. Although these are joined letters, they have only one form, resting on the line. \( tā’ \) and \( zā’ \) do not have the quasi-tooth after the loop which we find with \( sād/dād \) (paragraph 3 above).

Write the loop first, clockwise, then the upright:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{tā’ira (hayya’ra)} & \quad \text{matār} \\
\text{baṭṭat} & \quad \text{watānī} \\
\text{ash-shurja} & \quad \text{khitāb} \\
\text{talabna} & \quad \text{hatb} \\
\end{align*}
\]
See the chapter on Pronunciation, paragraph 5. The choice of \( \theta \) or \( z \) varies between speakers and between styles. Many favour \( \theta \) in written pronunciation.

11. In the root \( d\ b\ t \), the letter \( d\d \) is pronounced, anomalously, like \( \theta \) in both spoken and written Arabic. Note:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{mazb\u{u}t} & \quad \text{bi } \theta \dash\theta/bi z\dash z \\
\text{dab\u{u}/zab\u{u}} & \quad \text{dab\u{u}/zab\u{u}/dubb\u{u}/zubb\u{u} officer}
\end{align*}
\]

12. 

1. Read aloud:
   e.g.: لا ينتظر \( l\a\ y\r\t\d\r\g \)
   (c) الشرطة
   (a) الزميل
   (b) وصول
   (e) التدخل
   (d) الانتخابات

2. Write as one word. Read it aloud:
   e.g.: مسرورين \( \rightarrow \) مسرورين
   (c) ملابس
   (a) الزيامة
   (b) الضر
   (e) خرجنا

3. Write \( hamza \) wherever it is essential:
   e.g.: لأني \( \rightarrow \) لأني
   (c) مسؤول
   (a) أجزاء
   (b) بالابين
   (e) بالطائرة
   (d)
4. Write:
   e.g.: marīda مريضة
   (a) tamwīl تمويل
   (b) marratayn مراتين
   (c) bi l-'amrād بلى الأمراء
   (d) an-natja l-'ijābiya إن نتبغي
   (e) al-mustawradāt muhimma.

5. Write the verbal noun of each verb. Read your answer aloud:
   e.g.: tamwīl تمويل
   مول — تمويل
   (a) سائل (b) طلب
   (c) اخذ (d) استأجر
   (e) احترم
Lesson 18
Reading and Writing

1.

The sounds ٩ and ٩ are written with the joined letters ٩ً٣ and ٩ً٤. Each has four forms: one initial, one medial, one joined-final and one isolated. The short form, and the head of the full form, rest on the line; the full form has a ‘reverse’ swoop downwards. In the medial and joined-final forms, the bead is formed clockwise ٠٩, and the letter is joined from below. Write:

٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩

٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩

You will note that the head of these letters is ‘open’ when no joined letter precedes, and ‘closed’ after a joined letter. Read and write:

٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩

٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩ ٩
2. 

Final ā (almost always pronounced short, see Pronunciation, paragraph 2, and Lesson 16/6) has an alternative spelling; it is written with an undotted yā‘ in some words. This letter is called 'alif maqṣūra “abbreviated ‘alif”. It expresses -a in the following types of word:

- final root letter of a final-weak verb: rama’ā9ta
- feminine superlative adjective: al-‘a9la as-sughra al-‘ula al-‘ukhra
- a few broken plurals: marda
- a few anomalous nouns, which we examine in Lesson 24 (see the word mustashfa hospital below);
- a few other words: 9ala ilà āhda ‘ihda

In the three commonest monosyllables regularly pronounced with final long ā, the vowel is spelt with ‘alif:

lā mā yā

3. ‘alif maqṣūra can occur only finally. When an ending is added, ‘alif maqṣūra is replaced by the phonetically appropriate letter (or an unwritten short vowel).

Read and write:

mashat intáhat
ishtarayt ‘ihdāna one (f.) of us

After yā‘, ‘alif maqṣūra must be replaced by ‘alif:

al-9ulya

Outside language books, isolated yā‘ often appears without its dots: yā‘. In this book we shall maintain yā‘ for yā‘, and show yā‘ only for ‘alif maqṣūra.

4.
The sounds \( f \) and \( q \) are written with the joined letters \( fā' \) and \( qāf \) respectively. Final/isolated \( qāf \) swoops like \( nūn \); final/isolated \( fā' \) is shallow like \( bā' \), resting on the line. All forms are dotted on the ring. Write each form:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{fā' } & \text{fā' } & \text{fā' } & \text{fā' } & \text{fā' } & \text{fā' } \\
\text{qāf } & \text{qāf } & \text{qāf } & \text{qāf } & \text{qāf } & \text{qāf }
\end{array}
\]

Read and write:

-فعل عمل fīl action
-مل اضافية الفعل fādin \( <fādiyn> \)
-نفس نفس nafs
-الضفة الفمāf ad-dīfā
-افاد افاد 'afād
-منش مفش mushrif
-كتاب كتاب latīf
-موظف موظف muwazzaf
-فيه فيه fa huwa
-فيه فيه yabqa \( <yibqa> \)
-هي بتيمه قلنا Qulna
-استقبال استقبال isṭiqbāl
-الحق الموقت al-ḥaqiq right (noun)
-فقط فقط faqat
-العراق العراق al-9irq
-قوي قوي qawī \( <qawī> \)
-يحيا بقية bāqiyya \( <biqi> \)
-موقف من موقف من mawqif \( <mouqif> \) min
-المستشفى al-mustashfa
-في من المفهوم fa min al-mafhūm
-ديق قديق دقائقو دقائقو daqīqa \( <daqīiq> \)
-من المتوقع من المتوقع min al-mutawwaqa9
-صحيفة صحيفه newspaper

5. The sound \( k \) is written with the joined letter kāf. This letter always rests on the line, and is tall like \( lām \). Its handwritten shape is different from its printed shape.
In handwriting, the letter is upright, and the ‘headstroke’ of the short form is written last. Examine:

- initial/medial \( k \)
- final/isolated \( k \)

The final form \( k \) is often replaced by \( ك \). \( ك \) is not used in handwriting.

In fast handwriting, the flourish of the final/isolated form \( ك \) is often written as an extension of the curve of the base, similarly to the dot of \( ن \). Write:

- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)

There are special handwritten forms for \( ك\-'الف \), \( ك\-'لّام \) and \( ك\-'لّام-'الف \). The loop is written clockwise \(  \), being approached from below if the combination is joined to the preceding letter. Write:

- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)
- \( ك \)

Read and write:

- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا
- 'اكالنا

6. Arabic transcription

There are no Arabic letters allocated in standard fashion to the sounds \( g \) or \( v \) occurring in foreign words. The letters \( ج \), \( غ \) and \( ك \) are
variously used in words of foreign origin with گ، and the form ﷪ is often used for ﷧:

In transcribing into Arabic, some texts show 'alif for both long and short ڭ، ە، and ی' for both long and short ە or ی.

This is especially the case with proper names, but the usage varies. Examine:

- هامر: hamburg
- بركسيل: Brussels
- واشنطن: Washington
- لندن: London
- ستوك: Stockholm
- واشنطن: Washington

Foreign proper names beginning with two consonants are often given a transition vowel marked with ‘alif: ﷪كس

You may also encounter, in foreign words, the Ottoman and Persian letters چ، the latter sometimes also used to transliterate the sound گ.

Remember that in Egypt چ is pronounced گ even when read from text.

7. The alphabet

We have now learned the whole alphabet. Here are the letters (isolated form), with names, in their alphabetical order:

- ‘alif
- ب ت ث
- ج خ ح ذ ر د
- س ش ض ط ع غ ف ق
- ك ل م ن ه و ي

In dictionaries, ەامز is placed with ‘alif, waw or yā’ as appropriate; ﷧ and ‘alif maqṣūra with yā’. See 16/22 for ﷪ as the isolated form of ﷧ in an alphabetical list, and paragraph 3 above for the alternative forms of isolated yā’.

8. Pointing

There exist also various orthographic signs, only rarely used, indicating short vowels, doubled consonants etc. Most people read more easily without them. A word or text carrying these signs is said to be ‘pointed’. Pointing can be full or partial, as needed.
9. Short vowels

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\cdot & a & \cdot \\
\cdot & u & \cdot \\
\cdot & i & \cdot \\
\end{array}
\]

These marks are written above (for \( a \) and \( u \)) or below (for \( i \)) the letter or hamza preceding them. Thus:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kam} & \quad \text{hum} & \quad \text{li} \\
\text{'ajmal} & \quad \text{'usus} & \quad \text{'idha}
\end{align*}
\]

These signs are called fath (\( a \)), damma (\( u \)) and kasra (\( i \)).

10. Long vowels and diphthongs

The three short-vowel signs shown above may also be used to show the corresponding long vowel (\( ā \), \( ū \), \( ī \)) when written immediately before 'alif, wāw or yā'; fath written immediately before wāw or yā’ can be used to show the diphthong aw and ay respectively:

- fath- medial 'alif, ā: kānat risālāt
- fath-'alif maqṣūra, ā: rama 9ala
- damma-wāw, ū: süq 'ūla
- kasra-yā’, ū: kīs ma9ī
- fatha-wāw, aw: nawm mawjūd
- fath-a, yā: al-layla

These can be used in partial pointing to avoid ambiguity:

- kasra-fath: active/passive participles; m. dual/sound plural:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{mursil} & \quad \text{mursal} \\
\text{al-ma'mūrin} & \quad \text{al-ma'mūrayn}
\end{align*}
\]

- damma and/or fath: passive verbs:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kutibat} & \quad \text{yūjad}
\end{align*}
\]

11.

\[
\begin{array}{cc}
\cdot & -an \\
\cdot & -atan
\end{array}
\]

The noun-, adjective- and adverb-ending -an is written with a doubled fatha called fatha tanwīn (tanwīn is translated as "nuation" in English). When added to a m. ending, fatha tanwīn is followed by 'alif; when added to the ending -a it is put over
the tā’ marbūta. Read and write:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiddan</td>
<td>'awwalan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rasmīyan</td>
<td>mathan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāṣṣatan</td>
<td>yādatan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shādīyan</td>
<td>ghad (bukr)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaklan wa mawdū'ān</td>
<td>katab tālib</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kpt 'ilān</td>
<td>šālu sāhan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>šālu sāhan</td>
<td>shaklan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

falṭa tanwīn is used in partial pointing only for clarity. We shall meet it later over 'alif maqṣūra, and other examples of tanwīn, with the other short vowels.

12. Small 'alif

In a few words medial -ā- is unwritten; we can point it with a small 'alif-like sign above the preceding consonant:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ħadha</td>
<td>dhālik</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wałākin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Small 'alif is shown only in full pointing.

13. sukūn, hamzat al-wāṣl, waṣla, hamzat al-qat

A small ring ..., called sukūn, above a letter indicates that the letter has no following vowel. This sign is also used to point a diphthong:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ismī</td>
<td>qaطبق</td>
<td>yawmāyn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the grammar of written Arabic, an initial weak vowel is said to have hamzat al-wāṣl (dhe hamza of connection). This term can be misleading, for no glottal stop is pronounced. When the weak initial vowel is dropped after a preceding vowel in the same phrase, you may sometimes see the weak vowel pointed with waṣla, a sign resembling the loop of šād, written over the 'alif, thus:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bi smī</td>
<td>fi l-haqq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both sukūn and waṣla are found only in full pointing.

hamza indicating a glottal stop is called hamzat al-qat (dhe hamza of severance). This is the one which we have been studying. Outside this present paragraph, the term hamza in this book always means hamzat al-qat.
14. **shadda**

A doubled consonant (including that of an assimilated article) may be pointed with the sign ... called *shadda*, above the letter:

\[
\text{mu9allim} \quad \text{taqaddum} \quad \text{ar-raml}
\]

*shadda* is sometimes used in partial pointing for clarity. Examine:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ذّكّر} & \quad \text{ذّكّار} \\
\text{علم} & \quad \text{عّلّم}
\end{align*}
\]

15. **Short vowels with shadda**

When combined with *shadda*, *kasra* is pointed either above the letter but below the *shadda*, or below the letter. The other two short vowels lie above the *shadda*:

\[
\text{mu9allim} \quad \text{mu9allam} \quad \text{taqaddum}
\]

16. Of the non-alphabetical letters and signs, the following are mandatory, both in handwriting and in print:

- final and medial *hamza*,
- *madda*,
- the dots on *fā‘ marbūta* in the theme of a construct.

The following are often omitted:

- initial *hamza* (print and handwriting),
- *fatḥa* tanwin after *‘alif* and after *fā‘ marbūta* (print and handwriting),
- the dots on *fā‘ marbūta* other than in the theme of a construct (in handwriting).

The following can be useful in partial pointing:

- initial *hamza* (especially Form IV),
- *fatḥa*, *damma* and *kasra* (participles, passive, dual),
- *shadda* (Forms II and V).

All other non-alphabetical letters and signs are found only in full pointing and not in everyday print or handwriting.

17. التمارين

1. Read aloud:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{هو} & \quad \text{عّلّام} \\
\text{بعيد عن القرية} & \quad \text{شّكروني} \\
\text{غَرفة} & \quad \text{(a)} \\
\text{بَنَت} & \quad \text{(b)} \\
\text{إِذَا} & \quad \text{(c)} \\
\text{مِن} & \quad \text{(d)}
\end{align*}
\]
2. Add the missing last letter, which is 'alif, 'alif maqṣūra or tā’ marbūta. Read the word or expression:
e.g.: al-kubra (a) 
الكبر...ـ الكبري...الأساتذ... 
بالمستشف... (b) 
هذ... هو الصديق... (c) 
اجوب... اجاب... (e)

3. Put the verb into the huwa form. Read aloud both the original verb form and your answer:
e.g.: ishtarayt, ishtāra 
اشتريت ← اشترى (a) 
استغنت (c) 
مشينا (e) 
اشتنينا (a) 
روبت (d)

4. Write the adverb which is derived from the word given. Read both the word given and your adverb:
e.g.: shafid, shafidan 
شديد ← شديداً (c) 
عادة (b) 
رسمي (e) 
جديد (a) 
حاسة (d)

5. Write:
e.g.: at-ta9awn dari. 
التعاون ضروري. (a) 
al-lughwa l-9arabiya ša9ba. (b) 
fi hādha l-balad (c) 
kunna masrūrin jiddan, shukran. (d) 
dafa9at 'aqall mimma dafa9na l-yawm. (e) 
al-'anba’ al-wārida min baghḍād

6. Point partially, with initial hamza, with shadda, and with fatha tanwîn. Then read aloud:
e.g.: ‘agẖra9 hāmma jiddan 
اغراض هامة جداً ← أعراض هامّة جادًا (a) 
اسم الصديق (b) 
أكبر مني (c) 
التدخل أشدّ مما كان قليلاً (d) 
هو موظف في الجمرك (e)
الدرس التاسع عشر
ad-dārs at-tāsīf 9asharī Lesson 19
التأمين at-tā’minī Insurance

1. جمل مثالية
   1. (a) تأمين ta’min
     مؤمن mu’ammin
     مؤمن عليه mu’ammin 9alayhi
     في حقل التأمين الاعتدامتبادل بين المؤمن والمؤمن عليه ضروري. 
     In the insurance field, mutual confidence between the insurer and the insured is essential.

   1. (b) مدير الهندسة mudīr al-handasa
     تقوية tāqwiya
     أمن ‘amn
     صهريج صهريج sahrīj sahrīj (tank (container))
     تخزين takhzhīn
     قسط أقساط qist ‘aqsāt
     في مجال الهندسة علم بالاقتراحات الجديدة لتقوية الأمن في صهريج التخزين من أجل خفض قسطنا السنوي.
     The Chief Engineer knows about the new proposals to increase (strengthen) the safety of the storage tanks with a view to reducing our annual premium.

   1. (c) شركته sharikatihī
     فشال fashal
     مفاوضاتها mufāwađatīna
     تعويض ta9wīd
     موافقة muwaqqat, mu’aqqat provisional, temporary
     بوليصة (insurance) būlīṣa bawālīṣa
     بوليصة بوليصة būlīṣatihī būlīṣatīti
     وضع شركته صعب بعد فشل مفاوضاتها في غرفة التجارة من أجل التعويض الموافق تحت شروط بوليصته الشاملة.
     His company’s situation is difficult after the failure of our negotiations in the Chamber of Commerce for
sh-shāmila. provisional compensation under the terms of his comprehensive policy.

(d) 

\(\) maqbūl acceptable
mulḥaq (also:) annex(\(\))
bī bi
jadwil jadāwil (also:) table (of data)
rūm drawing

إن التقرير حول الخسارة مقبول ولكن في الوثيقة الملحة به كثير من الجداول والرسوم المعقدة.

\(\) inna t-taqīr ḥawla l-khāṣāra maqbūl wālākin fi l-wadhīqa l-mulḥaqa bihi kathīr min al-jadāwil wa r-rūm al-mu9aqqada. The damage report is acceptable, but in the document attached to it there are many complicated tables and drawings.

(e) 

\(\) ḥasaba according to
mu’arrakh dated
harīqa harā’iq fire
nawba nawab shift, turn

حسب السالبين المؤرخين أمس المسؤل عن الحريق هو مشرف نوبة الليل.

\(\) ḥasaba r-risālatayn al-mu’arrkatayn ‘ams al-mas’ul 9an al-harīqa huwa mushrif nawbat al-layl. According to the two letters dated yesterday, the person responsible for the fire is the night shift supervisor.

2. 

عقد عقود
9aqd 9uqād contract

ضمان
damān guarantee

سرقة
sariqa theft

اتهاء
intihā’ expiry

الثالث
tablāb claim

الثالث

خطرة
mukhātara risk

ال険ة (في الأرباح)
al-musāhama (fi l-’arbāh) participation (in profits)

ال険ة (طبعية)
kāritha kavārīth (tabi’īya) (natural) disaster

الضمان الاجتماعي
ad-damān al-ijtimā’ī social security

3. In studying written Arabic, we shall note only those points which are useful and which are different from spoken Arabic. Everything learned in Part I is valid
for written Arabic, unless indicated otherwise. Conversely, any written form or structure may be included in everyday speech; the degree of ‘elevation’ bestowed by its use will vary with choice and context.

4. Full pronunciation and short pronunciation

In written Arabic the nouns, adjectives, verbs and numbers have a greater battery of inflexions or endings than in spoken Arabic. Many of these inflexions are not written with letters of the alphabet, but are visible only when the text is pointed. In very formal scripted speech, the inflexions are all pronounced. We can call this ‘full’ pronunciation.

But at the end of a phrase in formal speech, and in all positions in normal use, the inflexions are pronounced only when a suffix is added to the word; otherwise they are dropped. We can call this ‘short’ pronunciation. You should use short pronunciation, which is simpler and commoner. It also gives us forms much more like the spoken language which we have studied in Part I.

Short pronunciation rule: In short pronunciation, grammatical inflexions not written with an alphabetical letter are, with very few exceptions, pronounced only when followed by a suffix.

We study first nouns and adjectives.

5. Case

In written Arabic, nouns and adjectives are declined, i.e. they have cases, three in number:

- Nominative ('nom.') for the subject of the verb or implied verb,
- Accusative ('acc.') for the direct object or complement of a verb; also for the subject in certain contexts;
- Genitive ('gen.') for all elements of a construct except the first; or after a preposition.

6. Definite nouns

When a definite noun has the possessive suffix يٌ i or has no suffix, the noun has a form identical to its spoken form, if we allow for the fact that in written pronunciation tā’ marbuṭa is pronounced -at before a suffix (see 16/24):

- عقِدٌ 9aqd
- عقِدي 9aqdī
- وثِقِيٌ wathīqī
- وثِقِيٍّ wathīqatī
But when a possessive suffix other than ـي -i is added, we first add a case-ending: -u for the nom., -a for the acc., -i for the gen. The rules for stress still hold. The endings are shown **bold** in these examples:

العقد هنا.  
**but:**  
9aqd huna.

عرف عقدي.  
**but:**  
ya9rif 9aqdī.

في البوليسة  
**but:**  
fi l-būliṣa.

The same rules apply with a broken plural:

الوثائق هنا.  
**but:**  
wathā’iq huna.

عرف وثائقكم.  
**but:**  
ya9rif wathā’iqakum.

الأساتذة  
**but:**  
‘asātīdha.

Full pronunciation has these endings all the time except at the end of a phrase; in short pronunciation we pronounce them, irrespective of the position of the word, only when they are ‘trapped’ between the noun and the suffix.

Definite adjectives follow the noun pattern in full pronunciation; but since adjectives never take suffixes, their short pronunciation is the same as in spoken Arabic.

7. Indefinite nouns and adjectives

Indefinite words occur only without a possessive suffix, since this suffix would make them definite. But we need to know one ending which is sounded even in short pronunciation. It is the indefinite accusative ending -an (–tan after final -a, -yan after final ـي -i). It is pointed with fatha tannīn (18/11, 16). Pronounce it in the following situations, which constitute an exception to the short pronunciation rule:

- in the singular participle of a circumstantial expression (12/13):
  
  كتب طالبة مساعدتنا.  
  katab tāliban musā9adatana.

  كتب طالبة مساعدتنا.  
  katabat tālibatana musā9adatana.

- in adverbial forms:

  عادةً ـة 9ādatan  
  جدًا jiddan  
  كثيرًا kathīra
in the absolute object:

\[
\text{sa'\text{\textacutedd} su'al\text{\textacutedd} fann\text{\textacutedd}y.}
\]

\[
\text{ya9rif mu9rifatan tamm\text{\textacutedd}t.}
\]

whenever else it is written with 'alif:

\[
\text{'akhadh kit\text{\textacutedd}ban/kutuban.}
\]

From the examples you can see that these rules apply equally to singular and to broken plural nouns and adjectives.

(For the record only, there exist also the indefinite nominative ending -un, pointed datma tanwfn or ٠; and the indefinite genitive -in, pointed kasra tanwfn ٠. In short pronunciation, these are heard only in a few set phrases which we can learn as vocabulary.)

8. Sound feminine plural nouns and adjectives

Definite nouns carrying the sound feminine plural ending -\text{\textacutedd}t are subject to the same rules as the singular and broken plural nouns and adjectives covered by paragraph 6 above, with the exception that the ending for both the accusative and genitive is -i; [-a] does not occur:

\[
\text{ar-ris\text{\textacutedd}l\text{\textacutedd}t} \text{ ris\text{\textacutedd}l\text{\textacutedd}t}\]

but:

\[
\text{ris\text{\textacutedd}lt\text{\textacutedd}na huna.}
\]

\[
\text{katabat ris\text{\textacutedd}l\text{\textacutedd}thiha.}
\]

\[
\text{\text{\textacutedd}saba ris\text{\textacutedd}l\text{\textacutedd}tha}
\]

In written Arabic, animate f. pl. nouns must have a f. pl. adjective, which is always sound:

\[
\text{(al-)}\text{mu9allm\text{\textacutedd}t (al-)}\text{mis\text{\textacutedd}r\text{\textacutedd}y\text{\textacutedd}}}\text{\textacutedd}n\text{\textacutedd}t\]

(For the record, indefinite endings -un [nom.], -in [acc./gen.] also occur with sound feminine plurals, but are never heard in short pronunciation; we can ignore them.)

9. Dual and sound masculine plural nouns and adjectives

Dual (m. and f.) and sound masculine plural nouns and adjectives have endings which are the same for definite and indefinite forms:

- nominative أن -\text{\textacutedd}n (dual; ٠ becomes ٠ as usual) and وn (m. pl.):

\[
\text{(al-)}\text{mu9allm\text{\textacutedd}n (al-)}\text{h\text{\textacutedd}\text{\textacutedd}dir\text{\textacutedd}n}
\]

\[
\text{(al-)}\text{mu9allmat\text{\textacutedd}n (al-)}\text{h\text{\textacutedd}\text{\textacutedd}dir\text{\textacutedd}tn}
\]

\[
\text{(al-)}\text{mu9allm\text{\textacutedd}n (al-)}\text{h\text{\textacutedd}\text{\textacutedd}dir\text{\textacutedd}n}
\]
accusative and genitive -ayn (dual) and -īn (m. pl.), as in spoken Arabic:

\[
\text{min al-kitābyn} \quad \text{li l-mā‘ūrin} \\
\text{muhammad al-mu9allimatayn}
\]

(For the record, the full forms are -āni/-aynī and -ūna/īna.)

The final -n is dropped before a possessive suffix and when the word is the theme of a construct:

\[
\text{miktabāha} \quad \text{fi miktabayha} \\
\text{mas‘ūlī qismī} \quad \text{min mumaththilīkum}
\]

The long vowel rule (2/10) holds as usual before an article, and the original stress is maintained:

\[
\text{mumaththilū sh-sharika} \\
\text{ma9a mumaththili sh-sharika}
\]

Note however:

- the dual diphthong -ay (like all diphthongs) is never shortened:
  \[
  \text{mudiray ash-sharika}
  \]
- -ūn + ī becomes -iya:
  \[
  \text{mu9allimiya my teachers}
  \]

10. Agreement of adjectives

Note paragraph 8 above for animate f. pl. adjectives. The inanimate plural rule (1/5) applies throughout written Arabic also. But the dual noun rule (4/12) does not apply; an adjective qualifying a dual noun must also be dual in written Arabic:

\[
\text{ṣuḥūfiyān lubnānīyān} \quad \text{fi risālatayn rasmiyatayn}
\]

11. A few nouns and adjectives (e.g. types muhāmī, fādī, mustashfa) decline differently. We study them later.

12. tā‘ marbūta

Where a noun ending in tā‘ marbūta is followed by an adjective carrying the article, some speakers use full pronunciation even when the rest of the sentence is spoken with short pronunciation. This exception to the short pronunciation rule is not obligatory:

\[
\text{sanatu l-mā‘ūya or sana l-mā‘ūya} \\
\text{fi s-sanati l-muqiba or fi s-sana l-muqiba}
\]

\[
\text{sanatu l-muqiba or sana l-muqiba}
\]

\[
\text{fi s-sanati l-muqiba or fi s-sana l-muqiba}
\]
This practice usually covers only the noun, not the adjective.

13. Possessive suffixes

The possessive suffixes -ī, -ha, -na, -kum and -hum are the same as in the spoken language. The other written possessive suffixes are:

-ka (ak)
-ki (ik)
-hu (u)

and the third-person dual, not found in spoken Arabic: -huma of them both (m./f.).

(There are other persons, the 2nd and 3rd persons animate f. pl., used for an exclusively female group; and the 2nd person dual. But these occur so rarely, even in writing, that they need not concern us here. If you need them, they can be found in 26/13.)

14. We have seen that certain noun endings are modified before certain suffixes. There is one more change to note: after -ī/-ay or the case-ending -i, the suffixes -hu, -huma, -hum become -hi, -hima, -him:

-inda muhandisih/muhandisyih
-fi maktabih/maktabihima
-jawāba 9ala risālatayhim al-’akhīratayn

a reply to their last two letters

15. Prepositions

Written prepositions are the same as those of the spoken form, except that they mostly add -a (unwritten, can be pointed), e.g.:

- ba9da
- qabla

but not:
- min
- 9an

Further, dākhi(a) and khārij(a) are often pronounced short when they have no suffix, even in formal reading.

Learn also:
- lada in the presence of过得-through, beyond the spelling of جنب jamba.

All prepositions except ‘illa except (see below) govern the genitive case.

- dākhi(a)/khārij(a) masna9ina
- ba9da/qabla l-mu’tāmar
- 9asaba/didda 9aqdihī
- khilāla/mundhu ‘usbū9ayn
- 9inda/bayna l-muhandisīn
The noun governed by ّإﻻ ِilla goes into the case dictated by the noun’s own function in the sentence when the sentence is negative:

\[
\text{ما حضر إلا المهندسون.}
\]

Only the engineers (None but the engineers) attended.

but into the accusative, irrespective of its own grammatical function, when the sentence is affirmative:

\[
\text{kulluhum hādirūn ِilla l-muhandisin.}
\]

(acc.) All of them are present except the engineers.

16. Pronoun suffixes on prepositions

The pronoun suffixes used after prepositions are identical to the possessive suffixes, with some modifications:

- A short vowel at the end of a preposition is dropped when ي -i is suffixed; for other suffixes the vowel is retained:

  - من 
  - ﻣﻌﻲ 
  - ﻣﻌﻚ

- ﻣﻦ min and ﻋﻦ 9an before ي i become minnī and ﻋﻠﻲ 9anī, as in spoken Arabic (but: ﻣﻨﻪ minhu ‹minnu›, ﻋﻨﻚ 9anka, 9انك 9annak, 9اننک).

- ﻟﺪﻯ lada follows the pattern of 9ala:

  - ﻋﻠﻲ 9alayya
  - ﻋﻠﻴﻨﺎ 9alayna
  - ﻋﻠﻴﻬﻢ 9alayhim

- After ي -i/-ay and the preposition ﺑی bi, the suffixes -hu, -huma, -hum become -hi, -hima, -him:

  - ﻓﻴﻪ 9alayhi (9alây)
  - ﻓﻴﻬﻢ 9alayhim

17

التمارين

NB.: From this point forwards, all noun and adjective expressions in the exercises should be read as nominative case unless the grammar or spelling requires otherwise.

1. Read aloud:

  e.g.: ما هو طلب الموظفين على الشريكان كبيرتان؟

  (b) ﻣﺄمور من ﻣﺄموری ﻟﻠﻠﺰمنة ﻣﺎ huwa ّال-lalab al-mu'amman 9alayhi?
2. Write:
e.g.: fi ḥālat al-kāriθa ḫaṭībiyya
   (a) ma9a muftattishāy l-jumruk ar-raʾsīyayn
   (b) ma9a muftattishī l-jumruk ar-raʾtīyīn
   (c) intihāʾ al-9aqd
   (d) fi s-sanati l-maqsīlība
   (e) fi l-bāllisatayn ash-shāmilatayn

3. Add the possessive suffix indicated. Read your answer aloud:
e.g.: taqrīruhu huna. ← تقريره هنأ.
   fi taqrīrīhi
   (a) موثقة (انا)
   (b) زمان (انا)
   (c) تخفيف قسط (هو)
   (d) شروط مقبولة (هي)
   (e) حسب بوليسة (هو)

4. Add the pronoun suffix indicated. Read your answer aloud:
e.g.: 9alayhim
   (a) عند (هم)
   (b) خلال (هم)
   (c) مع (انا)
   (d) بين (هم)
   (e) لدي (انا)

5. Write in the plural:
e.g.: المقصّش الرئيسي ← المقصّشون الرئيسيون
   (a) الوكيل المسؤول
   (b) اجتماع هام
   (c) البوليصة المعدّة
   (d) وكالة أجنبية

6. Write in the singular:
e.g.: زميل جديد ← زملاء جديدين
   (a) المخاطرة الأجنبية
   (b) المثلون
   (c) الوثائق الملحقة
   (d) العقود المؤرّخة امس
Transport and Communications

1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>جمل مثالية</th>
<th>ترجمة</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>شحن على حجم حجم</td>
<td>load in view of its great volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa nusril ash-shahin bi-waṣiṭat at-tāriq</td>
<td>We shall send the load by road in view of its great volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺗﺼﻞ سفينة سفن</td>
<td>The ship will reach Latakia today,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-lādhiqīya</td>
<td>and customs inspection will take at least two days. Access to the goods is impossible before Thursday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yastaghriq</td>
<td>at least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥusūl 'ala</td>
<td>access to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭaqālīyā</td>
<td>The creation of supertankers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

كما غيّر إنشاء الناقلات الضخمة نقل البترول، فلأحداث أيضًا استعمال مستودعات غيرها كاملاً في قطاع نقل البضائع.

kama ghayyar 'inshâ' an-nāqilât Just as the creation of supertankers
ad-dakhma naql al-bitroul qad 'ađath
'aydān istimāl al-mustawdā'āt
taghyirān kāmilān fi qiṭāq naql al-bādā'āt.

(d) رابطة روابط قمر صناعي سلك أسلاك
lāsilkī -wirless, radio (adj.)
has changed the transport of oil, so
the use of containers has wrought a
complete change in the goods
transport sector.

mundh ‘alshā’ rābiṭa bi wāṣīt qamar
šīrajī zādat muwāṣalātuna l-lāsilkīya
ziyādātā malumātīn.

(e) سكة سكك حدود تكلفتنا
sikka (pl. sikakī) hadīdiya railway
hudūd (pl.) frontier
tukallifuna (kallifuna)
Since the creation of a satellite link,
our radio communications have
increased appreciably.

9adam wujūd sikka ḥadīdiya bayna
l-mintaqā š-shīrajīya wa l-hudūd huwa
mushkila kabira 9alayna tukallifuna
kathiri;

2. مفردات إضافية – النقل والمواصلات
قطار قطر
qitār qutur train marbūt linked
بارة بخار
bākhira bawākhir ship ḣawwī air (adj.)
شبكة شبكة
shabaka ṣhibāk network bāri land (adj.)
طن، طن
ṭan ‘āṭan ton(ne) ḥawri sea (adj.)
كهف، كهف
khat ḣawwī airline waḥjahha II to send
متر مكعب
mir ṣikuṭa99ab cubic metre 9ala matn on board
بولصة شحن
būliṣat shāhn bill of lading, air waybill

3. Subject pronouns
The pronouns 'ana, huwa, hiya and hum are the same in
writing as in spoken Arabic. The other pronouns are:
1st person pl.: ṣawu 'l-hānā
2nd persons: 'anta 'antu, 'anti 'antu
and one which is found only in writing:

3rd person dual (both of them): ﻫﺎ huma (m. and f., animate/inanimate)

The 2nd and 3rd person pl. forms given above are in fact m. pl.; throughout written Arabic, these forms apply to groups of male persons or mixed company. There exist other pronouns (2nd person m./f. dual, 2nd and 3rd persons f. pl.) too rare, even in writing, to concern us. These are explained in 26/13 for reference.

4. Principal parts of verbs

Principal parts are usually quoted in full pronunciation. For verbs with a sound final root letter, these parts have -a and -u respectively after that letter, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>كلمات يكتب</th>
<th>kataha yaktabu</th>
<th>kataab yaktabu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hamzated (i.e. one root letter is ﺱ hamza*)</td>
<td>ﻋﺎخذ ﺑَرَأْ and</td>
<td>'akhdha ya'khudhu</td>
<td>'akhdh yakhudh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>سَال يسأل</td>
<td>sa'ala yas'alu</td>
<td>sa'al yis'al</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ﻓَرَأ يقرأ</td>
<td>qara'a yaqra'</td>
<td>qara yaqra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial-ו</td>
<td>ﻭُصل يفصل</td>
<td>wasala yasalu</td>
<td>wišil yasal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow</td>
<td>ﻛَال يقول</td>
<td>qāla yaqulu</td>
<td>qāl yiqāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ﺑَان يبيع</td>
<td>bāna yabe'lu</td>
<td>bān yibān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ﻧَام ينام</td>
<td>nāma yanāmu</td>
<td>nām yinām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled</td>
<td>ﺟَدَل يظل</td>
<td>'alla yadal</td>
<td>qall yidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quadrilateral</td>
<td>ﺗُرَجِم يترجم</td>
<td>tarjama yutarjimu</td>
<td>tarjam yitarjim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(This is Form I/Q; the rule applies equally to Forms II – X and IIQ.)

* In written Arabic, sound verbs with one root letter hamza (initial, medial or final) form their own class; see paragraph 5 below.

The root vowels of the written Form 1 verb are sometimes different from the vowel used in spoken Arabic:

وصل يفصل | wasala yasalu (wišil yasal)
عرف يعرف | 9arafa ya9rif | (9irif ya9raf)

Good dictionaries (see paragraph 12 below) show these vowels.

In short pronunciation (i.e. when the verb is used in a sentence), the final -a and -u are retained only when a pronoun suffix is added; otherwise these final vowels are dropped. They are printed superscript in the tenses shown below.
In introducing new verbs of Form IV we shall no longer include the second principal part, since its prefix is regular \((yu-)\) in written Arabic.

5. Tenses of verbs with a sound final radical

Typical tenses of such verbs:

**Past:**

Root \(kataba\) yaktubu I \(katab\) yuktub:

- kataba
- katab
- kataba
- katab
- katab
- katab

3rd person dual: m. katabā, f. katabatā, final 'alif pronounced long.

**Present:**

Root \(kataba\) yaktubu I \(katab\) yuktub:

- aktub
- aktub
- aktub
- aktub
- aktub

3rd person dual: m. yaktubāni, f. taktubāni

Root \(arsala\) yursilu IV \(arsal\) yursil:

- 'ursil
- 'ursil
- 'ursil
- 'ursil

3rd person dual: m. yursilāni, f. tursilāni

Several things to bear in mind:

- See 15/7 for the choice of vowel \((a\ or\ u)\) in the present prefix, and in the prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ.
- In the present tense, the final \(-i\) of the form and of the dual forms, and the final \(-a\ of\ the\ endings\ -îna\ and\ -ûna,\ are\ retained,\ exceptionally,\ even\ in\ short\ pronunciation.
- The final \(-u\ or\ -a\ elsewhere\ are\ in\ short\ pronunciation\ kept\ only\ before\ a\ suffix.
• The final 'alif of -ū (past tense, هم form) is silent.

• Hamzated verbs:
  - verbs with final-radical hamza, final-weak in spoken Arabic, follow the sound pattern in written Arabic:
    - قرأت qara’t (etc.), not qarayt (etc.) in the past.
    - أكل أكلك kakala ya’kulu I are regular in written Arabic (not yakhudh, yākul etc.).
  - [hamza-’alif-hamza] is always written ١’alif-madda; this means that we write أكل أكلك ‘akhudh, أكل أكلك ‘akul.

• Initial-ṣ and doubled verbs do not fully conform; see below.

6. Initial-ṣ verbs
The written initial-ṣ verbs follow the sound pattern, except that in Form I the initial root letter  wś is dropped in the present tense:

Root فيصل ﻰفصل.Uyasil I ovišil yušal:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>أصل</th>
<th>نصل</th>
<th>تصلون</th>
<th>تصلونا</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘asil</td>
<td>našil</td>
<td>tasilna</td>
<td>tasiluna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تسيل</td>
<td>يصلون</td>
<td>يوصلنا</td>
<td>تصلوننا</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasilna</td>
<td>yasilna</td>
<td>yasiluna</td>
<td>tasilna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: m. ﯽصلان يفصلان, f. ﯽصلان تصلان tašilāni

So also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ﯽجد</th>
<th>ﯽجد</th>
<th>ﯽجد</th>
<th>ﯽجد</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waratha yarithu I to inherit</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqafa yaqifu I to stop</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
<td>ﯽجد</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Written Arabic also has a few rare verbs with initial root letter ١’alif ‘yā’.

7. Doubled verbs
In written Arabic, the doubled verb rule (13/4) applies also to the past tense of Form I:

Root دلّ يدنّ, دلّ يدنّ Dall yadallu I dall yidill:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>دلت</th>
<th>دلتم</th>
<th>دلّت</th>
<th>دلّت</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dallta</td>
<td>dalltam</td>
<td>dall</td>
<td>dall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalalt</td>
<td>dalalti</td>
<td>dalil</td>
<td>dallat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalalna</td>
<td>dalatum</td>
<td>dallā</td>
<td>dallatā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: m. دلّ دلًّا dallā, f. دلّ دلّات dallatā
ARABIC TODAY

(The -ay- of the spoken form is taken from the final-weak verbs.)

8. Increased forms

For the increased forms of all these verbs, use as base the models already known to you, bearing in mind the comments made above concerning the short final vowel before a suffix, and the vowel of the present prefix and of the prefix of Forms V, VI and IIQ.

9. Participles and verbal nouns

Form the participles and verbal nouns of these verbs on the models known to you, except that:

- root letter *hamza* does not ‘soften’ into -y- as it sometimes does in spoken Arabic:

  - سَاَلَ sā’āl not sāyil (active participle Form I)
  - قَرَءَة qirā’ā not qirāyā (verbal noun Form I)
- the active participle of Form I of hollow verbs also has *hamza* in the middle, not -y-:
  - قَاتِل qāʾīl not qāyil
- the active participle of Form I of doubled verbs follows the model حَاتِلَ hāṭil
  - شَكَيْل shākk (not shākkī).

In addition, remember that the participles and verbal nouns have a case-ending before a suffix (Lesson 19).

10. Imperative

The written imperative is rarely met outside literature and advertisement; it mostly resembles the spoken form. Examples:

- tafaḍḍal/tafaḍḍāl/tafaḍḍalū V (NB silent final ‘alif in the plural)
- انْظُر انظَرُ انظَرَا انظَرَ ... (in text references), from نَاَفِرَ ياَفِرُū I; see paragraph 11 below.
- قَف qif (seen on traffic signs). This is the m. sing. imperative of وَقَفَ يَقُفُ waqafa yaqifu I. See paragraph 6 above, and also 5/9.

In written Arabic, only Form IV has *hamza* beginning its imperative; the imperatives of Forms I (NB), VII, VIII, IX and X have a weak vowel.

Compare أَرْسُلُ ‘arsil IV send
with اِفْتَحُ iftiḥ I open
انْظُرُ unẓur I see (quoted above)
11. Use of certain verbs

Certain spoken-Arabic verbs are not used in writing, and vice versa. A few important differences:

- The written form of *qidir yiqdar* I is little used as a written auxiliary; we use instead a Form X hollow verb which we learn later.
- For *rah yirah* write *dhahaba yadhhabu*.
- Do not write *shaf yishaf*; write *naṭara yanṭaru* I for *do seeā* and *naṭara yanṭaru* ʿila for *do look at* ṭō. We shall learn later a second, more common verb for *do seeā*.

12. Use of the dictionary

Arabic dictionaries are of two kinds:

- The most recent dictionaries list entries alphabetically by words in both parts, as in European-language dictionaries. These later dictionaries present no special difficulty. A good word-based dictionary is the *Arabic Dictionary* (Arabic-English, English-Arabic) of N. Awde and K. Smith, pub. Bennett and Bloom.
- Traditional dictionaries, in the part translating from Arabic, list all words based on triliteral and quadriliteral roots alphabetically by the root and not by the word. Thus *muṭallim*, *taqālim* and *istaṭlama* are all listed under *ʿalim*, before *ʿallam* and its derivatives. Words not based on such roots are listed alphabetically among them. Remember that ʿalif is not a root letter; weak root letters are always either ʿ or ʾ. Root-letter *hamza* is listed under ʿalif, wāʾ or yāʾ, depending on its vowel. The most prestigious root-based Arabic-English dictionary is Hans Wehr’s *Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, pub. Otto Harrassowitz, also Spoken Language Services Inc.

13. التمرينات

1. Read aloud:

   (a) تسلمت رسالتكم.
   (b) المواصلات الإسلامية.
   (c) قرآنا التقرير.
   (d) على متن طائرة اليوم.
   (e) أرسلناك بالبريد الجوي.

   e.g.: يُصل بعد يومين. yaṣīl baʾda yawmān.
2. Write:
e.g.: qara’na shurūṭ ad-daf al-maktūba fi 9aqqidhūm.
قّرآنا شرط الدفع المكتوبة في عقودهم.
(a) wajjahu li riṣāla ṭa'wila maktūb fiha jadwāl ‘asgārihūm.
(ب) al-ḥukūma taqūm bi tamdīd shabakat aṭ-ṭuruq aṭh-thānawiyya.
(c) ’irṣāl al-baḍā’9 bi l-ḥājim yuqallifūna ‘aqāl mimma yuqallif bi l-wazn.
(d) takūn būlīṣat ash-shaḥn 9ala matn bākhirat ‘KOBĪ MARU’ min Yokohāmā.
(e) al-wizāra tanshur jadwāl as-sādirāt 9ādatan fi l-jarīdatayn ar-rasmīyaytayn.

3. Put into the plural:
e.g.: دحلون، دخلوا
(c) آخذ
(b) زار
(d) تقول
(a) نظر
(e) دلل

4. Put into the present tense:
e.g.: تكلمنا، تكلمن
(c) خططتم
(b) ارسلوا
(e) صرنا
(a) بعنا
(d) استجوبت

5. Put into the past tense:
e.g.: يدخلون، دخلوا
(c) يوجب على
(b) آخذ
(e) نتبدل
(a) يصلون

6. Give the principal parts, participles (m. sing.) and verbal noun:
e.g.: دَبِّر ← دَبِّر، مدِّبِر، مدِّبِر، مدِّب
1. 

1. متأكد من

\textit{muta’akkid min}  
\textit{Convinced of, sure of}

\textit{qāfūf ṭurūf}  
\textit{Condition, circumstance}

\textit{sālim}  
\textit{Sound (adjective)}

\textit{‘a’yada}  
\textit{To support}

\textit{ta’yīd}  
\textit{Support}

\textit{ta’yīdan li}  
\textit{In support of}

 announca muta’akkid min anna qīṣm shū’ūn al-muwāqafīn yaqūm bi khidma muhimma jiddan u hiya ‘inshā’ ṣūrūf sāliima ta’yīdan li l-‘īnṭāj.

We are convinced that Personnel Department performs an important service, i.e. the creation of sound conditions in support of production.

(b) صغير صغر

\textit{sagīḥ sīghār}  
\textit{(also) junior}

al-muqblayn.

The company will recruit an additional number of workmen and junior staff during the next two months.

(c) أضرáb

\textit{‘adraba IV}  
\textit{To strike (from work)}

\textit{idrāb}  
\textit{Strike}

\textit{sābab ‘asbāb}  
\textit{Cause}

\textit{khiḥāf}  
\textit{Dispute}

\textit{kibār}  
\textit{(in def. construct) Senior, leading}

\textit{majlis ‘idāra}  
\textit{Board of directors}

الإضراب في قسم الإنتاج صار سببًا لخلاف شديد بين كبار ممثلي النقابة ومجلس الإدارة للشركة.

The strike in Production Department became the cause of a serious dispute between the leading union representatives and the company’s board of directors.
### 206 ARABIC TODAY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(d)</th>
<th>قانون قوانين</th>
<th>qānūn qawānīn</th>
<th>law</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>طبّيق</td>
<td>tabqa II</td>
<td>to apply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>تطبيق</td>
<td>taṭbiq</td>
<td>application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>إجراءات</td>
<td>'ijra 'at</td>
<td>(pl., also) procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>تسوية</td>
<td>tawsīya</td>
<td>settlement (of problem etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>شكاوى شكوات</td>
<td>shakwa shakawāt</td>
<td>complaint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تسجيل</td>
<td>sajjala II</td>
<td>to register</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تسجيل</td>
<td>tasjīl</td>
<td>registration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

حسب قانون العمل عند العمّال حقّ تطبيق الإجراءات المواقتف جوامضهم.

According to the Labour Law, workers have the right to apply (الحقّ جوامضهم) the agreed procedure for settling complaints after registration of their complaint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(e)</th>
<th>رقّي</th>
<th>raqqa II</th>
<th>to promote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ترقيّة</td>
<td>tārqiya</td>
<td>promotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>مرتفع</td>
<td>murtāfi9</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>استقالة</td>
<td>istiqāla*</td>
<td>to resign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>استقالة</td>
<td>istiqāla</td>
<td>resignation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* from root قيل.

الكَل نوادَي امكانيات الترقية في الأقسام الفنية هو سبب العدد المرتفع للاستقالات عند كبار الموظفين في السنة الماضية.

The lack of promotion possibilities in the technical departments is the cause of the high number of resignations among senior staff last year.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.</th>
<th>مفردات إضافية – إدارة شؤون الموظفين</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>وظيفة وظائف</td>
<td>wādīfa wādī'if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مهنة مهن</td>
<td>mihna mihan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>راتب رواتب</td>
<td>rāṭīb rawāṭīb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>أجر أجراء</td>
<td>'ajr 'ajūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عزل عزل</td>
<td>'azāl 'azāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>غقل إضافي</td>
<td>shughl 'idāfī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>جدول رواتب</td>
<td>jadwal rawāṭīb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مؤهلات</td>
<td>mu'ahhalat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بدل أبدل</td>
<td>balad 'abdāl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Object Pronouns

The object-pronoun suffixes added to verbs are identical to the pronoun suffixes added to prepositions, except for 

- ﱓ ﻥ -nī 'me'. The verb gets full pronunciation before a suffix. Further, two endings of the past tense and the imperative are modified before a suffix:

- ﱩ -ū (2nd person, m. pl. past) adds ﻧ ﺔ ﺕ ﻷ -ūha

- ﱩ ﯽ -wajjahtumāna

- ﱩ -ū (3rd person m. pl. past, and imperative) drops its silent 'alif:

- ﯣ ﺎ ﺔ ﯽ -9azalūhu

- ﯣ ﺐ ﺐ ﯽ -unṣūrūha

4. Complements

Most verbs denoting 'being' or 'becoming' have a complement (see 2/6; it is also known as a predicate). The complement is either a noun or an adjective. Important verbs taking a complement include:

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-kāna yakūnu I to be

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-sāra yāṣīru I to become

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-dallā yādallu I to remain

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-dāma yadīmu I to persist, still to be

- ﯣ ﺔ ﯽ-mā zāla l yazālu I still to be

- ﯣ ﺔ ﯽ-mā yāda l yaṣūda I to be no longer

The noun or adjective complement stands in the accusative case, and is normally indefinite (see 19/7):

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-kān marīdan. He was ill.

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-sīra murashshāhīn. We became candidates.

- ﯣ ﺎ ﯽ-sār waṣīr al-9ummāl wādiḥan natījatan lī taṭbiq al-qānūn al-jadīd. The workers' situation became clear as a result of the application of the new law.

Complements also occur in definite form, but these are rarer:

- ﯣ ﺔ ﯽ-kān huwa l-mudīr/mudīrāna.

He was the director/our director.

Complement rule: The complement of a verb stands in the accusative case.

For our requirements (short pronunciation, no pointing), this rule matters to us only when the complement has a m. indefinite acc. ending (١٠ -an), a dual ending (١١ -ayn), a sound m. pl. ending (١٢ -in), or a possessive suffix (19/6). The complement rule applies only after a verb; in a verbless sentence of the type
‘ana mabsūt (1/6) the complement stands in the nominative.

Compare:

العامل غالب.
al-9āmil ghā’ib. The workman is absent.

العامل كان غالبًا.
al-9āmil kān ghā’iban. The workman was absent.

In 19/9 we learned that the dual and sound pl. endings -ayn-īn drop their final -n from the theme of a construct:

صار موظفي الشركة.

صارا موظفي الشركة.

The theme of a construct cannot have a tanwīn ending:

صار مديرًا.

صار مدير بنك.

صارت سكرتيرة.

صارت سكرتيرة وزير.

but:

دور مديرة.

دور مديرة.

دور رابع.

دور رابع.

5. Negatives

Verbs are negated with َلا lā in the present tense and َمَا mā in the past:

ما دفعنا البذل.

mā dafa9na l-badal.

لا ندفع البذل.

lā nadfa9 al-badal.

We shall learn later a more common and stylish negative for verbs with past meaning.

The negative َميش mish is not used in written Arabic. For the negative of َهوūn beōūn present time, the hollow verb ليسā laysa َلاū to beēūn is used. This verb is past tense in form but present in meaning. It is always pronounced with full final vowels:

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

لعبت

3rd person dual: m. َليسā laysā, f. َليساتا laysat

This verb takes a complement, which goes into the accusative case:

ليس مريضًا.

laysa marīdan. He is not ill.

ليسوا غائبين.

laysū ghā’ibīn. They are not absent.

The other use of َميش mish, i.e. to negate adjectives and adverbs, is covered by َغير ghayr; the negated word is put into the genitive:

زمالًا َغير حاضرين.

zumalā’una ghayr ḥādirīn.
wasalat lana risāla ghayar rasmīya.

6. Interrogatives

The commonest interrogatives are:

**Pronouns:**
- من man (mīn)
- ماذاما mādha/mā ʾshā
een (li mīn)
- كم kam
- أي 'ayy

**Adjectives:**
- من man (mīn)
- كم kam

**Adverbs:**
- كيف kayfa (kayf)
- أينا (wayn)
- ماما mata (li mādha/li mā ʾlaysh)

Use them as you do their spoken equivalents (see 5/15), but note:
- after `kam` the noun stands in the indefinite accusative singular: `kam murashshān āḥarrūn`?
- `kam` is not used in written-language statements (see 2/9).

- `ayy` has also non-interrogative-meaning, `anūy`
- `أي` `ayy` wāḥid minhum `any (one) of them`
- `أي` `ayy` has an optional f. sing. form `ًأي` `ayya`, not consistently used.
- Do not confuse `أي` `ayy` which/any with `أي` `ay` meaning e.g. `أمس`, `ay yawm al-ʾahad yesterday`, i.e. Sunday

7. Sentence structure: statements

Arabic sentences expressing a statement can be either `nominal` or `verbal`.

8. Nominal sentences

See 15/9. A nominal sentence is one which follows the English pattern, with subject before verb:

- رسالتك وصلت أمس. `risalatukum wasalat ʿams`
- هي وصلت أمس. `hiya wasalat ʿams`

Sentences in which the verb is implied count as nominal sentences:

- المرشحون هن. `al-murashshāhūn huna`

A nominal statement may also be introduced by a conjunction. Some of these, based on the conjunctions `ان` `anna` or `إن` `inna`, behave in a special manner.

The most important such conjunctions are:

- `ان` `anna` that
- `إن` `inna` (see below)
- `لأن` `li ʾanna because`
- (wa)líkina but
ka 'anna as if, as though

Note:
• 'inna adds no meaning to the sentence; it merely announces that a nominal statement follows.
• With 'anna and 'anna the indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

The subject of the clause introduced by one of these conjunctions is always in the accusative case; if a pronoun, it is suffixed:

| 'inna l-mandābīn wasalā 'ams. |
| 'innahum wasalā 'ams. |

Nominal sentence rule: In a sentence beginning with 'inna or 'anna or one of their derivatives, the subject stands in the accusative case.

Any complement follows its own rule, i.e. it remains nominative if the sentence has no verb, but becomes accusative if it follows a verb of being or becoming (paragraph 4 above):

| walākinna l-muhandīsin ḥādirīn. |
| walākinnahum ḥādirīn. |
| li 'anna l-mandābīn ghā 'ibūn. |
| li 'anna l-mandābīn kānā ghā 'ibīn. |

9. The conjunctions 'inna and 'anna and their derivatives have alternative forms when -nī and -na are suffixed:

| 'innani/annani or 'innī'/anni |
| 'innana/annana or 'inna'/anna |

10. Verbal sentences

In a verbal sentence making a statement the verb comes earlier than the subject.

The verb is always a stated (i.e. not implied) verb. In such sentences, when the subject is a noun, the verb is always singular, even if the subject is dual or plural (see 15/9). Since noun subjects are always 3rd person, this rule affects only verbs in the 3rd persons:

| wasal al-murashshāhin 'ams. |
| 'aqlan al-mudāra' 'anna... |

When the subject is an implied pronoun, the verb has its usual ending, including dual or plural if appropriate:

| istaqlalna/istaqālā/istaqālā 'ams. |

An inanimate plural verb counts as singular:
When the verb consists of more than one element (e.g. in the continuous past or the pluperfect tenses), only the first element precedes the subject in a verbal sentence. The other elements follow the subject and have full agreement with it:

\[ \text{kān al-9ummāl yudribūn/āadrabū.} \]

The workmen were striking/had struck.

Similarly, when a subject has two verbs, only one can precede the subject. The other must follow the subject, with full agreement:

\[ \text{dakhal al-9ummāl wa bāda ‘u l-9amal.} \]

Verbal sentence rule: When the verb has a noun subject and precedes it, the verb stands in the singular even when the subject is dual or plural.

11. Future

The written equivalent of *rāyiḥ/rālā* is the particle *sawfa* or *sa* immediately preceding the present tense (see 15/12):

\[ \text{sawfa/sa naqām bi taḥbīq jadwal ar-rawātīh al-jādīd qarībān.} \]

We can form a negative future with *sawfa lā*:

\[ \text{sawfa lā yudribūn.} \]

But this is not very common. We shall study later a commoner negative future.

12. *qāla yaqūlu*

The verb *qāla yaqūlu* is unique in that its conjunction for indirect speech is ‘*inna*, not ‘*anna* as for other verbs of speech:

\[ \text{‘9lanū ‘innahum muwāfiqūn.} \]

but:

\[ \text{qālū ‘innahum muwāfiqūn.} \]

13. Sentence structure: questions

In written Arabic, questions are introduced by an interrogative word. Questions inviting an answer other than *yēs* or *mēm* are introduced by the appropriate interrogative word, usually a pronoun or adverb such as in paragraph 6 above.

Questions inviting the answer *yēs* or *mēm* must be introduced by one of the following interrogative particles:

\[ \text{hāl (for affirmative questions only)} \]

\[ \text{‘a (for affirmative or negative questions)} \]

\[ \text{dafa‘t al-’ujūr.} \]
We introduce indirect questions either by one of the interrogatives listed in Paragraph 6 above, or (for yes/no questions) by هل or إذا mā 'idha:

لا تعرف هل إذا تصل قريبًا. lä na9rif hal/mā 'idha tašil qariban.

The indirect speech rule (4/7) applies.

14. 'iyyā-
The written equivalent of the particle iyyā- (see 11/17) is ... إيا ... 'iyyā- (NB: It has initial hamza, not a weak vowel). It is used in written Arabic when there are two direct-object pronouns:

سألونا إيا بعد المؤتمر. sa’alūnā ‘iyyāhu ba9da l-mu’támar.

They asked us (about) it after the conference.

but not otherwise; the rule given in 11/17 does not apply. Compare written and spoken forms:

شرح لنا. sharahhu lana. (sharah lana yyā.)

This particle is far less common in written than in spoken Arabic.

15. التمارين

1. Read aloud:

هل كتبت الوزارة حجوانا إيا؟

hal katabat al-wizāra jawāban ‘iyyān?

ان حل المشكلة يظهر لنا غير ممكن.

(a) mā ra’ yuка ḥawl jadwal al-‘abdāl al-jāriyya?

(b) هل تريد الإدارة استناف المقاصد؟

(c) إذا مسرورون جدًا باقتراحكم حول مقابل الشغل الإضافي.

(d) أما تسلمت التقرير؟ إذا أرسلنا قبل اسبوعين.

2. Write:

مَاذا لا توافق النقادة على اقتراحنا خصوص التعويض؟

(a) mā ra’ yuка ḥawl jadwal al-‘abdāl al-jāriyya?

(b) هل نارتام جدول الأرامل الامام القبلة؟

(c) 'inna sh-sharika lā turūd tašiq ħādhihi l-‘arqām al-jadīda.
(d) sa yastaghriq al-‘idrāb waqtan qasīran faqat li 9adam ta’yid an-niqābatayn.
(e) ’immana na9tābir ṣalab al-9ummāl ghayr maqbul.

3 Repeat the sentences of Ex. 2 in spoken Arabic:
e.g.: li mādhā lā tuwāfiq an-niqāba 9ala qītālāna bi khusūsh at-tawīd?
   – <laysh an-niqāba mā twāfiq 9ala qītālāna bi khusūsh at-tawīd?>

4. Make negative:
e.g.: (c) (b) (a)
   (d) (e)
   (d)
   (e)
   (a)
   (e)

5. Make a question based on the underlined word or expression:
e.g.: (a) (b) (c) (d)
   (d)

6. Recast the sentence, beginning with the verb:
e.g.: (a) (b) (c) (d) (e)

7. Repeat the sentences of Ex. 6, beginning each one with: 
e.g.: (a) (b) (c) (d) (e)
Lesson 22
Petroleum

1. Sentence Examples
   (a) استكشفنا في عشرين ثانين درسًا

   `tamm istikshaf haddha l-haql qabra 9ishrin sana wa hafrana ’awwal bi’r ta’rifibya 9ala bu9d thamaniya kilumitrat min as-sahil ba9da sanatayn.

   This field was explored twenty years ago, and we drilled the first test well at a distance of eight km from the coast two years later.

   (b) نفط

   `yamurr an-naft taht daghth tabari ’ila ma’atjet al-’intaj bi wasiatan ’anahib thabita fa min al-ma’atja nadakhkhulu bi tulumbat hatta n-naqila.

   The crude oil travels (passes) to the production station under natural pressure through fixed pipes, and (does) from the station we pump it (with pumps) to the tanker.

   (c) جهاز أجهزة

   `jihaz ’ajhiza II to separate

   takrir refining

   jazza’a II to separate

   zayt zuyit oil

   zayt kham crude oil

   kasr kusur fraction
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>زفت</td>
<td>bitumen, tar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>شحم</td>
<td>to lubricate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تشحيم</td>
<td>lubrication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ديزل</td>
<td>diesel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بترين</td>
<td>petrol, gasolene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>كيروسين</td>
<td>kerosene, paraffin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>غاز</td>
<td>gas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the refinery they separate the crude into its heavy fractions such as bitumen, wax and lubricating oils, and light fractions such as diesel, gasolene, kerosene and gas.

At the same time, the chemical products for use in industry are separated. With the passage of time, the production of petrochemicals has become much more important than previously for the economy of the oil industry.

3. Demonstratives

In the written demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, only the dual forms vary.
for case (two forms for three cases):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>this/these</td>
<td>هـذَا hādha</td>
<td>m./f. هـؤلاء hāʾulāʾi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that/those</td>
<td>ذَلِك dhālika</td>
<td>m./f. أُوْلَئِكَ ʿulāʾika</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>these two/both these</td>
<td>هـذَاـن hādāni</td>
<td>f. هـائِن hātāni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>ذَانِكَ dhānika</td>
<td>f. تائِنَكَ tānikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc./gen.</td>
<td>هـذَاـن hādāni</td>
<td>f. هـائِن hātāni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>those two/both those</td>
<td>ذَانِكَ dhānika</td>
<td>f. تائِنَكَ tānikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>ذَانِكَ dhānika</td>
<td>f. تائِنَكَ tānikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc./gen.</td>
<td>ذَانِكَ dhānika</td>
<td>f. تائِنَكَ tānikā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The written demonstrative is used exactly in the same way as its spoken counterpart. The unwritten long ā can be pointed with small 'alif:

هـذَا hādha

'ulāʾika has an alternative spelling أُوْلَئِكَ.

4. Subjunctive

The subjunctive tense (in full terminology, the subjunctive mood of the present tense) is used for certain common structures. To form the subjunctive, take the present tense and:

- change the full-form ending -u to -a (pronounced in short pronunciation only before a suffix):
  - اَکْتِبَّ aktuba
  - يَکْتِبُ yaktuba (etc.)
- drop the final syllables نـ -na (2nd person f. sing.m, 2nd/3rd persons pl.) and نـ -ni (dual):
  - تَکْتِبُ taktubā
  - يَکْتِبُ yaktubā
  - تَکْتِبُ taktubā
  - يَکْتِبُ yaktubā

These rules are valid for all verbs, Forms I-X, IQ and IIQ, with a sound final root letter. Note especially the silent 'alif of وـ -ū which is not written before a suffix.

**Negative future.** The particle لـن لَن wanaylā'ūš is followed by a subjunctive verb. This is commonly used as a negative of سـوِف sawfa yabda 'ūna l-intāj. Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>سـوِف سوِف</th>
<th>لـن لَن wanaylā'ūš</th>
<th>They will (not) start production.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sawfa yabda 'ūna l-intāj</td>
<td>لـن لَن wanaylā'ūš</td>
<td>لـن لَن wanaylā'ūš</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clauses of purpose.** Clauses expressing purpose are mostly introduced by the one of the conjunctions (many of them synonyms, as you see):
Do not confuse 'an with 'anna (21/8). 'an does not take a pronoun suffix.

The verb expressing the purpose stands in the subjunctive in written Arabic:

اَرْسَلْنَا التَْقَرْرَيْر لِكِيْ يَنْظُرُوا النَّتَائِج

We sent the report for them to (so that they should) see the results.

اَوْفَقْنَا التَْلَمْبَات لِلْحُزُوْج

We stopped the pumps so that the pressure would not increase.

Indirect command and request. See 7/15. The conjunctions 'an dhat ... notō (NB stress) introduce indirect command and request, expressed in written Arabic with the subjunctive:

تاَلَبْنَا مِنْهُمْ اَنْ يَبْدَأُوا الْخُفْر

We asked them (not) to start (so that they should (not) start) the drilling.

The clause following any of these purpose or indirect-command conjunctions has verbal-sentence structure (21/10):

إِسْتَعْمَلْنَا الْتَْلَمْبَاتُ اِذْدَيْعَّا لِيَكَيْ يَاسَمَحُ لِلْحَذَاْرَةَ الْإِتِْجَالٍ.

We used extra pumps so that the drillers might resume production.

5. Auxiliary verbs

Many written verbs when used as auxiliaries are followed by 'an plus the dependent verb in the subjunctive. Important auxiliaries of this type include:

- some used personally (i.e. with a 1st-, 2nd- or 3rd-person subject):
  
  اِسْتَعْمَلْنَا عَلَى تَْلَمْبَاتُ أَنْ يَسْمَحُ لِلْحَذَاْرَةَ الْإِتِْجَالٍ.
  
  We used extra pumps so that the drillers might resume production.

- some used impersonally (see below), the three commonest being:
  
  يَجِبُ اِنْ يَضَعُّوا الْأَطْلُمَمَاتُ إِضَافَةً لِلْكِيْيْ تَْنَافُ الْحَذَاْرَةَ الْإِتِْجَالٍ.

  وَلا يَسْتَطِبُ اِنْ يَبْدَأُوا الْخُفْر.

  لَا يَسْتَطِبُ اِنْ يَنْظُرُوا النَّتَائِج.

  وَلَا يَسْتَطِبُ اِنْ يَفْضُّلُوا النَّتَائِج.

  لَا يَسْتَطِبُ اِنْ يُفَضِّلُوا النَّتَائِج.

The clause following 'an has verbal-sentence structure.
For كان يريد, the continuous past is preferred to the past:

كنا نريد ان نساعدكم.

yajib, yajüz and yumkin are always third person m. sing.

They have two uses; either in an impersonal structure:

يجب اني اساعدكم ان ترسله.

You must/may/might send it. (dt is obligatory/permitted/likely that ...

or the person affected can be expressed as the object, thus:

يجب على يجوز لنائينا ان يدعمه.

كان يجب (عليه) ان نستقبله.

6. In each case, an alternative structure is often used to replace the conjunction +
verb with a verbal noun for the desired/preferred/obliged/permitted/likely etc.
action. This verbal noun is always definite.

Examine and compare (V = conjunction + verb; N = verbal noun):

V: ما استطاعوا ان يفعلوا به.

They could not (dhat they) contact him.

N: ما استطاعوا الاتصال به.

They could not contact (were not capable of contact with) him.

V: كان يجب ان نتخذ اجراءات ضرورية.

We had to (dt was obligatory that we) take urgent measures.

N: كان يجب علينا اتخاذ اجراءات ضرورية.

It was necessary for us to take urgent

6. Comparison of adjectives

See 9/13, 14. All the rules for using the model 'akbar (etc.) for the comparative of
simple adjectives are valid also for written Arabic. The feminine superlatives ending in -a are written with ‘alif maqṣūra, except for the superlative ٠٢٠ ﺍﻟﻌﻠﻴﺎ(see 18/2, 3):

٠٢٠ ﺍﻟﺼﻐﺮﻯ ﺁﺳﻴﺎ

The comparative of derived adjectives is different from the spoken construction. In written Arabic we use the comparative اُﻛْﺜِﺮ’akθar or اُﺷْﺪ’ashadd; not following the adjective, but preceding the corresponding noun (verbal noun if the adjective is a participle), in the indefinite accusative, thus:

٠٢٠ ﺍﻟﻜﻞ ﻣﻦ اُﻛْﺜِﺮ ﺑﺴﻬﻮﻟﺔ ﺍﳌﺸﻜﻠﺔ ﻫﺬﻩ ﺣﻠﻠﻨﺎ

Here tanwîn is an adverbial form, and is therefore pronounced.

9. Comparison of adverbs

For adverbs compounded with a noun, we form the comparative by putting اُﻛْﺜِﺮ’akθar after the noun, which must be indefinite:

٠٢٠ ﺑِﺳِﻬْﻮﻟَﺔ، ﺑِﺳِﻬْﻮﻟَﺔ،

 fácil (with ease), more easily (with more ease)

٠٢٠ ﺑِﻠَﻀِﺒَﻂ، ﺑِﻠَﻀِﺒَﻂ،

 precisely, more precisely (with precision/more precision)

For common adverbs ending -an, the comparative is the same as that of the adjective from which it is derived: ﻓُﻠِﻴَﻟَا ﺗَّأَﻗِلَ’الكثر, ٠٢٠ ﺑِلِإِ الانترنت /’الكثر, ٠٢٠ ﺑِإِ ﺷِدَّٰﺩ’الكثر. With less common adverbs of this type it is often better to use the device shown above:

٠٢٠ ﺑِﳌَﻮْعِدٍ، ﺑِﳌَﻮْعِدٍ،

 fast, faster (with more speed)

٠٢٠ ﺑِدِراٰ ﺑِدِراٰ

 or ٠٢٠ ﺑِدِراٰ with the appropriate comparative adjective:

٠٢٠ ﺑِدِراٰ ﺑِدِراٰ

 For the superlative, we must rephrase: اُﻛْﺜِﺮ ﻣَن ﻣَن

 حَﻠَلْنَا ﻣَن ﺛَمَّ ﺛَمَّ ﺛَمَّ ﺛَمَّ

 Here tanwîn is an adverbial form, and is therefore pronounced.

10. ﻗُدّ

In Lesson 15 we learned the use of ﻗُدّ with the past tense. ﻗُدّ is a synonym of ﻗُدّ in this usage:
قد تمت المفاوضات امس.

قد (not laqad) with the present tense means 'perhaps':

قد يحل المشكلة بتأييدكم.

التمارين

NB.: During this lesson we have progressively shown less pointing with shadda and fatha tanwin. From this paragraph onwards, this pointing will be further reduced.

1. READ ALOUD:

تنتح الشركة منتوجات بترولية مختلفة.

tuntij ash-sharika mantajjat bitroufiya mukhtaliif.

(а) ظلنت أنه من الضروري أن يستمر البحث.
(б) اهتممت بدراسة الوثيقة اهتماماً كاملاً.
(в) يقوم قسم الهندسة بدراسة الأرقام.
(г) هل تستطيع الشركة تحديد تطبيقات أسماها?
(д) يخبرنا ممثل شركة التسويق بأنها لن توظف أي ممثل اضافي خلال الصيف.

2. WRITE:

e.g.: lā yastatfū al-muhandisūn 'an yabda’u l-9amalyyāt az-zilzaliyya qabla ntihā’ al-'amār.

لا يستطيع المهندسون ان يبدأوا العمليات الزراعية قبل انتهاء الأطرار.

(a) yajūz li sh-sharika stri'mal jihāz ḥafīr thāliṯīth fi ṭālat iktishāf ihityāfyūt 'iddaiyya fi l-qiṭāf al-janūbī.
(b) 'īnna t-taswīq l-tajrī bi suhūla thāt tilka ẖurūf al-fānnīyya.
(c) yumkin ‘an yastaghriq al-hāfīr at-tajribī waqtan ġāfiwil.
(d) laqad bāwalat al-buldān al-muntija li n-naft takhifī’ intājiha.
(e) yajūz lana ‘an nastahlik ‘akthar mimma stahlakhu fi s-sanati l-mādiyya.

3. RECAST THE SENTENCE, BEGINNING WITH THE EXPRESSION GIVEN IN PARENTHESES:

e.g.: يجوز أن يصل اليوم. ← يجوز أن يصل اليوم.

(يوجوز) يكتبون الجواب هذا الأسبوع.

(لا يستطيع) يقول في المبلغ.

(تريد) الوكالة تقوم باستخدامها بالكوبر.

(لا نتعاون في هذا الأمر.

(هكينان) هل نتكلم مع السلطات موضوع؟
4. Make plural:

e.g.:

- كان رئيس القسم يدرس الموضوع وقتاً طويلاً.
- كان رؤساء الأقسام يدرسون المواضيع وقتاً طويلاً.

انني مشغول جداً صباحاً.

لا يمكنك أن تجد مشكلة في مثل هذه المسألة.

ما كان مستعداً أن يدفع المبلغ.

لا يزال الحفر التجاري غير منتج.

أن الجانبين يحاولان أن يتعاونان.

5. Recast the sentence, using a conjunction + verb:

e.g.:

يجب عليه تغيير سياسته. — يجب عليه أن يغير سياسته.

يطلبون مناتعاوننا.

لماذا لا يريد الاستفادة من هذه الفرصة؟

تفضل الشركة تطبيق إجراءات أخرى.

ماذا فهمت من قوله؟

يجب عليك تعبر عن رأيك.

6. Put the correct form of هذة (etc.) and ذلک (etc.) with each noun or noun expression:

e.g.: سيارة هذة السيارة، ذلک السيارة:

(ب) سيارتان

(أ) مدير البنك

(د) مدرس

(ب) شخص

(أ) وقت
الدرس الثالث والعشرون
ad-dars ath-thālith wa l-9ishrûnī Lesson 23
من الصححف min as-ṣuhuf
From the Newspapers

NB.: In the reading passage of this lesson we meet a typeface used in the press.

للقراءة

(a) منظمة الصحة العالمية munaḍḍamat aṣ-ṣīḥa l-9ālamiya

World Health Organisation, WHO

Cardim min qādim min arriving from

الإمارات (العربية) المتحدة al-ʾimārāt (al-9arabīya) al-muttāhida

United Arab Emirates

شقيق شقيق qshaq qshaqāʾiq sister-(state etc.)

وصل الى بيروت مساعد المدير الإقليمي لمنظمة الصحة العالمية لشرق البحر الأبيض المتوسط قادمًا من دولة الإمارات المتحدة الشقيقة. وفرض الزارة يتعلق بالجولة التي يقوم بها المدير في المنطقة لتفتيش مشاريع المنظمة.


(b) التواجها V ᵗ‘ila to make/head for

mutawajjiha ᵗ‘ila (heading) for

āblūs Tripoli

wafd wafūd delegation, mission

wizārī ministerial

al-lādhi ilī ministerial

منظمة الدول المصدرة للنفط aṣ-ṣīḥa al-muṣādara li n-naft (‘oubek) Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)

نفي ينفي nafī deny, to repudiate

نفي ينفي nafī denial, repudiation
غادر العاصمة امس متوجهًا إلى طرابلس تحت رياضة وزير
شؤون البترول وفد البحرين إلى اجتماعات المؤتمر الوزاري
الذي ستعقد منظمة الدول المصدرة بالنفط (أوبك) في العاصمة
الليبية غداً. وقال الوزير الى مثلي الصحافة الوطنية
والدولية قبل المغادرة أنه ينفي نفيًا شديدًا الأدعاء ان قضية
القرقس الإنتاج تكون أهم موضوع البحوث.

Led by (أ)nder the leadership of) the Minister of Petroleum Affairs,
the Bahrain delegation left the capital yesterday for Tripoli for the
meetings of the ministerial conference to be held by the Organisation
of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) in the Libyan
capital tomorrow. Before departure,
the minister told representatives of
the national and international press
that he strongly denied the allega-
tion that the question of reducing
production will be the main topic
discussion (in the discussions).

(c) أبو ظبي=
سعادة
المقررة عقده
مقرّ مقرّ
امانة
قائد يقود
نائبًا عن
الPortfolio: Abu Dhabi
Finance
Board of Directors
Headquarters
Secretariat
Chief to lead, to head
Deputy for

غادر أبو ظبي صباح امس سعادة وزير المالية والنقل على
رأس وفد دولة الإمارات للإمارات السنوية لجلسات الاقتصاد
المالي المقررة عقبها بمقر الأمانة العامة لجامعة الدول العربية
بعد غدا. ويقود السفارة ووزير المواصلات والنقل نائبًا عن سعادة
وزير الاقتصاد والتجارة.

ghādar 'abū ẓābī 'abū ṣabāḥ 'ams sa компаний
His Excellency the Minister of
Communications and Transport left Abu Dhabi yesterday morning heading the Emirates delegation to the annual meeting of the Arab Economic Council which it has been decided to hold at the headquarters of the General Secretariat of the League of Arab States the day after tomorrow. In leading the delegation the Minister is deputising for H. E. the Minister of Economy and Trade.

(d) 

| جيري جيري | jara yajrī I | jara yajrī | jara yajrī I | | \( \text{امريكي} \) | \( \text{camayrkī} \) | \( \text{camayrkī} \) | \( \text{camayrkī} \) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| بديل | baddala II | to exchange | exchange | exchange |
| طور | tawwara II | to develop | development | development |
| موارد موارد | mawrid mawārid | resource | resource | resource |
| طاقة | tāqa | energy | energy | energy |
| انتم | \( \text{atamma IV} \) | to conclude/complete | to conclude/complete | to conclude/complete |

Talks have been going on (following) for a month between the United States of America and Japan with a view to concluding an agreement for the exchange of technical information concerning the development of new energy resources. It is likely that both governments will conclude negotiations on (following) the matter soon.

2. Relative pronoun

The written equivalent of \( \text{illī} \) is \( \text{allādhī} \), which agrees in gender and number with its antecedent, but varies for case only in the dual:
The double ل lām written in the dual and in the feminine plural is pronounced like the ل lām-shadda elsewhere.

allādhī (etc.) is used exactly as is ء illī in spoken Arabic:

hādhihi hiya l-wathīqa llāti qa'lat 9unwānahu fiha.

ئ hishiyī is pronounced as ل lām elsewhere.

man allādhī mas'īl 9an hādha?

When the antecedent is the whole preceding clause, we provide an all-purpose antecedent, al-amr:

اللامي al-amr allādhī 9aqqad mufādālatina.

3. Final-weak verbs

Look again at Lesson 8 to identify these verbs. Whereas in spoken Arabic this sub-class includes also verbs with final root letter hamza, in written Arabic it does not (see 20/5). The final root letter of all written final-weak verbs is و wāw or ي yā.

4. The two tenses of final-weak verbs have, in the first and second persons sing, and pl., the usual endings (i.e. those of the sound verbs, as in spoken Arabic). Short pronunciation operates with these endings as usual. The only likely difficulty is the pronunciation and spelling of the final root letter.

5. Form I of final-weak verbs

In 8/7, we have instructions concerning the form of the final root letter in the past tense. For the written final-weak verbs, read those instructions as follows:
Past:
- for 〈ay〉 (1st and 2nd persons sing. and pl.):
  in final-wāw و verbs: -aw-; in final-yā‘ ي verbs: -ay-
- for 〈-a〉 (3rd person m. sing.):
  before personal endings -at and -ā, the root letter disappears as in spoken Arabic
  (final-weak verb rule, 8/10). It disappears also before the feminine dual ending -atā.

(For verbs of the type نسي nāsiya [nisī, 8/9], read the three indents mentioned as 〈-i, -i and -a' root letter disappears〉 respectively.)

For the present tense, substitute the form of the final root letter given in 8/8 as follows:

Present:
- final-wāw و verbs: -ū
- final-yā‘ ي verbs: -ī
- final-yā‘ ي verbs like نسي ينسى nāsi yansa I: -a

These are dropped before the personal endings -īna, -īna.

6. The written language pronounces ay and aw for ī and ū respectively in many positions; but ī and ū are used and accepted by almost all educated speakers even if not always strictly correct.

7. Important final-weak verbs in Form I, in both tenses (full written pronunciation, for the record):

**Final root letter و wāw:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>رجا يرجو</td>
<td>9a ya9fū l to excuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>دعا يدعو</td>
<td>9a ya9fū l to excuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عفا يعفو</td>
<td>9afawta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عفونتا</td>
<td>9afawat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عفونتم</td>
<td>9afawat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عفنتا</td>
<td>9afawt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عفت</td>
<td>9afat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: m. عفونا, f. عفونتا

9afawā, f. عفونتا 9afatā
ta9fū
3rd person dual: m. ya9fuwānī, f. ta9fuwānī

Final root letter ي yā’:

rama yarmī to throw
jara yajrī to flow
nafa yanfū to deny, repudiate
ḥaka yahkī to narrate*
masha yamshī to walk

* NB meaning. The written verb 'to speak' takallama V.

Past:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{3rd person dual: m. mashayā, f. mashatā} & \\
\end{array}
\]

Present:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{3rd person dual: m. yamshiyānī, f. tamshiyānī} & \\
\end{array}
\]

Final root letter ي yā’, pattern nāsiya:

nāsiya yansa to forget
bāqiya yabqa** to remain
rādīya yarda bi to approve of, be satisfied with
lāqiya yalqa to meet

** This verb can have an accusative complement.)

Past:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{3rd person dual: m. nāsiyā, f. nāsiyātā} & \\
\end{array}
\]

Present:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{3rd person dual: m. nāsa, f. nāsawna} & \\
\end{array}
\]
LESSON 23

3rd person dual: m. yansayíni, f. yansayíni

Final root letter ی, with -a in both principal parts:

Past:

سعي يسعى إلى
sa9a yas9a یلا to strive for
سعيت
sa9ayt
سعين
sa9ayn
سعي
sa9a
سعا
sa9aw
سعت
sa9at

3rd person dual: m. سعا, f. سعتا sa9atā

Present:

سعي
tas9a
تسعون
tas9awna
تسعين
tas9ayn
يسعي
yas9a
يسعون
yas9awna
تسي
tas9a

3rd person dual: m. يسعيان yas9ayīni, f. يسعتا yas9ayīna

8. Certain spelling rules apply, for final -a in Form I:

- When final root letter ө wāw changes to a, it is always spelt with ی alif. See رجا etc. in paragraph 7 above.
- When final root letter ی yā changes to a, it is spelt with ی alif maqṣūra when no suffix follows, but with ی alif before a suffix (since ی alif maqṣūra occurs only finally):

نفی
nafa he denied _but:_
نفاه
nafahu he denied it

9. Increased forms

The principal forms of the increased forms have only the endings ی -a or ی -i, the vocalised final root letter following the final-weak verb rule (8/10):

II

ربّك يرَّب
rabba yurabbī

III

نادي ينادي
nada yunaddī

IV

أعطي يعطي
‘a9a yu9 FIFA

V

talaqa yatalaqqa ro acquire, to receive
talaqqa yatalaqqa

VI

تعاق بتعاق
ta9a yata9aafa

VII

لغدي يلغدي
ingadda yingaddī to be finished

VIII

اشترى يشتري
ishāra yashāri (NB stress in present)
10. Participles of final-weak verbs, Form I

The masculine active participle of final-weak Form I is anomalous:

Root َرِمَيِّ (ارمي) َرِمَيِّ rāmī, َأَرِمَيِّ (أرمي) IV to satisfy:

m. sing. indefinite: َرَمَي َأَرَمَي (ارمي) َأَرَمَي rāmī َأَرَمَي
m. sing. definite: َرَمِّي (ارمي) َأَرِمَي (أرمي) َأَرِمَي rāmī َأَرِمَي
m. pl.: َرَمَيْنَانِ َأَرِمَيْنِ (ارمي) َأَرِمَيْنِ (أرمي) َأَرِمَيْنِ rāmī َأَرِمَيْنِ
f. sing.: َرَمْيَةِ َأَرِمَيْةِ (ارمي) َأَرِمَيْةِ rāmī َأَرِمَيْةِ
f. pl.: َرَمَيْتِينِ َأَرِمَيْتِينِ (ارمي) َأَرِمَيْتِينِ (أرمي) َأَرِمَيْتِينِ rāmī َأَرِمَيْتِينِ

These are the nom. forms (with also the gen. of the masc. pl.). The other forms, including the dual, are too rare to concern us.

It is to this group that participles like the following belong:

َفَاضِ (لفاضي) َفَاضِ fādī (الفاضي)
َمَاضِ (لماضي) َمَاضِ mādī (الماضي)
َمَاشِ (لماشي) َمَاشِ māshī (الماشي)
َجَازِ (لجاري) َجَازِ jāriz (الجاري)

The Form I passive participle has the patterns َمَرْجُوَ for final-wāw verbs and َمَنْسِيَ for final-ya’ verbs. Otherwise it is regular:

Root َفَرَجِّي (فرجي) َفَرَجِّي marrīj َسَجِّي (سجي) َسَجِّي mansīy
Root َسَنِّي (سنني) َسَنِّي marrīj َسَجِّي (سجي) َسَجِّي mansīy
Root َفَنِّي (فني) َفَنِّي marrīj َسَجِّي (سجي) َسَجِّي mansīy

It is common to ignore the ending of the indefinite form in pronunciation and to pronounce the definite form ending throughout.

11. Participles of final-weak verbs: increased forms

In Forms II-X, the active participle has the same endings as in Form I:

Root َرِضِيَ (رضي) IV to satisfy:

m. sing. indef.: َمِرْضِيَ (مرضي) mūrdīn
m. sing. def.: َمِرْضِيَ (مرضي) al-mūrdī
f. sing.: َمِرْضِيَةِ (مرضية) (al-)mūrdīya
In the passive participle, the indefinite m. sing. has fatha tanwin:

Root  ﱼا,  ﱣсталث, X:
  m. sing. indef.:  ﱣсталث
  m. sing. def.:  ﱣсталث

Root  ﱣرث,  ﱣيرث, II:
  m. pl.:  ﱣرث, ﱣيرث
  f. sing.:  ﱣرث, ﱣيرث
  f. pl.:  ﱣرث, ﱣيرث

The comment made at the end of paragraph 10 above applies here.

12. Verbal nouns of final-weak verbs

The spoken Arabic models for the verbal nouns are all valid for written Arabic, except Forms V and VI, whose verbal noun has the same endings as the masculine singular active participle:

- تلپق من تلپق (تالاجغا V) to acquire:
  تلپق من تلپق (تالاجغا V) acquisition

- تلپق من تلپق (تالاجغا VI) to encounter:
  تلپق من تلپق (تالاجغا VI) encounter

The comment made at the end of paragraph 10 above applies here.

13. Subjunctive of final-weak verbs

Derive the subjunctive of final-weak verbs also from the present tense. Take the present-tense endings and:

- change final -ا to -ا/-iya and و to -وا/-uwa (-iya and -uwa only in short pronunciation before a suffix, and not always then):
  لَلا يَتَسْتَتَعِفْ أَنْ يَنْفِه.  
  لَلا يَتَسْتَتَعِفْ أَنْ يَرْجَه.  

*Where appropriate, the stress moves back.

- change  أَيَن, أَيَن, -ينا/-awna respectively to -ا, -ي, -أَيَن and -ا/-aw (spelt و before a suffix):
  يَمْكِن أَنْ يَنسَوا.  

- leave other endings unchanged:
  لَن نَنسَه.  

We shall not forget it.
14. Use of the dictionary
When using a root-based dictionary, remember that the final root letter of a final-weak root must be و wāw or ك kāf; it will not be listed as ‘alif. Some final-weak verbs have alternative roots or principal parts in Form I, with either و wāw or ك kāf.

15. Pronoun suffixes
See paragraphs 8 and 9 above. The final-weak verb-endings ك kāf and ك-يا‘ are not ‘alif maqṣūra, so the ك kāf is retained before a suffix:

- ك kāf

* -ح hu becomes -ح hi also after verb-endings -ح, -ح or -ح (19/14, 16).

التمارين

1. Read aloud:
   e.g.:
   наржع منحكم القيام برداسة الوثائق قبل بحوثنا.
   (a) ان دراستنا لا تزال تجري قدمها وسننشر النتائج في الشهر المقبل.
   (b) تلقى اللجنة اعضاء الحكومة بعد البحوث الجارية.
   (c) لا يبقى إلا عدد صغير من التفاصيل يجب أن ننشرها.
   (d) يسعى مدراء البنك الى أن يشروا تقريرهم قبل رأس السنة.
   (e) علينا أن نستعین عن تعاون هذا المأمور.

2. Write:
   e.g.: kıma sharah al-mushrif, al-mawdū9 laysa basītān.
   ككما شرح المشرف الموضوع ليس بسيط.
   (a) tas ráa l-hukūma ’ila tanāyım al-mu’támar fi ’aqrab waqt mumkin.
   (b) tajri l-mufawādat alláf qāmat biha l-hukūmatan járyan ghayr murdīn.
   (c) man alládhī da9a l-mandūbīn li l-îjtimā9 al-îstithnā’ī?
   (d) ráhiya l-ma9lūmat alláf ṭalabat-ha l-’amāna minna?
   (e) nasi ‘a9dī al-wafd ’ahamm šay’ fī bāramāmājihim.

3. Put into the present tense:
   e.g.:
   رضي مندوب الشركة باقتراحتنا فوراً.
   - يرضي مندوب الشركة باقتراحتنا فوراً.
   نادت الحكومة مسؤولين عرفوا ماذا حدث.
   (a) اشروهم مهما احتاجوا إليه.
   (b) ما تمكننا من برمان على قوله.
   (c)
4. Join the two sentences as a relative expression:

- سيدي الرئيس إلى الوضع في السوق. هذا مهم جدًا.
- لماذا لا ينشرون التقرير؟ حضره المتخصص.

أداه. هل تصدق؟

دعا المدير المشرف. كان المشرف ينتظر خارج المكتب.

لا يمكن الاعتماد عليه. يقول مثل هذا.

ما صار للبنية؟ كان يسكن فيها.

5. Give the root under which each word is found in a root-based dictionary:

- دعوة → دعو
- الساعون → جاري
- المرض → يتلقون
- الباقي → يتلقون

---

(d) ما زال هذا ادعاءًا شديداً ضد احزاب المعارضة.
(e) نفوّد كل ما ادعينا.
Consult: In the lesson we read the style of writing known as ruqā. This is a common educated style of handwriting which you need to be able to read. The text is shown in a printed form of ruqā, with some handwriting. Note especially these final/isolated ruqā forms:

1. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>للفراءة</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ﺩﻴﺚ</td>
<td>ﻥﺪﳏ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻤﺤﺪ确切ب</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﻤﺤﺪ确切ب</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ﺴ</td>
<td>ﺞ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dear Mr Brown,

'Iashkurukum qalbīyan 9ala 'l-ziyāra ilāfī quntum biha khitlāla l-'usbū9 al-mādīl wa 'l-9ātibī 'annahu sa tākūn furṣa li t-ta9āwun at-tadrībī l-muwaffaq baynana wa bayna sharikatikum.

Mr Peter Brown, Modern Communications Ltd., Amman.

Amman, 19 February.

Dear Mr Brown,

My sincere (cordial) thanks for the visit which you made last week. I consider that there will be opportunity for successful training cooperation between your company and ourselves.
أهمية التعاون بين القطاع الخاص والقطاع التعليمي، والذي أدى إلى معايير جديدة لتطوير 삶 وضمان مستقبل محترم للاجئين.

أعتقد أن مثل هذا التعاون يشكل فرصة ممتازة لتقديم الإرشادات بآليات جديدة وتعليمية، ونأمل أن يكون ما يتم من خلاله صيانة اكتساباً كبيراً للذين وصاهمتهم سابقاً.

نستطيع أن نقول أن التعاون عن قضايا الأساسي وفقاً لمساهمتنا.
wa bi l-’ishāra ’ilha l-’arqām allāf
sa’altumānī ‘anha hiya t-tāliya:
‘awwalan: ṣa’nadd al-mutakharrijīn fī
s-sana d-dirāsīya l-mādiya:
‘alif: bi l-kahraba ’arba9a u thalāthān.
bā’: bi t-tabrid wa t-takyīf thamāniya u
9ishrīn.
jīm: bi l-mikānīk khamsa u 9ishrīn.
al-majnūḏ: sab9a u thamānin, ’ay
tis9a u thamānin bi l-miyya.

With reference to the figures about
which you asked me, these (dheyā)
are the following:
1. Number of graduates last
academic year:
(a) in electricity: 34
(b) in refrigeration and
airconditioning: 28
(c) in mechanics: 25

Total: 87, i.e. 89%.

khāṭata Ilī to plan
36, 31, 22, 89

1. Number of candidates planned
for next academic year:
(a) in electricity: 36
(b) in refrigeration and
airconditioning: 31
(c) in mechanics: 22

Total: 89

qabūl acceptance
faqa yafqū I to excel
wa tafaqqudallū bi qabūl fū ‘i qa il-ihtrām
(see para. 2 below)

‘akhlaṣa IV to be sincere
mukhlīṣ sincere

wa tafaqqudallū bi qabul fū ‘i qa il-ihtrām

bakhṣa
1. حصر
2. ما بعد
3. لغة

مسير المساحة النائية الفنية
wa tafa’al bi qabul fī’iq al-ihatirām.

al-mukhlis, ‘ahmad hāshim,

Best wishes,

Yours sincerely, Ahmad Hashim,

Mudīr al-madrasah th-thānawīya l-fanniyya.

‘ilā sayyid Peter, yumnin ‘an tahtāj ‘ila

Mr Brown: Perhaps you need more

detailed information or figures; if

that case please (d’rāqam) do not

hesitate to contact me. In the

meantime, I remain

Yours sincerely, Ahmad.

mashār ‘idārī raqm sitta u ‘arba9īn.

min: mudīr shū‘un al-muwafqāfin.

‘ilā: jamii‘ al-9umnī’ilā

To: All Operatives (d’rāfā’).

Date: 13/2/20...

Subject: Payment of Overtime.

mashār ‘idārī raqm sitta u ‘arba9īn.

min: mudīr shū‘un al-muwafqāfin.

‘ilā: jamii‘ al-9umnī’ilā

To: All Operatives (d’rāfā’).

Date: 13/2/20...

Subject: Payment of Overtime.
LESSON 24

2. Correspondence

Formal letters commonly begin the text with with تعالى طيبة وبعد tahiya tayiba wa ba9du which is not directly translatable. The message of the letter then starts immediately; the addressee is not usually greeted by name or appointment.

In the text, we often use the 2nd person plural. Formal closures include:

وُفِضَّلُوا بِقِبْلَةٍ فَقِیْلَ الَاِحْتِرَامَ wa tafäddalū bi qabūl fā‘i‘q al-ihtirām

(please accept outstanding respect) Yours faithfully/Best wishes

ارجِو ان تقبلوا وافر الشكر 'arju‘ an tataqabbalū wā‘fīr ash-shukr

(ask you to accept abundant thanks) Please accept my warmest thanks.
ARABIC TODAY

**taqabbala** V to accept; **wafara yafiru** I to abound

A briefer, but still polite, closure is simply:

المخلص المخلص
al-muklis(a) (the sincere)

Yours sincerely

3. Office memoranda usually have neither salutation nor closure; like their European counterpart, they may open with, e.g.:

**刺客**

**보다**

**الإشارة**
al-'ishāra:

**التاريخ**
at-tārīkh:

**الموضوع**
am-mawdū'ā:

4. Informal letters may have a personal salutation such as

**احتي العزيز**/**عذبي الكريمة**

'dear...

or, with more respect but still cordial:

**استاذي المحترم**

**زميلي المحترم**

Dear (Respected) Tutor

Dear Colleague

each of which is followed by

**تقبيلة طيبة وبعد**

Greetings to all

or

**وسلامك يسلمكم قليبا**

**وسلامك يسلمكم قليبا**

With cordial greetings from ...

5. Numbers

The written numerals are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numerals 2 and 3 have alternative handwritten forms:

٢ or ﻦ

٣

The numerals are assembled from left to right, as in European numbers:

١٤٥٣ ١٤٥٣ ٢٠٨.٦٩٧ ٢٠٨.٦٩٧ ٢٠٨,٦٩٧

Moroccans, Algerians and Tunisians use the European numerals, which are now increasingly used throughout the Arab world.
6. The numbers as words are more complicated in written than in spoken Arabic. Many Arabs have difficulty with the written forms, and prefer to use the spoken forms even when reading aloud from a text. You are strongly advised to use the spoken form for pronouncing the numbers, and the numerals for writing them. From the written language we do need, however, to know the form of the noun used after the number. We study this below.

7. Numbers 2 to 10
See 4/11. Everything said there about the form and position of the noun is valid in writing, except that a noun following a number 3-10 is in the genitive plural, irrespective of its function in the sentence. This fact is, however, visible and audible only in the sound m. pl.:

\[ \text{wasal 'arba9a mubandis\text{\textperiodcentered}n.} \]
\[ \text{ma9a 'arba9a mubandis\text{\textperiodcentered}n} \]
Further, the rules for the written dual (19/9, 10) apply.

8. Numbers 11 to 19, and multiples of ten from 20 to 90
See 5/12. Everything said there about the form and position of the noun is valid in writing, except that a noun following a number 11-99 is in the accusative singular, irrespective of its function in the sentence. This fact is, however, visible and audible only with "fatha tanw\text{\textperiodcentered}n:

\[ \text{wasal 'ihd9ashr t\text{\textperiodcentered}liban.} \]
\[ \text{khl\text{\textperiodcentered}a khamst9ashr sanatan} \]
\[ \text{tis9in dou\text{\textperiodcentered}ran} \]
Further, the rules for the written dual (19/9, 10) apply.

9. When reading, you may encounter numbers written as words. Be prepared for the following phenomena:

- so-called ‘polarity’ or reverse agreement, i.e. the number has an apparently feminine form (with final \( \text{t\text{\textperiodcentered}marb\text{\textperiodcentered}u} \)) before a masculine noun, and an apparently masculine form (no \( \text{t\text{\textperiodcentered}marb\text{\textperiodcentered}u} \)) before a feminine noun:

\[ \text{اربعة طلاب، اربع طالبات} \]

- multiples of ten from 20 to 90: these follow the pattern of a sound m. pl. (\( -\text{\textperiodcentered}n/-\text{\textperiodcentered}en \))

\[ \text{عشرون مهندسا، مع عشرين مهندسا} \]

- a dual number loses its final \( -\text{\textperiodcentered}n \) before a noun, as in construct:

\[ \text{مع الفي شخص} \]

- the spelling of \( \text{m\text{\textperiodcentered}ya/m\text{\textperiodcentered}t} \):

\[ \text{مئة, less commonly} \]
10. Ordinal numbers
The ordinal numbers 1st to 10th are as in spoken Arabic, except that 2nd
ثناء/اثنائي follows the pattern of ملمعث etc. (23/10).
Written Arabic has ordinal numbers above أرنث The pronunciation given
below is an acceptable educated spoken variant for these words. Ordinals
11th to 19th agree in gender with the noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>m.</td>
<td>al-hādi 9ashar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f.</td>
<td>al-hādiya 9ashara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th</td>
<td>m.</td>
<td>ath-thānī 9ashar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f.</td>
<td>ath-thāniya 9ashara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13th</td>
<td>m.</td>
<td>ath-thālith 9ashar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f.</td>
<td>ath-thālitha 9ashara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(etc.). From 20th upwards, the tens, hundreds, thousands and millions have a
form identical with the cardinal number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20th m./f.</td>
<td>al-9ishrūn/īn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21st m.</td>
<td>al-hādi wa l-9ishrūn/īn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>al-9ishrūn/īn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100th</td>
<td>al-miyya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101st</td>
<td>al-miyya wa l-wāhid(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000th</td>
<td>al-‘alf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The press sometimes uses alternative forms for 100th and 1000th:

الألفية المئوية al-miyya wa l-wāhid(a)  
الألفية al-‘alf

The ordinal numbers can be represented thus in abbreviated form:

الدرس ال٤: ad-dars ar-rabi’9

11. ‘abjad
‘abjad means خيار Every letter of the Arabic alphabet has a
numerical value; this is equivalent to our use of Roman numerals to number a
series. The numerical values do not follow the alphabetical order. We need to
know only the first ten:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Numerical Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>١</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٢</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٣</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٤</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٥</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٦</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٧</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٨</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٩</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>١٠</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

أبجد هوّ حضيّ for which the mnemonic is the three words ‘abjad hawwaz ُحِضيّ. The last two
words have no meaning other than their use here. Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Numerical Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>١</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٢</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٣</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٤</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٥</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٦</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٧</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٨</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٩</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>١٠</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* with hamza to distinguish it from figure \.
12. Time

In written Arabic we use the ordinal number for all hours except ‘one o’clock’:

- الساعة الواحدة
- as-sā9u l-wāhida

but:

- الساعة الثانية
- as-sā9u th-thāniya

والنصف wa n-nisf, and all fractions have the article. For the rest the forms correspond to those of the spoken language:

- الـNich נהالساعة الخامسة والنصف
- as-sā9u l-khāmis wa n-nisf 5.30

- في الساعة السادسة والربع
- fi s-sā9a s-sādisa wa r-rub9 at 6.15

- قبل الساعة الحادية عشرة إلا-third
- qabla s-sā9a l-hādiya 9ashra ‘illa th-thulth before 10.40

- بعد الساعة الثانية عشرة وخمس دقائق
- ba9da s-sā9a th-thāniya 9ashra wa kham(s)a daq‘iq after 12.05

13. Calendar

Here is the spelling of the days of the week:

- يوم الجمعه، السبت، الأحد، الاثنين، الثلاثاء، الأربعاء، الخميس
- (formal pronunciation ath-thalithā‘, al-‘arba9ā‘. Little used.)

14. Decades

Decades are expressed so:

- التسعينات
- at-tisā9ā‘/at-tisā9iyā‘ the 90s

15. Vocative

In addition to the vocative particle يا ‘yā known to you, written Arabic has:

- أَيْنَهَا
- ‘ayyuha (m.), ‘ayyatuha (f.), which are used before a noun with the article:

- أَيْنَهَاُالْمَسْتَمِعُون
- ‘ayyuha l-mustami9ūn/
l-mushāhidūn al-‘a9izzā‘ Dear listeners/viewers

(the standard formula used by radio or television announcers, most of whom pronounce the middle word as in spoken Arabic):

- أَيْنَهَاُالْمَسْتَمِعُون
- ‘ayyuha l-mustami9ūn/l-mushāhidūn al-‘a9izzā‘

16. Anomalous nouns and adjectives

Certain nouns and adjectives have irregular case-endings. We need to know only those features which are written with letters of the alphabet, and are hence sounded in short pronunciation.
17. The first group is those nouns and adjectives having no \( ^\prime \) form (indefinite accusative). They are:

- all nouns and adjectives, m. or f., sing. or pl., having the ending \( ^\prime \)
  - sifar
  - hanra
- all nouns and adjectives on the pattern 'akbar:
  - aswad
  - akthar
- broken plurals on the patterns makāth or mafāth:
  - 'awāmir
  - madāris
  - tasābīh
  - talāmih

The grammatical term for these words is ‘diptote’. There are other diptote forms, but they are too rare to concern us.

\( ^* \)NB: ending, not final root letter. Where either \( ^\prime \) or \( ^\prime \) is a root letter, the word is regular. Note also that the indefinite accusative of such a word is written with fatha tanwin only, not \( ^\prime \):

\[ \text{ibtidâ’an, } \text{ijr’ân} \]

18. The second group is the 'ab group. When used as the theme of a construct, or when carrying a possessive suffix other than \( ^\prime \), the nouns 'ab and 'akh form their singular cases with written vowels which are always pronounced:

nom. 'ābi/akhi 
acc. 'ābi‘/akhi

When not in construct or when suffixed with \( ^\prime \), or when carrying no possessive suffix, these nouns have regular case-endings:

\[ \text{katab al-ab. } \text{hal ta9rif al-akh?} \]

19. \( \text{dhū} \)

The noun \( \text{dhū} \) means \( \text{possessor of} \) or \( \text{characterised by} \). It has a masculine and a feminine form. The m. s. has case-endings like those of \( 'ab \):
LESSON 24

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m. nom.</td>
<td>ḏu</td>
<td>ḏu wā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ḏa</td>
<td>ḏu wā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ḏā</td>
<td>ḏu wā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>ḏa</td>
<td>ḏaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>ḏa</td>
<td>ḏaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. nom.</td>
<td>ḏāt</td>
<td>ḏāt wātā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc./gen.</td>
<td>ḏāt</td>
<td>ḏāt wātā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This noun is used exclusively in (definite or indefinite) construct. The whole construct works as a compound adjective, the ḏu (etc.) agreeing in all respects with the qualified noun:

rajul ḏu māl a man of property
mas‘ala ḏu awmāna a matter of importance
ma9a ‘ashkhās ḏu thaqāfa with cultured people
ṭulamba ḏu qīwa kabīra a powerful pump

Note how the definite form is made. It is always only the attribute of the construct which can carry the article:

fi l-bayt ḏu l-mulh in the house with the annex

(For the record, in full pronunciation ḏu has the usual endings -u, -a and -i for the nom., acc. and gen. respectively, and ḏwāt has the usual sound endings -u [nom.] and -i [acc./gen.]. They are very rarely heard.)

Note also:

- the noun ḏu wātā ḏu wātā 'essentiality'
- the use of this noun as a synonym for nafs in the meanings the same and oneself
  ḏu/nafs ash-shay
  li ḏu/li nafsī
  al-i9timād 9ala ḏu/nafs

20. -in and -an

Certain final-weak participles (23/10, 11) are more often used as nouns than as adjectives. Important examples are:

Qādi (al-qādi) judge, pl. qudā
muḥāmin (al-muḥāmi) lawyer,
muḥāmin/muḥāmin
mustashfa (al-mustashfa) hospital,
mustashfayāt
A few other anomalous nouns follow a similar pattern:

- 

In English:

- Coffee-house,

Words with the pattern -an/-a have no case-endings in the singular.

Remember that the theme of a constuct also has definite form:

\[
\text{العربية} \\
\text{العربية} \\
\text{العربية} \\
\text{العربية} \\
\text{العربية}
\]

Qadhi al-mahkama al-`ulya the High Court judge

21.

1. Read aloud:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e.g.} & : & \text{18 مدينة} & \text{2000 دينار (b)} \\
\text{25 طالبا} & : & \text{10 ريالات} & \text{6 سنوات (e)} \\
\text{من أجل} & : & \text{100 و 2000 دينار} & \text{94% من السكان (j)} \\
\text{48 ساعة} & : & \text{بـ 365 يوما} & \text{بـ 10 مثلا} \\
\text{38 המתاسبة} & : & \text{18 مانيه} & \text{82 من} \\
\text{8 و 75 شريكا} & : & \text{70% ردودا} & \text{82% من} \\
\end{align*}
\]

2. Rewrite with the ordinal number in full:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e.g.} & : & \text{4-3-2-1 الطالب} & \text{الدورة 1-2-3-4} \\
\text{الدورة} & : & \text{الدرس 1-2-3} & \text{الساعة 1-2-3} \\
\text{الساعة} & : & \text{اليوم 1} & \text{اليوم 1} \\
\text{اليوم} & : & \text{الساعة 1} & \text{الساعة 1} \\
\end{align*}
\]

3. Put the correct form of ذو (etc.):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e.g.} & : & \text{ضيافه} & \text{ضيافة} \\
\text{ضيافة} & : & \text{غيال} & \text{عيان} \\
\text{عيان} & : & \text{رواي} & \text{رواي} \\
\text{رواي} & : & \text{السند} & \text{السند} \\
\text{السند} & : & \text{النسبة} & \text{النسبة} \\
\end{align*}
\]

4. Here is the handwritten draft of the office memorandum which we studied in paragraph 1(b) above. Read it aloud, then check your answer against the typescript and transcription:
5. Look again at the dialogue of Lesson 11. Write a brief letter to the General Manager of the Jordanian Plastics (البلاستيك) Company, thanking him for receiving you on the 19th of February. Say that you had a long discussion with the Production Supervisor, and that the visit to the shop floor was very useful. Ask the GM to express your thanks to the staff whom you met. You believe that the possibilities for cooperation are very good, and you will be in touch again shortly. Tell the GM that he should not hesitate to call you again if he thinks that there is any help which you can give him. Read your letter aloud.
The Transfer of Technology

1. 

حوَلَّ تَحوِيلَ تَكنُولُوجِيَّا

تَحِولَ تَكنُولُوجِيَّا

تَحِولَ تَكنُولُوجِيَّا

بَحِثَ يِبِحُتُ فِي أَعْلَى

جَبَّةِ حُرَاء

أَخِيُّاء

تَأِسِّيس

فَوَلَاد

اَلْمُحْرِّمَة

The possibility is now being studied of the transfer of technology from some industrialised countries to the oil-producing countries of the Middle East. Recently a number of experts examined the possibility of setting up factories with high energy consumption, such as steel and fertiliser factories.

عَلِمَ مِنْ تَلَكَ الْعُدَّاتَ اَلْقَابِلِةَ أَنْ تَكَالِيفَ الْتَحْوِيلَ لِلْإِنْتِشَّاَرَةِ لْيَلْقَلُ أَنْتَهَاءَ وَالْبِرْوَلَ لِلْبَلَادِ اَلْعَشْرَاءَ لاَ تَقَلُّ عَنْ تَكَالِيفَ تَحوِيلَ الصَّنَاعَةِ إِلَى مَوْارِدَ الْطاَقَةِ. فَتَدْنىِ الْحَكَمَاتَ الْعُربِيَّةَ أَنْ تَضَرَّعُ فيِّ المَفْاوضَاتِ عَلَى مُشَارِكَةِ هَامِهِ فيِّ تَأَسِّيسِ مَعْلَمْاتِ إِنْتِشَار Philosophical readings and studies
Transporting the gas and petroleum to the industrialised countries is not less than the cost of transferring the industry to the sources of the energy. The Arab governments intend to insist, in the negotiations, on a significant (important) participation in the setting up of such factories under conditions acceptable to them.

The Arab governments intend to insist, in the negotiations, on a significant (important) participation in the setting up of such factories under conditions acceptable to them.

The oil-producing countries do not need western countries' capital, but rather their expertise. From the point of view, access to guaranteed sources of energy is a reasonable condition for offering the necessary technical assistance to the Arab countries, and doubtless the Middle Eastern countries are looking for economic bases to replace gas and petroleum in future years. Arab investments in the west will not suffice for this purpose.

The oil-producing countries do not need western countries' capital, but rather their expertise. From the point of view, access to guaranteed sources of energy is a reasonable condition for offering the necessary technical assistance to the Arab countries, and doubtless the Middle Eastern countries are looking for economic bases to replace gas and petroleum in future years. Arab investments in the west will not suffice for this purpose.
LESSON 25

251

wājib necessary

tujāha opposite, facing, towards

ḥidda sharpness

tawattara V to be tense

tawattur tension

takhfīf hiddat at-tawattur reduction of tension

At the same time, the heads of government understand that it is indispensable to take preparatory measures for changing the economy of their countries. The governments see in these measures a necessary step towards the reduction of tension in the region in general.

في نفس الوقت يفهم رؤساء الحكومات ان لا بد من اتخاذ اجراءات تخليدية من اجل تغيير اقتصاد بلادهم. وترى الحكومات في هذه الإجراءات خطوة واجبة جهان تخليف حدة التوتر في المنطقة بصورة عامة.

We continued to remind him that...

ما زلنا نذكره بأن...

The governments see in these measures a necessary step towards the reduction of tension in the region in general.

and other verbs:

mā zāla lā yazālu 1 to continue (to do)
dāma yadāmu l still (to do)
9ada ya9ādu l to (do) again
9allā yaqālhu l to remain (doing)
sāra yāṣīru l to begin (doing)
istamarra X to continue (doing)
kāda yakādu (kid’t) I almost (to do)
bada’ u yabda’u l to begin (doing)

We continued to remind him that...

مَا زَلْنَا نَذْكِرْهُ بَعْنَا...
We referred again to ... ظلنا ننتظر. We continued to wait.

We continued to try to ...

This usage is identical to one of the circumstantial verb constructions.

The verb عاد '9adā IV followed by the verbal noun is an alternative to يعود 9ada ya9ădu l with the present tense:

- عدننا نقرأ تقرير اللجنة. '9adna qir'a taqr al-lajna.
- أعدنا قراءة تقرير اللجنة.

We re-read (repeated the reading of) the committee's report.

3. mā fī

One written equivalent of mā fī is لا lā with the accusative -a of the noun. This is used for general or abstract statements, many of which are set expressions:

- لا شكل من ان ... لا شاكا من ان... lā shakka min 'Anna ...
- لا بد من ... lā budda min ...
- لا شيء مهم من ذلك. lā šay'a 'ahamm min dhálika.
- لا حياة على القمر. lā hayāta 9ala l-qamar.

The accusative -a is always pronounced in this expression.

For concrete statements, a better expression is ليس هناك laysa (etc.) hunāka, which requires the nominative as the subject of ليس laysa (etc.):

ليس هناك مهندسون في القسم. laysa hunāka muhandisūn fi l-qism.

4. Time conjunctions

Here are the main written conjunctions used to introduce clauses of time:

- لانما lamma
- عندما 9indama 'lamma
- قبل ان qablā 'an 'qabl mā
- بعد ان ba9da 'an 'ba9d mā
- طلما hatta
- لاما as long as lamā
- بعد ان ba9da 'an/lamama wasal after/when he arrives/arrived

5. Doubly weak verbs

A doubly weak verb root has two weak root letters.

When the doubly weak verb has middle root letter و wāw or ي yā' and final root letter ي yā', the middle root letter stabilises:

نوؤ ينؤي nawa yarwi 'l nawa yimwi
In all other cases, each root letter of the verb follows its own typical pattern. The simplest way to learn the verbs is from tables.

Look again at 23/6. The comment concerning the pronunciation of the weak final root letter (ū for ay/aw) applies also to these verbs.

Common doubly weak verbs are given below, Form I first:

Root ﱄﻭ ﻲﻠﻳ  ﱄﻭ wáliya yal ī I to be next.

Commonest uses:

- ﻲﻠ ﻳﺎ ﻣ ( uğra) mā ya (in)
- ﻲﻠﻳ ﻤﺎﻛ kama yal ī as follows (see 12/9)

Root ﲕﺣ ﰢ ﰪ h  ya (to live (be alive))

Past: ﺕﻴﻴﺣ h  ya tu
- ﻤﺎﻴﺣ nā ya tu

3rd person dual: m. ﻲﺋﺎﺣ yā ya, f. ﻲﺋﺎﲝ yā yā

3rd person dual: m. ﻲﺋﺎﲝ yā yā, f. ﻲﺋﺎﲝ yā yā

*final root letter written as 'alif, since 'alif maqṣūra cannot follow yā’.

6. hamza in doubly weak verbs

Verbs with hamza and a weak final root letter, or with one weak root letter and final hamza, are classed as doubly weak. Each root letter again follows its own rules. Important examples are:

Root ﺟﺍﺀ ﺟﺎﺀ ﻲﺟﺀ jā’ā ya’ā’ī u I (’aja yajē):

- ﺝﻨ ﺝﻨ jinta jī’ta
- ﺝﻨ ﺝﻨ jinta jī’ta
- ﺝﻨ ﺝﻨ jinta jī’ta
- ﺝ ﺝ jāwā jā ‘āt
ARABIC TODAY

**Present:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd person dual: m.</th>
<th>3rd person dual: f.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: m. دمحمن لبيب دمحمن

 Jame بمه بمحمب بمحمب

jā'a yajī'u 1 bi is the written equivalent (and the origin) of ُjāb yijīb 1. In this context, note also تقدمُ ب tagaddama V bi do advanceُ (e.g. a proposal).

Root رَأَي يرُرى. رَأَي

**Past:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd person dual: m.</th>
<th>3rd person dual: f.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: f. رَأَي دمحمن لبيب دمحمن

Root رَأَي يرُرى. رَأَي

**Present:** irregular; middle root letter hamza dropped entirely:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd person dual: m.</th>
<th>3rd person dual: f.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
<td>دمحمن لبيب دمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
<td>نودمحمن نودمحمن</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd person dual: f. دمحمن لبيب دمحمن

This verb replaces مُشِّث يشِّثُ b in the meaning do seeُ

The comments made in 23/6, 14 are valid also here.

7. Increased forms

Important increased forms of doubly weak verbs are:

| Root letter hamza is dropped in both tenses in Form IV of this root. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| II                            | III               |
| راَي رَأَي رَأَي رَأَي رَأَي رَأَي | سَأَي سَأَي سَأَي سَأَي سَأَي سَأَي |
| III | IV |

Root letter hamza is dropped in both tenses in Form IV of this root.

| Root letter hamza is dropped in both tenses in Form IV of this root. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| V                            | X                 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |
| tawalli 1 tawalli 1 tawalli 1 | tawalli 1 tawalli 1 |

The comments made in 23/6, 14 are valid also here.
In roots with final root letter ٍو or ٍي، this root-letter follows the final-weak verb rule (8/10) in the increased forms.

8. Participles

To make the participles of a doubly weak verb, apply the rules dictated by each root letter, but treating also final root letter hamza as a weak letter in Form I:

Root نوى ينوي، نوي، nawa yanwī I:
- active m. ناوي (الناوي) nāwin (an-nāwī)
- f. ناويya nāwyā
- passive m. منوو، منوي manwī

Root جاء يجيء، جيء jā’a yajī‘u I:
- active m. جائي (الجائي) jā‘īn (al-jā‘ī)
- f. جاية jā‘īya

Root ساوي، سوي، sāwa III:
- active m. مساوي (المساوي) musāwin (al-musāwī)
- f. مساويya musāwīya
- passive m. مساوأ (المساوي) musāwan (al-musāwa)
- f. مساوأة musāwā

9. Verbal nouns and subjunctive

For these derivatives, throughout Forms I to X, the doubly weak verb follows the rules dictated by its final root letter:

Verbal nouns:
- I Root نوى، (irregular) نيّا niyya intention
- II سوي، تسوي، tāswiya settlement
- III سوي، مساوأ، musāwā* equality
- وئي، مواي، muwālā constancy
- V وئيل، توئيل (التوئي) tawallin (at-tawallī) assumption of office

*identical to the f. passive participle (see paragraph 8 above).

Subjunctive: see 22/4 and 23/13 (sound/final-weak verbs).

10.

1. Read aloud:

   e.g.: ٌعىر شمل ﺍهذي، يمته لنا لئم، لمان، لمان
   تارم لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو
   لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو
   لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو، لامك لى تامو

   (a) ٌعىر شمل ﺍهذي، يمته لنا لئم، لمان، لمان
2. Write:
   e.g.: mādhā tawī l-lajna t-tanfiḍhiyya 'an taʔmal min 'ajl taʔyīd iqtirahīna?
   (a) 'ināna naʔtābir ḥādhā l-iqtirāḥ 'ashadd taʔqīdan.
   (b) 'inna ḥall mushkilat at-tānmiyya tuhimm jāmīf ad-duwal al-muḥibba li
       s-salām ihtimāman 'asāsiyan.
   (c) tabda' al-ḫukūma tadrus mushkilat ziyyādat al-mustawradāt.
   (d) lā buḍdā min 'īḏādat kitābat at-taqīrī.
   (e) kayfa yumkin al-ḫukūma l-9amal fī ḥādhīhi ẓ-ẓurūf?

3. Repeat the sentences of Ex. 2 in spoken Arabic:
   e.g.: mādhā tawī l-lajna t-tanfiḍhiyya 'an taʔmal min 'ajl taʔyīd iqtirahīna?
   – šū ṭinwī l-lajna t-tanfiḍhiyya tiʔmal min 'ajl taʔyīd iqtirāḥna?

4. Rewrite the sentence, adding the auxiliary verb indicated:
   e.g.: یضرون على تطبيق شروط مقبولة. (ما زالوا)
   ماأكوا اقترحنا. (بدأوا)
   (a)
   يضرون على تطبيق شروط مقبولة.
   (b)
   (c)
   (d)
   (e)

5. Give the root under which each of the following words is found in a root-
   based dictionary:
   e.g.: برون ← رأي
   (a)
   (b)
   (c)
   (d)
   (e)
The United Nations

1. 

More than half a century after the United Nations Organisation was founded following the Second World War, it needs to review the role which it plays in areas (in what is related to tasks such as peace-keeping operations and settling disputes between member states).

More than half a century after the United Nations Organisation was founded following the Second World War, it needs to review the role which it plays in areas (in what is related to tasks such as peace-keeping operations and settling disputes between member states.)
وبالفعل غير عن انتقاد على عدم فاعليّة المنظمة ويشار إلى أنها لم تنجح في عدد من محاولاتها مثل البحث عن السلام والعدل في الشرق الأوسط وحروب أقليمية مختلفة وكافحة الإرهاب وغيرها.

And indeed criticism has been expressed of the organisation’s effectiveness. It was pointed out that it has not succeeded in a number of its attempts such as the search for peace and justice in the Middle East, various regional wars, the fight against terrorism, and others.

النجاح في بعض مجالات قد خفف نوعاً ما هذه الانتقادات ولكن هذه النتائج الناجحة تشكل في رأي عدد كبير من الحكومات أمثلة استثنائية. صرح ناطق باسم الدول النامية بأن الأمم المتحدة ما زالت نادياً حاضراً بسيطرة مجلس الأمن الذي يضم 5 عضواً غير أن القوة الفعلية فيه تتركز في اياض الدول الخمس الكبرى.

The success of the UN in some fields has somewhat softened these criticisms, but in the opinion of many governments these successful results are exceptional cases (examples). A spokesman for the developing countries declared that the UN is still a private club dominated by the Security Council which comprises fifteen members,
while the actual power (in it) is concentrated in the hands of the five big states with permanent membership.

While the actual power (in it) is concentrated in the hands of the five big states with permanent membership.

Several of the members have mentioned that a reorganisation of the international body is needed in the light of the new situation. They express the view that the new economic order, examined in the 70s, did not seem capable of implementation at that time,

but the new situation might make its realisation possible, given that the imbalance between the north (that is, the industrialised countries) and the south (i.e. the developing countries) is the most important cause of international instability.

The new situation might make its realisation possible, given that the imbalance between the north (that is, the industrialised countries) and the south (i.e. the developing countries) is the most important cause of international instability.
To this end, they are asking for a reconstitution of the organisation's rôle and a review of its internal relationships. Unfortunately this request has not taken into account the organisation's financial situation. It is well known that the UN is facing bankruptcy, with enormous debts. The UN depends on the support of the United States, whereas the United States herself pursues an independent policy.

2. *lam*; jussive tense

Examine the expressions in the text:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{لم يتحقق} & \quad \text{it did not succeed} \\
\text{لم يظهر} & \quad \text{it did not seem} \\
\text{لم يأخذ} & \quad \text{it did not take}
\end{align*}
\]

*lam* is a negative particle, not used in spoken Arabic, which is followed by a tense called the 'jussive'. *lam tanjah* is synonymous with *مَتَّحَجَ* but in written Arabic the structure with *lam* + jussive is mostly preferred to *مَا اَتَحَجَ* + past tense.

3. The jussive is easily formed, as follows:

**Sound, hamzated and initial-ْw verbs.** For these verbs the jussive is identical to the subjunctive without its fully-pronounced endings; another way of expressing
the formula for these verbs is that the jussive has the endings of the spoken Arabic present, plus the dual ending ـā. Examine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Jussive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>يكتبـه yāktubahu</td>
<td>يكتبـه yaktūbhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نأخذـها nā’khudhaha</td>
<td>نأخذـها na’khūdhha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>اجـه ajidahu</td>
<td>اجـه ajid-hu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hollow verbs.** For hollow verbs the jussive ending is the same as for sound verbs, but the weak middle root letter is shortened under the hollow verb rule (Lesson 6/4), also when there is no ending at all:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Jussive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>يقولـ ياقـila</td>
<td>يقلـ yāqul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بيعـ يابـī9a</td>
<td>يبيعـ yābi9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بيعـ يابـī9ā = يبيعـ yābī9ā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Doubled verbs.** Forms II and V of these verbs behave like sound verbs. In all other forms (including I), the jussive is identical to the subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jussive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>نحـتـل nahṭallahu II = نحـتـل nahṭallahu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Final-weak verbs.** Like the subjunctive, except that whenever the final weak root letter is the last written letter in the subjunctive, drop that root letter and substitute the corresponding short vowel (ـu for ـو, ـi for ـي, ـa for ـى):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jussive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ينفـ يانـfi/iya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ينقـ نابـqa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Doubly weak verbs.** Each root letter follows its own rule. We apply the guidelines given above, including the shortening of a weak root letter under the hollow and final-weak verb rules where appropriate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jussive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>يجـي ياجـī’a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For all verb classes, the stress moves if necessary, to follow the rule.

4. Other uses of the jussive

In addition to the important ﻃـ construction, the jussive is used:

- with ﻃـ بعد لم ﻃـ or ﻃـ lamma ‘not ... yet’:
  
  لم ﻃـ بعد لم ﻃـ. lam yasil ba9d/lamma yasil.
  
  He has not arrived yet.

  Do not confuse with the conjunction ﻃـ lamma ‘when’, used in writing only with the past tense.
to express wishes and intentions, always preceded by:

\[ \text{let ...} \] or \[ \text{then let ...} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Li } & \text{ nadhhab. Let us go.} \\
\text{fa l } & \text{ nadhhab. Let us go, then.}
\end{align*}
\]

with \[ \text{la} \] to express the negative imperative:

\[ \text{la tataraddad 'an tattás bí.} \]

5. Some, some-

The indefinite form of certain nouns followed by \[ \text{ma} \] is used to indicate 'some' or 'some- with indefinite meaning, often adverbial:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{naw9an ma} & \text{ somewhat} \\
\text{yawman ma} & \text{ some day, some time} \\
\text{li } & \text{ 'amrin ma for some reason}
\end{align*}
\]

The case-ending is always pronounced in such expressions.

6. Conditional sentences

The rules for conditional sentences, both real and unreal, studied in 11/14, are all valid for written Arabic, except for what follows.

After \[ \text{idha} \], used for real conditions, traditional grammar requires the past tense in both clauses; but modern usage permits a choice for the main verb:

\[
\text{idha jā'aw jā';} \text{ dhahabna/nadhhab ma9an. If they come, we shall go together.}
\]

However, if the main clause begins with anything other than a past- or present-tense verb, the clause must be introduced with \[ \text{fa} \]:

\[
\text{idha rafadhu 'ana, fa huwa sa yarfiduhu 'aydan. If I reject it, he will too.}
\]

\[
\text{idha talabahu fa lan nasma9ahum. If they request it, we shall not hear them.}
\]

The conditional clause has verbal-sentence structure. The main clause may have either verbal-sentence or nominal-sentence structure, in which latter case it is introduced by \[ \text{fa } \text{'inna} \]:

\[
\text{idha rafadhu 'ana, fa 'innahu sa yarfiduhu 'aydan.}
\]

The conjunction \[ \text{'in} \] is also used, much less frequently, for real conditions. It is mostly found in set expressions such as \[ \text{'in shā' } \text{'allāh 'inshallā} \text{ and 'in wujid(at), for which see paragraph 10 below.} \]
The conjunction لو law introduces unreal conditions as in spoken Arabic, except that we do not use the continuous past in either clause; and a following main clause is usually introduced by the particle ل la:

law 9arafa la qad 'ayyadnākum.

If we had known, we would have supported you.

The time-sequence of the whole conditional sentence often has to be inferred from the context. However, in affirmative sentences, present or future sequence can be indicated either with the main verb in the future tense (as above); while past sequence can often be underlined by using قد qad or كان kāna (i.e. the pluperfect) in either clause:

 若 they listen, they will understand.

لاو (كناوقد) سمموا لكانوا فهموا الفهموا.

Had they listened, they would have understood.

In all conditional clauses we use لم lam + the jussive, not م or ل, to negate the verb:

If we do not pay, they will strike.

Had they listened, they would have struck.

Finally, note that, less frequently, the main clause may precede the condition:

We support them if their policy is sound.

7. Passive

Look again at 15/5. The rules which you find there for the passive tenses are those of written Arabic, in short pronunciation. We can represent the vowel pattern graphically (sound verbs, 3rd person m. sing.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 syllables</td>
<td>+ full</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 syllables</td>
<td>personal</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 syllables</td>
<td>ending</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three passive verbs occur in tenses in the passage, following this pattern. Two are from verbs with sound root letters:

ussisat it was founded (from اسمك 'assasa II)  
9ubbir 9an it was expressed (عَبِر عن 9abbara II 9an)
The third is from a hollow verb: 

\[ \text{yushār 'ila} \text{ it is pointed out (} \text{'ashāra IV 'ila) in which the vocalised middle root letter follows the hollow verb rule.} \]

Note that in verbs beginning with و (whether initial-w class or doubly weak), the present tense of Form I has اوواتيویتوروـ and the past of Form III starts with وو... ووو:

( I وجد ) 

( II وول ) 

( III ووفق على )

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>وجد</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>وجد</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Passive participles, imperative and verbal noun

You know the participles. The passive has no imperative and no verbal noun.

9. Use of the passive

For verbs able to have a direct object, the passive can be used for all persons; it agrees in the usual manner:

\[ \text{kutub ar-risāla 'ams.} \]

For verbs with a prepositional object, the verb is always m. sing.:

\[ \text{ووفق على الوثيقة} \]

\[ \text{The document was agreed upon. (There was agreement on ...)} \]

See 10/8 for the same phenomenon with the participle.

10. Three useful expressions with passive forms of وجد yajidu I:

\[ \text{سننشارك بالأرباح ان وجدت} \]

\[ \text{We shall participate in the profits, if (there are) any.} \]

\[ \text{يوجد متظاهرون في الشارع} \]

\[ \text{There are demonstrators in the street.} \]

\[ \text{لا تبحث عن شرح لا يوجد} \]

\[ \text{Do not search for an explanation which does not exist.} \]
LESSON 26

The first expression is always in the past because it is conditional; the second and third expressions are in the present tense.

لا يوجد توجد lâ yîjad/tûjad also expresses تول in statistics.

11. In spoken Arabic, Form VII is often used to express the passive, avoiding the complications of the written passive. Of the verbs listed in 13/4, the following are not used in writing:

\(\text{inkâtab, inzâr, inqâl, inqâdd, inlâqa}\)

The others shown can all be written.

Make full use of the structures تتم tamm/tammat I + definite verbal noun, and جرى يجري jara yajrî I + definite verbal noun (15/6), which are easy devices commonly used in written Arabic.

12. Improper agreement

Examine the expression in the passage

\(\text{ad-duwal ad-dâ’ima l-9udwîya}\)

the states with permanent membership

In this expression, the adjective دائم dâ’im agrees not with عضوية 9udwîya but with دول duwal, i.e. the wrong noun. This is ‘improper agreement’, a common stylistic device. Examine also:

\(\text{jâmi’9a kathîrâ l-mâl a wealthy university}\)
\(\text{al-’asdiqâ’ al-kuramâ’ al-qalb}\)

the kind-hearted friends

Note how the definite form is made, in the last example.

We can instead use a construction with ذو ذو (etc., 24/19):

\(\text{ad-duwal dhâ’t al-9udwîya d-dâ’ima}\)
\(\text{jâmi’9a dhât mâl kathîr}\)
\(\text{al-’asdiqâ’ dhawu l-qalb al-karîm}\)

in which the adjective agrees normally.

Another improper agreement occurs in 23/1:

\(\text{li l-ijitimâ9ât ... al-muqarrara 9agduha}\)

the holding of which was decided

where the participial phrase could be re-expressed with a relative pronoun + clause with normal agreement:

\(\text{li l-ijitimâ9ât allâﬁ qurrir 9agduha}\)

the kind-hearted friends

...
13. Second person dual, and feminine plural

These forms are very infrequently met and have therefore been omitted from the grammar descriptions. They are shown here for reference:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun:</th>
<th>2nd m./f. dual</th>
<th>2nd f. pl.</th>
<th>3rd f. pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>'antuma</td>
<td>'antunna</td>
<td>hunna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffix*</td>
<td>-kumā</td>
<td>-kunna</td>
<td>-hunna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* also possessive suffix

14. Equivalent expressions

Some equivalent expressions in spoken and written Arabic which we have learned:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⍯aka yihkō</td>
<td>align</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯aja yīb</td>
<td>clothe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯jāb yīb</td>
<td>catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯rāh yirīb</td>
<td>dike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯rāyih, rāh-</td>
<td>gift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯shāf yishāf</td>
<td>grape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯qidir yiqdar</td>
<td>heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯dāzīm</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯fō</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯omā fi</td>
<td>hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯mā + present + subjunctive</td>
<td>home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⍯mārā + past + jussive</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.

1. Read aloud:

- e.g.: ⍯mā + present + subjunctive + acc.
LESSON 26

9ulim min maṣādir rasmiya 'annahu tamam al-ittifāq 9ala al-9aqd 'ams.

(a) "If the question of admissibility is open."
(b) "If a better equity can be made for the plaintiffs."
(c) "Conditions of investment that are not permissible."
(d) "What is the competence of the clarification?"

2. Write:
e.g.: yubḥath 9an hall al-mashākil al-mutaṣbilla bi taṣnīf 9iddat buldān nāmiya.

(a) fa l-nashrāh lahum al-mashākil, 'in wujidat.
(b) lā yūjad shay 'ajmal fī l-9ālam.
(c) 'a9lan nātīq bi lisān al-9ākūma 'anna l-9aqd qad quddim li l-majlis.
(d) kānat mushkila fī l-mūzāniya 9indamā 'ukhbir al-wazir bi fashal
   al-mufawdāt at-tijāriyya d-duwalīya.
(e) lā tadfa9 ash-sharīka mablaghān 'idānā; 'innaha tadfa9 fī 'asāb 'asār
   thābita faqat.

3. Join the two sentences into one conditional sentence:
e.g.: عرفنا هذا. ساعدناكم. ـ لو عرفنا هذا لساعدناكم.

(a) جاء. كان أسهل علينا.
(b) ترفض الحكومة. تطلب من المحكمة.
(c) تقول له هذا. سيجابوا جوابا واضحا.
(d) أرسلنا تلك الرسوم. كانت عندنا.
(e) تعرف اللغة العربية. تستفيد أكثر من أقامتكم.

4. Write the following sentences in correct written form:
e.g.: lāzim niḥkī ma9 muwazzaf 9in ash-sharīka bukra.

(a) min illi kān yiḥkī 9an hadhoul al-9ashkhās?
(b) mish wāḍiḥ shū tinwi l-9ukūma ti9mal fī hal-9āla.
(c) niqdar inqarri al-youm; khallīna nistana ḥatta l-9usbū9 al-jāī.
(d) laysh mā turūd tiqra r-risāla qabl mā njāwib?
(e) 'azunn 'innhum mish moujūdīn ba9d as-sā9a th-thalātha.

5. Read each sentence aloud, then re-express it in spoken Arabic:
e.g.: عندما يجتمع اللجنة يجب أن تأخذ هذه الأسئلة بعين الاعتبار.
9inda m tajtami al-lajna yajib 'an ta'khudh hadhahi al-’as’ila bi 9ayn al-i'tibār.

lamma tijtami al-lajna lāziṃ tākhudh hadhī l-’as’ila bi ’ayn al-i’tibār.

(a) لين أذهب إلى المؤثر إلا إذا جبت معي.

(b) لم أفهم الوضع الذي شرحه لنا.

(c) أن هذه المشكلة صارت لنا اشد تعقيداً.

(d) تصل غداً.

(e) أن السنوات كن حاضرات طول الفترة كلهما.
Lesson 1
1. (a) mabsût, ḥamdîlla. (b) shûkran. (c) šâbâḥ an-nûr.
   (d) mabsûta ḥamdîlla. (e) marhabtâyn.
2. (a) kayf hâlik? (b) law samâḥtî. (c) ’inti mabsûta? (d) márḥaba.
   (e) ’áḥlan bîkî.
3. (a) kayf hálkum? (b) law samâḥtû. (c) ’intû mabsûtûn? (d) márḥaba.
   (e) ’áḥlan bükum.
4. (a) kayf hálak? (b) ’áḥlan bîk. (c) šabâḥ al-khâyr. (d) tfaḏdal.
   (e) 9âfwan.
5. (a) mu9âlîma misřîya. (b) ’inti ’amayrkîya? (c) mabsûta jiddan, shûkran.
   (d) ’ána ’inglîzîya. (e) hiya min al-‘ûrdun.
6. (a) mu9allîmin misřîyîn. (b) ’intî ’amayrkân?
   (c) mabsûtûn jiddan, shûkran. (d) ’îlna/nînha ’inglîz. (e) hum min al-‘ûrdun.
7. (a) hûwa sûrí. (b) mu9âlim ’inglîz (c) ’int lubnânî? (d) fâḏî, (e) fâḏî.
   (a) la’, hûwa tâbib. (b) hûwa ’ûrdûnî. (c) ná9am, hûwa mabsût.
   (d) ná9am, fâḏî, tfaḏdal. (e) mabsût, al-ḥamdîlla.
9. (a) mushkuûllâ (b) fâḏî fidîya fidîyîn (c) mabsûtûn
   (d) 9ârabî 9arabîya 9ârab (e) fidîb ’inglîzî

Lesson 2
1. (a) al-maṭâr (b) az-ziyâra ṯawîla (c) ar-râkib al-‘amâyrî
   (d) al-kûs as-sghîr (e) aṭ-ṭâbib al-misrî
2. (a) sâyyârît-hum (b) shantâtkum (c) 9înd-hum (d) warâna
   (e) šandûkûm
3. (a) fî sâyyârî (b) aghrāḏ shakhshîya (c) tâdhkara (d) shânta
   (a) 9înd-hum tâdhkara. (b) 9înd-ha shânta sghîra. (c) 9îndik fulûs.
   (d) aṭ-ṭâlib, 9îndu kam kitâb. (e) aṭ-ṭâbib, 9îndu waqt.
5. (a) kitâbî (b) tadhkârtu, tadhkârit-ha (c) fulûsak, fulûsîk
   (d) ’amâmu, ’amânha (e) warâ, warâha (f) finî, fiya (g) ’ilây, ’ilâyha
   (h) 9âlîyû, 9alîyîkî (j) 9ânnu, 9ânhî (k) mînak, mînkû
6. (a) rukkâb lubnânîyîn (b) tâyyârâ muṭa’âkhhîra (c) al-mu9âllim as-sûrî
   (d) šûhufû 9ârabî (e) dînâr kuwâyti

Lesson 3
1. (a) shântât al-musâfir (b) sâyyârat muḍîrna (c) muṭâbīh ’oṣdât fu’ād
   (d) jâdwal at-tâyyârât (e) jawâb ar-râkib
2. (a) shântât at-tâlib (b) shântât at-tâlib (c) aghrâḏ at-tâlib
   (d) tâdhkata at-tâlib (e) ghûrâtat at-tâlib
3. (a) mu9âllîmin (b) sâyyârât (c) mu9âllîmât (d) maṭârât (e) musâfîrîn
   (a) dâkhalû. (b) nizîlna. (c) shû ’amârtû? (d) mâ dafâ9û.
   (e) at-tâyyârât Ŧîlî9ât 9ala l-waqt.
5. (a) mu9âllîma (b) maṭâr (c) misřî (d) muhândîs (e) 9ârabî
6. (a) mâ wajâdît as-sâyyârâ. (b) mâ dakhâlt al-ghûrâfî?
Lesson 4
1. (a) hâdha sh-shurṭû (b) hâdha l-madkhal (c) wazîr al-9amal hâdha (d) hâdha t-tîmithâl (e) hâdha s-sayyâra l-9amayrîya
2. (a) 9îrifâ.  (b) mâ katabnâhâ.  (c) simînâh.  (d) 9âlabû minnak (e) sîhî s-aîî?
3. (a) mâ 9âkhallâl al-bank. (b) hâdha mish ikthîr 9alayk. (c) mâ fî 9înîdak fakka?  (d) mâ katabu kwayyîs.  (e) shughlu mish kwayyîs.
4. (a) sâyyârtaïyn (b) sâyyârtaïyn 9amayrâk (c) al-baladayn (d) 9âhchîfayn (e) kitâbîy
5. (a) shanta wâhîda (b) 9arba9a muhandisîn (c) râkibayn (d) sîta shur файn (e) al-mustashfîyât khal-9amsa

Lesson 5
1. (a) daras yudrus (b) wișîl yu'sal (c) 9îrif ya9raf (d) shakar yushkur (e) 'akal yu'kûl
2. (a) 'ukhrûj, 'ukhrûjî, 'ukhrûjû; lâ tukhrûj, lâ tukhrûjî, lâ tukhrûjû (b) 'inzîl, 'inzîlî, 'inzîlû, lâ tînîlû, lâ tînîlû (c) khudh, khudhû, khudhû; lâ tâkhudh, lâ tâkhudhû, lâ tâkhudhû (d) 'îsma'h, 'îsma'hî, 'îsma'hî; lâ tîsma'h, lâ tîsma'hî, lâ tîsma'hû (e) 'uktûb, 'uktûbî, 'uktûbû, lâ tukhtûb, lâ tukhtûbû
3. (a) nuṭlub (b) lâ tîrka'bû.  (c) yushkurû (d) khallîna nînîlî.  (e) mâ ta9rafi'î?  
4. (a) mî yismâ9ûna. (b) ya9ra'îha.  (c) khallîna nushkurhum.  (d) sa'áltak.  (e) mî 'akaltv.
5. (a) khalîfîhûm yuṭlûbû. (b) khallîha tukhrûjî.  (c) khallînî 'âlîs. (d) khallî fînîlîhûn.  (e) khallîna ni'dî9 'u'ratâ-tâksî.
6. (a) sa'ált laysh mî 'akhadhîl fûtûsî. (b) sa'ált 'îdha dafa9û l-9âsûb. (c) sa'ált mata tûsûl as-sayyâra.  (d) sa'ált wayn al-mudîr.
7. (a) 'arba9atshr shakhsî (b) mît musâîfîr (c) al-musâfîrîn al-mîyâ u sab9a u 9ishrîn (d) thamâîniya risâlît (e) thalâthîn muwazzafî

Lesson 6
1. (a) 9uʃìf, 9uʃhâ (b) tîr't, tîrîna (c) sa'ált, sa'alînâ (d) nînm, nînmâ (e) hal-maktab
2. (a) kunna nudkhal al-bâyt. (b) kânû yu'şâlî lî l-balad. (c) kânû yu'şâlû 9indnî. (d) kânû yu'ṭtbû l-jawâb.  (e) kan yu'kun hûnâ. 
3. (a) kutub hal-mu9âlîm (b) haṭ-ṭullâb (c) fî hal-waqa9 (d) 9ind han-nâs (e) hal-maktab
4. (a) bûyût (b) 9u'rûq (c) zumâlâ'  (d) nîswân  (e) banât
Lesson 7
1. (a) šáf yishūf (b) šalab yuṭlub (c) nām yinām (d) ţār yiyīr (e) bā9 yibī9
2. (a) 'ashūfū l-youm. (b) wayn yiyīrū? (c) nṣīr 'aghmiyā'.
3. (a) bā9 būt-hum fī bāyrūţ. (e) ũ̀jù b-l-fūlūs māṣkum?
4. (a) bā9 dāba yibda 'as-sūt na9am, fī sabā9a yishūfū b-yūb. (b) 8a9d bakra yikūn youm al-ithnayn.
5. (a) bā9 būt hūnna b-th umqūr. (b) bā9 dāba yibda 'as-sūt na9am, fī sabā9a yishūfū b-yūb.
6. (a) bā9 dāba yibda 'as-sūt na9am, fī sabā9a yishūfū b-yūb.
7. (a) bā9 dāba yibda 'as-sūt na9am, fī sabā9a yishūfū b-yūb.

Lesson 8
1. (a) bada yibda (b) shakk yishuḳk (c) āja yījī (d) nīṣī yinsa (e) zann yījūn
2. (a) dill, dilī, dilū; lā taddīl, lā taddīl, lā taddīl (b) 'ibqā, 'ibqā, 'ibqā; lā tibqā, lā tibqā, lā tibqā (c) ta9āl, ta9ālī, ta9ālū; lā tījī, lā tījī, lā tījū
5. (a) "ثَلَّثَنِيَ، ثَلَّثَيْنِ (b) "أَوْلَى، أَوْلِيَ (c) ثَمَينِ، ثَمَيْنُ (d) رَبِّيْنَ، رَبِّيْنَأ"
6. (a) تَأْرِيقَ الْمُسْتَلِمَ ِّيُّ كَابِتُ ثَرَّاَعَةٍ تَأْرِيقٍ؟
(b) فَإِذْ ثَلَّثَنِي وَلَمْ يَنْتَزَعْنِ "أَسْأَلَهُ."
(c) "إِشْرَاهُنَّ لِي لِمُشْكِلَةٍ لِيٌّ كُنْتُ ثَكِلَّ تَأْرِيقَ."
(d) وَعِيَنَ الْمُلاِفِتِ ِّيُّ لَمْ تُحَضِّرِ "أَنَامَكَ يَا "أَكْلَخْ؟
(e) بَرْعُ بَيْسَ كَانَكَ فِيْنَ مِنْ ْيَشْرِينَ ِّيُّ.

**Lesson 9**

1. (a) فَذَدَلُ يُيَلَّدُ (b) وَقَافَتِ يِوْقَافِقُ (c) ْحَبَب يِحْبِبُ (d) رَبَّب يِرَبْبُ (e) سَدَادَ سَيْدَادِ (f) 

2. (a) بَقَارَةٌ (b) تُفَلِّحَةٌ (c) حَبْبَتُ تُفَلِّحٍ (d) بَلَّاَلْتَ (e) مَوْعِذَةٌ (f) حَبْبَتَ مَوْعِذَةً (g) بَيْدَاءٌ

3. (a) "أَتَّوَلَّ (b) ْعَسَانَ، عِسَانَ (c) دَارِيْرَ ّحَكَارِ (d) عِسَانَ (e) عِسَانَ (f) عِسَانَ (g) عِسَانَ (h) عِسَانَ (i) عِسَانَ (j) عِسَانَ (k) عِسَانَ (l) عِسَانَ (m) عِسَانَ (n) عِسَانَ (o) عِسَانَ (p) عِسَانَ (q) عِسَانَ (r) عِسَانَ (s) عِسَانَ (t) عِسَانَ (u) عِسَانَ (v) عِسَانَ (w) عِسَانَ (x) عِسَانَ (y) عِسَانَ (z) عِسَانَ

4. (a) "هَوْنَعَ مُعْتَقْلَمَ دَيْيَمَانَ ْيِشْرَاهُ لَكَ وَلْكَ (b) وَمَثَّرَ ْيُوْقَفَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (c) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (d) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (e) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (f) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (g) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (h) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (i) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (j) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (k) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (l) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (m) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (n) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (o) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (p) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (q) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (r) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (s) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (t) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (u) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (v) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (w) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (x) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (y) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ (z) مُثَّرَقَافِقُ ّحَكَارِ

5. (a) "أَلْكِتَبَ ْأَلْكِتَبَ (b) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (c) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (d) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (e) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (f) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (g) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (h) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (i) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (j) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (k) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (l) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (m) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (n) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (o) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (p) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (q) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (r) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (s) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (t) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (u) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (v) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (w) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (x) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (y) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (z) إِسْيَأَرْأَ (
Lesson 11
1. (possible answers) (a) kān yurīd yiqābil kam mumāththil is̲a̲-ṣināʾa l-ḥaˈffā.
(b) huwa mushrif ḍiṣm al-ʾińtāj.
(c) kān yintiṣij qiṭaʾa blāṣṭikīya min shaʾn al-kahra ṣa wa l-muwāsālat.
(d) kān yintiṣij min shaʾn as-sūq ad-dākhīliya.
(e) madīr al-mālīya kān masʾūl 9an as-siyāsā l-mālīya.
2. (a) ʿadhaʾ yudhiḥ, ʿiddāḥa (b) jāwāb yījāwib, jāwāb
(c) ḍharaʿ yakhrūj, khurūj (d) rabba yirabbī, tārbiya
3. (a) kawwan yikawwīn (b) ʾarsal yursil (c) waẓzaʿf yiwawzīf
(d) ʿaḍād yūfīd (e) rikīb yīrkab
4. (a) mish musāfrīn(a) bukra. (b) shāyīfīn? (c) mish 9ərīfīn
(d) jāyīn māna?
5. (a) law 9īrīftu, kunt ʿaqīl lāk ʿiyā.<br>
(b) idha huwa muwāfiq, ḍhallī yisāʾidina.
(c) law wiṣiṣīl ʿams, kunt shufts-hum. (d) idha mish munāsib, ʿakhbīnī.
(e) law mā kān munāsib, kunt ḍakhbītak.
6. (a) ʿarsalna laha yyāḥa. (b) qūl lāhamu ʿiyāḥa. (c) 9allamu yyyāḥa.
(d) kunt ʿurīd ʿasʿalu yyāḥa. (e) ṭuktūbu min shaʾn-hum.
7. (a) mā dhakarū lāna l-ʿakhbār al-jādīda.
(b) musāfrīn ʿaḥṣaʾ nshāʃūkm ba9dayn.
(c) fī talāmādh yurūdī yiqābilīkūm.
(d) mish fāhmīn lāsh mā turūdū tishrahū lāna yyāḥa.
(e) hādhi ʿhiya ʿakbar mashākīl illī lāzīm inḥīllhā.

Lesson 12
1. (a) ḥaka yīḥkī (b) ṭakhaṣṣaṣa yitkhaṣṣaṣa (c) ʾawjab yūjīb
(d) tādākhal yitdākhal (e) dakhal yudkhul
2. (a) taʾkhir (b) tawassu9 (c) tanāwul (d) wusūl (e) tawẓīf
3. (a) taqaddam, taqaddamī, taqaddamū; lā titqaddam, lā titqaddamī, lā titqaddamū
(b) ʿa9fī, ʿa9fī, ʿaḵtū; lā ta9fī, lā ta9fī, lā ta9fū
c) ta9fūl, ta9fūlī, ta9fūli; lā tiği, lā tiği, lā tiği
d) ta9fūl, ta9fūlī, ta9fūlī; lā tītāfūl, lā tītāfūlī, lā tītāfūlū
(e) kul, kulū, kulū; lā tākul, lā tākulī, lā tākulū
4. (a) 9aynu ʿahmar (b) 9aynu ṣumr (c) al-kitāb ʿaḥmar
(d) al-kutub ʿahmar (e) as-sayyāra ṣumrā
5. (a) nītalfin lak al-ʿoun. (b) yiḥfjīn kitāb jādīd.
(c) yītalfiṣū kull al-ʾakhbār. (d) yiẓḥāsan bi sur9a.
(e) mā yītakkanū min ʾinjāzu.
6. (a) mumkin, ʾimkānīya, yītakkan, yuṃkin
(b) 9ilīm, mu9allima, ma9lūm, ma9lūmīt, ta9allamāt, ta9fīmū, yi9allim, 9ulūm
c) 9irīf, ma9rifā, nārīrifū, ta9rifī, ma9rūfā
Lesson 13

1. (a) sâ9ad yisâ9id, musâ9ada  (b) kân yikûn, kawn
   (c) itâkkadh yittâkhidh, ititkhâdîh  (d) 'ansha yunshî, 'inshâ'
   (e) wazzafl yiwwazzîf, tawzzîf
2. (a) tâb9an nishthârik fî l-mu'tâmar.  (b) yinqâl 'înnu marîd.
   (c) ash-shurṭa tihtâll al-binâyâ.  (d) tiktâshîf shî jadid?
   (e) titwassa9 'îmkânîyat at-ta9âwun baynna u baynhum.
3. (a) yûsûlî fî l-layl, 'âflâkîr.  (b) mâ na9raf laysh.
   (c) huwa kthîr yihtâj 'îla musâ9adatmâ.
   (d) mîn yusku9n huna?  (e) tihammînî yâ 'akhûr?
4. (a) munfâsîl  (b) mursîl  (c) mâshîh  (d) muhtâjî  (e) muttâhid
5. (a) idhâ huwa mish moujîd, 'attâsîl bi zamîlu.
   (b) idhâ mâ ndîr bâlnâ, yikûn fi nifjâr shadid.
   (c) law kân yidîr bâlu, mä kân fî mithîl hådha l-infîjâr.
   (d) law kâna9t al-'as9âr 'aqqall, qidîrîna nîshtarî 'akthar.
6. (a) 'ummhâ mara lafitâ wa kâbîra s-sinn.
   (b) aṭ-tabîbâ kân ithâwil itsâ9îd al-marîdâ.
   (c) ta9âfîl 1-mu9allîmît al-judud?  (d) ittâsalat fînî 'ams.
   (e) laysh mâ tiktârimâ ftrîm 'akthar?
7. (a) at-ta9âwun  (b) fahm  (c) l-kitâba  (d) al-intîkhâb  (e) tânzîm
6. (a) bâb, 'îbawâb, bawwâb
   (b) fatâh, mafâtîh, infâtabâh, iftitâh, yitfâh
   (c) ya9da, yin9add, 9addâd  (d) madd, mumtadd
   (e) takallum, mutakallîmînî, kalîma

Lesson 14

1. (a) fâhîm, mafhûm  (b) mustawrîd, mustawrad  (c) muhtâjî, muhtâjî
   (d) mursîl, mursal  (e) mustarîh, mustarâh
2. (a) fâhîm  (b) istâräd  (c) ihtîyâjî  (d) 'irsâlî  (e) istîrîhâ
3. (a) istaghnhayt, istaghnhû  (b) inhaîalt, inhâllû  (c) nisît, nisû
   (d) istajwâbî, istajwabû  (e) istâhaqqît, ista9aqiqî
4. (a) mish lázîm yihtáshhû mutakhasîsî fî hal-moudû9.
   (b) mish lázîm tista9mlî 'îbâra mish kwayyisâ.
   (c) mish lázîm huwa dâyîmân yikûn fînîtî 9â9îd yîn9âwan.
   (d) mish lázîm tisnâmânî khârij al-bayt.  (e) mish lázîm yihtaddîd 9ala üç.
5. (a) yinqâl 'înnu marîd.  (b) tin9âll al-mushkhîla.
   (c) tistabdîl shî fî l-mâkînâ?  (d) yinsû u mä yidâ9u l-lâsîb.
6. (a) thintayn, istîthnhâ'îya, thânawîiya, ithnhayn
   (b) ta9fîm, 9ulûm, 9îlîmî, ma9lûmî, nîstâ9îmî
   (c) 9îmilî, yi9malûl, istî9mûl, mu9âmûla

Lesson 15

1. (a) yista9mîl  (b) ista9malat  (c) yajîd  (d) ihtâj 'îla  (e) yistaghnhî 9an
2. (a) as-sufârâ' qûlû 'în al-mushkhîla mu9aqqîdâ.
Lesson 16

1. (a) bayt (b) thānawīya (c) muhimm (d) al-‘athāh (e) li ‘annī
   2. (a) ihtimām (b) at-tilāl (c) mumaththilīn
   (d) ‘alā’ (e) bi l-laban
   3. (a) nil (b) fī bi l-labīn (c) mahīliyya (d) dīnī (e) ‘ālim
   4. (a) rabb (b) l-a‘lī (c) a‘lī (d) bi l-laban (e) yilmaid

Lesson 17

1. (a) az-zamīl (b) wusūl (c) ash-shurt (d) al-intikhābīn
   (e) tadākhul/tadākhul
   2. (a) al-lāzim (b) malābis (c) mutazāhirīn
      (d) kharajna (e) an-nazāri
   3. (a) al-lagīf (b) al-musulūn (c) muhīti (d) ma‘ā (e) tālib
   4. (a) lāmī (b) al-‘asī (c) misk (d) mūsir (e) mūsir
   5. (a) su‘al/mas’ala (b) ‘ātakh (c) mūsir (d) mūsir
   (e) su‘al/mas’ala

Lesson 18

1. (a) ghurfa fā‘ida (b) al-bint as-sughra (c) ba9id 9an al-qāriyya
   (d) idha kān huwa (e) shakarti’īn qalbiyān.
   2. (a) bi l-mustashfa (b) al-asāsī (c) il-mustashfī (d) hādha huwa š-ṣadīq (e) masha
   3. (a) istathnayna, istathna (b) ‘ajwib (c) ‘arbaayt (d) rabbayt, rabb (e) mashayna, masha
   4. (a) tabbī yitlab/matlab (b) 9āda, 9ādatan
   (c) matlab, matlabin (d) khasha, khashatan (e) rasmi, rasmiyān
5. (a) اللغة العربية صعبة.
(b) في هذا البلد.
(c) كنا مسرورين جدًا، شكرًا.
(d) دفعت أقل بكثيرًا. دفعت اليوم.
(e) الأنباء الواردة من بغداد.

6. (a) اسم الصديق
(b) tatatakallam sarf9an.
(c) اشتكك سريعاً.
(d) تابعت أشد ما كان قبل.
(e) هو موظف في الجمرك.

Lesson 19
1. (a) ma’mūr min ma’mūrī l-qism al-mālīya (b) sharīkatān kabīratān
(c) ash-sharīka mas’ūla 9an da‘f9 al-qīst. (d) mutakhāṣṣī fi t-ta’mīn
(e) fi madrasa btdī’ya

2. (a), (b) انتهاء العقد مع مغتني الجمرك الرئيسيين
(c) (d) (e) في البوليسكيين الشامليين في السنة المقبلة

3. (a) wathiqatī (b) zimālā’ī (c) takhffī qisḥī
(d) شروطها القبلية
(e) حسب بوليساته

4. (a) 9indahum (b) khilalāhā (c) ma’fī
(d) baynāhum (e) ladayya

5. (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) ممثليون مصريون.

6. (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) العقد المؤرخ اسم الوثيقة الملحة

Lesson 20
1. (a) tasallamt risalatukum. (b) al-muwāṣalat al-lāsilkīya
(c) qad qara’na t-taqrīr. (d) 9ala matn ū’irat al-yawm
(e) ‘arsalnū bi l-barīd al-jawwī.

2. (a) وجهوا في رسالة طويلة مكتوب فيها حدول أسعارهم.
(b) الحكومة تقوم بتعميد شبكة الطرق الثانوية.
(c) ترسل البضائع بإحكام بكفاءة أقل مما يكلف بالجزء.
(d) تكون بوليسية الشحن على متن بحارة "كوبى مارا" من بوهواما.

3. (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) تقولون: يقرون
(d) (c) (b) (a) أنظروا
Lesson 21

1. (a) `inna hall al-mushkila yaqhar lana ghayr mumkin.
(b) dumna muta’akkid in min darurat at-tadakhkul.
(c) hal turīd al-’idārā stīnāf al-mufāwadāt?
(d) ‘innana masrūrūn jiddan bi qitrāhikum hawl muqābil ash-shughl
al-’idāf. (e) ‘a mā tadallamūn at-taqrīr ‘innana ’arsalnā hu qabla ’usbū9ayn.

2. (a) ما رأيك حول جدول الأندية الجارية؟
(b) hel nitābir ta’lāb al-’abd al-ja’riya?
(c) `ash-sharīka mā turīd ta’tābī īdhi l-arqām al-jadīda.
(d) al-’idārā rābiyastaghīq waqt qaṣīr faqat li 9adam ta’yid an-niqābtayn.
(e) ni9tābir talah al-9ummāl ghayr/mish maqbūl.

3. (a) ﺎﳉﺎﺭﻳﺔ ﺍﻝﺪﺍﻷﺑ ﺟﺪﻭﻝ ﺣﻮﻝ ﺭﺃﻳﻚ ﻣﺎ
(b) ﺎﳌﻘﺒﻠﺔ ﻟﻠﺴﻨﺔ ﺍﻟﺮﻭﺍﺗﺐ ﻭﻝﺪﺟ ﻧﻈﺮ ﻫﻞ
(c) ﺍ capacité ﺍﻟﻨﻘﺎﺑﺘﲔ ﺗﺄﻳﻴﺪ ﻡﺪﻟﻌ  ﻭﻗﺖ ﻭﻗﺖ
(d) ﺍﻹﺿﺮﺍﺏ ﺳﻴﺴﺘﻐﺮﻕ ﺍﻟﻨﻘﺎب ﻳﻬﻤﻨﺎ ﻋﻦ
(e) ﺍًﻛﺜﻴﺮ ﻳﻬﻤﻨﺎ ﻋﻦ

4. (a) لا يمكن مثبته. (b) ما استقبلته.
(c) لا يمكنه كثيرًا. (e) زميله ليس مرضاً.
(d) لماذا هو غريب؟ (b) هل قنع بإرسال الجواب؟
(e) من يبكي؟

5. (a) قرأ المنشور الوثيقة بالتفصيل. (b) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
(c) قال ممثل الشركة إن الاتفاقية مقبولة.
(d) يفهم الوزير تمامًا أن الوثيقة معقدة.
(e) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ

6. (a) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
(b) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
(e) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ

7. (a) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
(b) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
(e) ﺔرة ﺍﻟﻤﺤﻠﻞ ﺍﻞ ذه ﺑﻮ ﺑﻮ
Lesson 22
1. (a) yananna 'annahu min ad-ḍarūrī 'an yastamirr al-baḥth.
(b) ihtamant bi dirāṣat al-wathīqqa hitmāman kāmilan.
(c) yaqūm qiṣn al-handasa bi dirāṣat al-'arqām.
(d) hal tastaṯf al-sharīk tajfid tanḏīm 'aqsāmiha?
(e) yuḵbiruna mumaththil sharikat at-taswīq bi 'annaha lan tuważzif 'aṣy mumaththhil 'idāfi khilāl as-sayf.

2. (a) ﻻ ﺍﻟﻘﻁﺎﻉ ﰲ ﺍﺿﺎﻓﻴﺔ ﺍﺣﺘﻴﺎﻁﻴﺎﺕ ﺍﻛﺘﺸﺎﻑ ﺣﺎﻟﺔ ﰲ ﺛﺎﻟﺚ ﺣﻔﺮ ﺟﻬﺎﺯ ﺍﺳﺘﻌﻤﺎﻝ ﻟﻠﺸﺮﻛﺔ ﺍﳌﻮﺯ
(b) ﺍﻟﻔﻨﻴﺔ ﺍﻟﻈﺮﻭﻑ ﻓﻲ ﺑﺴﻬﻮﻟﺔ ﻓﻲ ﺍﻟﺘﺴﻮﻳﻖ ﻓﻲ ﺃﻥ
(c) ﺍﻟّﻃﻮﻳﻼ ﺍﻟّﻭﻗﺘ ﺍﻟﻠﻠﻤﺒﺮي ﺍﳊﻔﺮ ﻳﺴﺘﻐﺮﻕ ﺃﻥ ﺍﳌﺜﮑﻦ ﺍﻥ ﻋﻠﻴﻞ
(d) ﺍﻧﺘﺎﺟﻬﺎ ﻳﻔﻴﻒ ﺍﳌﻨﺘﺠﺔ ﺍﳌﺒﻠﺪﺍﻥ ﻟﻘﺪ ﻋﻠﻰ ﺍﳌﺎﺿﻴﺔ ﺍﻟﺴﻨﺔ ﺍﺳﺘﻬﻠﻜﻨﺎﻩ ﺍﻥ ﺍﻛﺜﺮ ﺍﺳﺘﻬﻠﻚ ﻋﻠﻰ ﺍﳌﻮﺿﻮﻉ ﲌﺼﻮﺹ ﺍﻟﺴﻠﻄﺎﺕ ﻋﻤﻦ ﻟﻨﺎ ﺍﳝﻜ ﻫﻞ ﺍﳌﻮﺭدة ﺍﳌﺒﻠﻎ ﻳﻘﻮﻝ ﻳﺴﺘﻄﻴﻊ ﻻ ﺍﳌﺒﺎﻟﻎ ﻓﻌﻮﺍﺪﻳ ﺍﻥ ﻣﺴﺘﻌﺪﻳﻦ ﻛﺎﻧﻮﺍ ﻣﺎ ﺍﳌﺒﻠﻎ ﻫﺬﻩ ﻣﺜﻞ ﰲ ﺍﳌﺸﺎﻛﻞ ﻭﺍﺩﲡ ﺍﻥ ﺃﻥ ﺃﻟﺨﺎﺽ ﺍﻟﻮﻛﺎﻝ ﺃﻥ ﺗﺮﻳﺪ ﺍﻥ ﺍﻟﺸﺮﻛﺔ ﺍﳌﻮﺭدة ﺍﳌﻤﻠﻮرة ﺃﻥ ﺍﳌﺎﺭ ﻫﺬﺍ ﰲ ﻧﺘﻌﺎﻭﻥ ﺍﻻ ﻧﻔﺾ ﺃﻥ ﺍ⇄ ﻋﻦ ﺭﺃﻳﻚ ﻋﻠﻴﻚ ﻋﻠﻰ ﺍﳌﻮﺽ ﻋﻠﻰ ﺍﳌﻮﺭدة ﺍﳌﻤﻠﻮرة ﻏﲑ ﺃﻥ ﺍﳌﺒﺎﻟﻎ ﻓﻌﻮﺍﺪﻳ ﺍﻥ ﻣﺴﺘﻌﺪﻳﻦ ﻛﺎﻧﻮﺍ ﻣﺎ ﺍﳌﺒﻠﻎ ﻫﺬﻩ ﻣﺜﻞ ﰲ ﺍﳌﺸﺎﻛﻞ ﻭﺍﺩﲡ ﺍﻥ ﺃﻥ ﺃﻟﺨﺎﺽ ﺍﻟﻮﻛﺎﻝ ﺃﻥ ﺗﺮﻳﺪ ﺍﻥ ﺍﻟﺸﺮﻛﺔ ﺍﳌﻮﺭدة ﺍﳌﻤﻠﻮرة ﻏﲑ ﺃﻥ ﺍﳌﺒﺎﻟﻎ ﻓﻌﻮﺍﺪﻳ ﺍﻥ ﻣﺴﺘﻌﺪﻳﻦ ﻛﺎﻧﻮﺍ ﻣﺎ ﺍﳌﺒﻠﻎ ﻫﺬﻩ ﻣﺜﻞ ﰲ ﺍﳌﺸﺎﻛﻞ ﻭﺍﺩجة ﺍﻥ ﺃﻥ ﺃﻟﺨﺎﺽ 

Lesson 23
1. (a) 'inna dirāṣata lā tazāl tajrī quḍumāna wa sa nanshur an-natā'ij fī sh-shahr al-muqbil. (b) talqa l-lajna 'aḏḏā' al-ḥukūma ba'ad al-buhūth al-jāriyya. (c) lā yabqa 'illa rādād saḥīḥ min at-tafaṣīl yajib 'an nasrahāhā. (d) yasād al-bank 'illa 'an yanshur al-bank qabil ra's as-sana. (e) 9alayna 'an nastağhni 9an tā'awun hadhā l-ma' mūr.

2. (a) ﺭﻁﻋﻴ ﺍﻟﻠﻠﻤﺒﺮي ﻋﻨ ﺍﻟﻠﻠﻤﺒﺮي ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻟﺒﺎ ﺍﻟﻠﻠﻤﺒﺮي ﺍﳊﻜﻮﻣﺘﺎﻥ ﺗﺴﻊ ﺍﱃ ﺍﳊﻜﻮﻣﺔ ﺗﺴﻊ ﺍﱃ 
(b) ﺑﻌﺮﻳ ﺍﻟﻠﻠﻤﺒﺮي ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ 
(c) ﻋﻦ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠﻤﺸﺎﺕ ﻋﻨ ﺍﳌﺘﻠ.
ما هي المعلومات التي طلبتها الأمانة منها؟ (d)
نسب أعضاء الوفد أهم شيء في برنامجهم. (e)
3. (a) يشتريون مهما يحتاجون إليه.
(b) لا يمكن من برهان على قوله.
(c) لا يزال هذا ادعاءًا شديداً ضد احزاب المعارضة. (d)
(e) يتفوق كل ما ندعى.
4. (a) لماذا لا ينشرون التقرير الذي حضره المتخصص؟
(b) هل تصدق ما أدعاه؟
(c) دعا المدير المشرف الذي كان ينظر خارج المكتب.
(d) لا يمكن الاعتماد على من يقول مثل هذا.
(e) ما صار لبناءً التي كان يسكن فيها؟
5. (a) لذي (d) بعلي (c) سعي (b) جري (e) لذي

Lesson 24
1. (a) khamsa u 9ishrīn ǧūlban (b) mitayn dinār
(c) min ʿālī ʿarbaʾānah ḥāmmā (d) 9ashra ṭiyālāt (e) sittā sanāwāt
(f) li muḍadab sītat ʿasābīyā (g) thalāth mīyā u khamsa u sittin yawayn
(h) bayna al-ʿalf u ʿalfayn dinār (i) ʿarbaʾānah u tis̲t̲īn bi l-mīyā min as-sukkān
(k) baʿ9dā ʿithānīyā u ʿarbaʾānah sītān

الثامنة الخامسة (c) الدروس السادسة (b)_inner (c) الروضة (b)esen (c) المناسبة الأولى (d)
اليوم الثامن والعشرون (e) ذات ذوي (d) ذات (c) ذات (b) ذات (e) ذات

Lesson 25
1. (a) mā zilna nadrus al-mashrūṭ. (b) raʾis al-wafī la yawiʿ ʾan yusīlīdanā.
(c) istirnarra nusābūdhu li ʾanna qītārahu ān mufīdan.
2. (a) من ها ظرفHKajeطلمنة تنميةتهم جميع الدواخلية للسلام اعتماداً (b)
هكذا الحكومة تدرس مشاكل زيادة المستورادات. (c) أساسياً
لا بد من إعادة كتابة التقرير. (d)
كرح يمكن الحكومة العمل في هذه الظروف؟ (e)
3. (a) muqābārin ḥādana ʾi-qītārīn muqāqad ʾakthar. (b) chill muskifat at-tānīya t-himm jamiʿ ad-duwal al-muḥibba li
s-salām ihtīmām ʾasāṣī. (c) al-ḥukūma tībda tudrus muskifat ziyādat al-mustawradāt. (d)
dā buddu min ʾinna nuktub at-taqīr marra thānīyaʾukhra. (e) ʿakf al-ḥukūma tīqdar tisṭāghil fī ḥādana ʾa-ḥurūf?

بذاو يؤدؤ اقتراحنا. (a)
يجعلون أن يضيفوا أرقام جديدة إلى التقرير. (b)
يريدون أن يمولوا المشروع بمساعدة البنك. (c)
بدون أن يفرون بما في ظروف صعبة جداً. (d)
يجب أن يؤيد القطاع الخاص الحكومة في سياستها الاقتصادية. (e)

5. (a) نظرة (b) كشف (c) حيّ احبي (d) ولي (e) كشف

Lesson 26

1. (a) tamm iftit al-mufawdat 'ams.
   (b) 'idha ta'assan at-ta'qas kün mufidan li l-fallāhin.
   (c) urūf al-istithmār al-ḥālīya ghayr mūdriya.
   (d) mādh al-9ulim min at-taqrīb?
2. (a) Filtushrūkh lhum al-mishakallān wa jadid.
   (b) La awwadh shay' al-akhīr al-mu'āmil.
   (c) A'amlina anta-'māshā wahda fī al-allamātīn.
   (d) A'takalluma 'alā mawādha al-dawārīn.
   (e) 'aţāf bi'futūh bi'īn al-mushkila 'ashād tāqī.'
3. (a) Iffāt al-mushkila wa mūtarī' bi 'ilha 'ilmā'īra.
   (b) Mawādha tashrif 'alā tāqī al-mudawwīn.
   (c) 'Ilna 'adhar wa yuṣīf bi 'īn al-musawwarīn 'alā mā'ūnāt.
   (d) Tanfīl wa la tattārī' bi'īn al-musawwarīn 'alā mā'ūnāt.
   (e) La tattārī' bi'īn al-mushkila 'ashād tāqī dan.
4. (a) 'Ashād tāqī bi'īn al-mushkila 'ashād tāqī 'almā'īra.
   (b) 'Ashād tāqī bi'īn al-mushkila 'ashād tāqī 'alā mawādha al-dawārīn.
   (c) 'Ashād tāqī bi'īn al-mushkila 'ashād tāqī 'alā mawādha al-dawārīn.
   (d) Thābita 'alā mawādha al-dawārīn.
5. (a) lan 'adhab 'ilha l-mu-tāmar 'illa 'idha ji't ma'ātīn.
   (b) lan 'adhhab 'ilha l-mu-tāmar 'illa 'idha ji't ma'ātīn.
   (c) lan 'adhhab 'ilha l-mu-tāmar 'illa 'idha ji't ma'ātīn.
   (d) lan 'adhhab 'ilha l-mu-tāmar 'illa 'idha ji't ma'ātīn.
   (e) lan 'adhhab 'ilha l-mu-tāmar 'illa 'idha ji't ma'ātīn.
Index of words

References indicate the lesson/paragraph with the first or fullest explanation of the word or expression. Nouns and adjectives are shown as indicated in 6/13, and verbs as indicated in 11/12, 12/12 and 20/4 (but without the particle 'to'). Personal and family names are not listed.

The sign → refers you to another entry in the same index. A broken plural or irregular feminine form is referred to its singular form (m. sing. for adjectives), except where the two entries would be adjacent.

Arabic, Part I

The transcription symbols appear in the order 'a/a b d ð dh f g gh h h i i j k kh l m n o q r s sh t ð ð ð w w y z z'. The sign ~ repeats the headword (or that part of it preceding the hyphen -). Search also under q for regional forms ' and g, under j for regional forms g and zh, and under k for regional form ch.

Words normally used with the article (e.g. al-qāhirah) are shown with the article, but listed under their own initial symbol. Expressions consisting of a preposition + noun (e.g. bi khusābus) are shown with the preposition but listed under the noun.

'ab 'ab'ā' father 6/3, 14, 15
'āb August 10/15
'āb'ā' → 'ab
'ābadan (n)ever 6/1, 2
'ābhar → bahr
'ābnā' → 'ibn
'ābrīl April 10/15
'ābwāḥ → bāb
'ābyad → bīd white 12/11;
→ bahr
'ādilla → dalīl
'ādu → sharq
'ādwiya → dawā'
'ādūf yudif IV add, annex 11/6
'āḏha: 9ṭid al- see 10/15
'āḏhār March 10/15
'āḏhār9 yudhī 9 IV broadcast 11/6
'afāḏ yudif IV benefit 11/6, 15/1, 2
'afkār → fikr
'afriqī African, ~iya Africa 13/3
'aghlaḥ → ghalaṭ
'aghniyā' → ghanī
'aghīrād possessions 2/1;
→ gharad
'aghīstus August 10/15
'āhā' ahl 6/1
'āhālī → 'ahl
'āhimm yihimm IV concern, be important to 11/6
'āhammīya importance 15/1
'ahl 'āhālī people 13/1; ~ al-mudun townspeople, ~ al-qura country people 13/3; ~ an welcome 1/1;
~ an bik (etc.) welcome to you (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4, 2/2;
~ an wa sahlan welcome 2/1, 2
'āhwāyā → hawa
'āḥubb yihubb IV love 15/1
'āḥadd (some)one 9/16, 17; (m.) one of 13/1; tā ~ no one 9/1, 16;
(youm) al-~ Sunday 7/1, 14
'āḥmar hamrā' hamr red 12/1, 11
'āhrār → hurr
'āhsan better 4/1, 9/13
'āhwāl → hāl
'āhyā' → hayy
'āhzāb → hīzāb
'āja yūţi I come 8/9, 10
'ājād newer 9/13
'ājbīn → 'ajnābi
'ajashsh jashtshā 'ushsh hoarse
12/11
min 'ajil (for the sake of) 15/1
'amal more beautiful, mā 'u (etc.)
how beautiful! 13/1, 2, 12
'amābī 'amābībī foreign(er) 8/1
ajnās → jīns
ajsām → jīsm
ajwiibā → jūvāb
'akal yākūl I, 'akīf ēat 3/7, 5/5, 9/1
'akkhar bigger 9/13, 14
ākīl eating 10/5
'akīl food 9/1, 11
'akrām yukrim IV treat with
deferecnce 13/2
'akrām: mā 'ak (etc.) how kind you
are (etc.) 13/12
'akthar more 9/13, 14, 11/21, 12/11
'akthariyya majority 8/1
'akyās → kīs
'akh 'ikhvā/ikhwān brother
6/1, 3, 14
'akhādh yākhādh I, 'akhādh take 3/7,
5/2, 5, 13/6; 'bi 9ayn al-ṭītbār
take into consideration 13/10
'akhhāf weaker 9/13
'akhār 'ukhra 'in other 6/11, 12
'akhhar yuḳhārīr IV be inform of 11/6
'akhbār → khabar
'akhdār khdārā khdūr green 12/11
'akhād taking 10/11
'akhīr recent 6/12
'akhir 'awākhār last 6/11, 12;
→ kalima
'akhkhār II delay 9/10
'akhmās → khums
'akhraj yuḳhrīj IV publicise, expel
11/6
'akhtībā → khitāb
'āla kāttībā typewriter 5/3
'ālf 'alīf 'ulīf thousand 7/10
'alle: wissam mk (etc.) goodbye
2/1, 2; 'yiḥfaz (etc.) God bless
you, 'ya9fīl (etc.) well done
6/1, 2; 'yiḥārik (etc.) thank
you 14/1, 2; lā samah → God/
Heaven forbid 15/10
'almāniyā Germany 1/2
'ālya yulqī IV deliver (speech) 11/6
'alṣīnā → lisān
'alwān → loun
'amāl 'āmal bi hope for 15/1
'amām in front of 2/7
'amān safety, safekeeping 14/1;
fi 'illā, fi 'al-kārim goodbye
14/1, 2
'amār yu'mur I, 'amār order 3/7,
5/4, 5
'amayyīkī America 1/2, 15/3
'amayrīkī 'amayrākī American 1/1
'amīn 9āmm secretary-general 15/3
'amīr 'umarā prince, emīr 15/3
'amīr ordering 10/5
'amūr 'umār affair 4/3, 10/11;
→ 'awāmīr order 10/11
'amrad → marad
'amrīkī American 15/3
'amrs yesterday, 'awwāl → the day
before yesterday 7/3
'amrs 'ā → masa
'amār → mitr
'amār → matar
'amāhāl → mathal
'an see 15/1
al- 'ān now 8/1, 2;
li ḫadd al-ān until now 11/2
'anā I 1/1, 5
'annābīb → 'unḥūb
'anḥūb: tufid al- → it is reported
15/1, 2; → naba'
'anfas → nafī
'anhar → nahr, nahr
'anjāz yinjīz IV implement,
accomplish 11/6
'anma that 15/1
'ansha yunshī IV construct, create
11/6
'antaj yintij IV produce 11/6
'ānwa → nou9
'ṭaālīm → 'iqlīm
'āqlīq less 9/13; → fyu minority 10/3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Term</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'ayyām</td>
<td>youm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'azmān</td>
<td>zamān, zaman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'azraq zarqā</td>
<td>zuq blue 12/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'azwāj</td>
<td>zowj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'azraj yiṣrā' IV disturb 11/6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aẓhar</td>
<td>zuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aẓhād</td>
<td>ḥadad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aẓqā'</td>
<td>ḥaqwv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣḥāb yiṣrā' IV please 11/6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣḥāb higher 9/13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣlān yiṣrā' IV announce 15/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣma</td>
<td>maṣā'ī 9umi blind 12/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣmār</td>
<td>9umr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aṣnāb</td>
<td>9inab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'araj 'arjā'</td>
<td>9ury laminate 12/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'arṣār</td>
<td>9ushr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ayyād</td>
<td>ḥidrd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ibār</td>
<td>'ibra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ibīl</td>
<td>camels 9/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ibn 'aḥnā</td>
<td>son 6/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ibra 'ibhar needle, injection 12/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'id 'ayyād hand, arm 12/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'idārā administration 5/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'idāfā</td>
<td>ṣalāf- a addition 11/10;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ī</td>
<td>additional 11/1, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'idha</td>
<td>whether 5/16; if 9/1, 11/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'idhāṣa</td>
<td>maṣā'ī 9umab broadcasting 11/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'īhā (t.) one of,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~āhūm one (f.) of them 13/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'īhdāṣhar</td>
<td>ṣalāf five 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'īhna</td>
<td>we 1/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ijāb compulsion 11/10;</td>
<td>~ī positive 10/1; 11/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ijāza leave, holiday 10/15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ijbārī compulsionary 8/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'iḏrā' (administrative) measure 13/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ikrām deference;</td>
<td>~an li in honour of 13/1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ikhrāj expulsion 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ikhwā/ 'ikhwān</td>
<td>'akhk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ikhwāt</td>
<td>'ukht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilā to, for 2/7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilay- see 2/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilaykum al-ān (we bring) to you</td>
<td>now 15/1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilktrounī</td>
<td>barīd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'illa except 2/7, 8; to (an hour) 7/12;</td>
<td>(+ negative) only 11/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilqā' delivery (speech etc.) 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'imāra principality, emirate 15/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'imayl e-mail 5/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'imkāniya possibility 7/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'imma ... 'av either ... or 8/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inshi go 4/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ingiltra England, Britain 1/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inglīz English, British 1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inn that 3/1, 4/7, 8, 7/15; → ka, ma9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inna see 15/9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inshalla I hope 6/1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inshā' creation, composition 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'int you (m.) 1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'intāy production 5/3, 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'inti you (f.) 1/1, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'intū you (pl.) 1/5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'iqlāf stoppage 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'iqlām 'aqālim region 13/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'irādā wish 11/10;</td>
<td>~ī intentional 11/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'irāhā terrorism 15/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'irsāl despatch 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ism 'asāma' name 1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ismah (etc.) li permit 1/1, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'isrā' il 'Israel 15/1; ~ī Israeli 13/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'īṣārā' insist, insistence, persistence 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ishārā sign(al) 4/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'itāl-i Italian 1/9; ~īv Italia 1/2, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'izāfā disturbance 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'īqāl donation 11/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oktābīr October 10/15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oudā' 'owd room 3/1; ~ī hamnām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom, ~ī noun bedroom 3/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART I 285

'aqūd → waqa'd
'alād children 6/3; → waqad
'ouqūd → waqat
'ujra fare 2/3; rent 6/3
'ukkid it was confirmed 15/1
'ukhra → ʿakhar
'ukht 'ikhwāt sister 6/3, 14
'ila → 'anwāl
'ulūf → 'alāf
al-ʿumam al-muttaḥida United Nations 15/3
'umrā → ʿamīr
'umm ʿahāt mother 6/3, 14
'umr affairs 4/3; → ʿamr
'unbīb ʿanābīb pipe 11/1
ʿurdun: al- → Jordan,
→ f Jordanian 1/1
'ūro euro 2/3
'urrub-a Europe 1/2, 9; → European
1/9, 15/3; → itīḥād, sīq
'usbī ʿasābi 9 week 6/1
'usus → ʿasās
'ustādī ʿasātīda professor 6/1
'utayf hotel 3/1
'utūf bus 2/3
'uwad → ʿouda

a
allāti who, which, that 15/1
b
bāb ʿabwāb door 3/1
bada yihdā I begin 8/7, 8, 12
bādī beginning 10/5
badāyī → bidāqa
badhīa suit 14/3
bahr ʿabab ṭūba 1, bahr ṭūba discuss 10/3
bahr ʿabhūr sea;
→ al-ʻabyad al-mutawassīt Mediterranean Sea,
→ al-ʻammar Red Sea 13/3
bahrain Bahrain 6/1
bābth bukhāth discussion 5/3, 10/11
bal but rather 15/1
bāl: dār yiddīr 1 → ʿak (et al.) take care
12/1, 2
balad bilād town 3/1; → ʿayn town/
village hall, municipality 13/1
balagh yiblahg I amount to 15/1
balāt tiles 9/5
banādīra tomatoes 9/1
banāt → bint
bank bunūk bank 1/2;
al-→ ad-duwāl World Bank 15/3
banthalon trousers 14/3
baqar cattle 9/5; → cow 9/6
bārak III.fī blessing 14/1, 2
barāmi j → barnāmāj
barānī → barnayi
barhan IQ bula, burhān prove 12/12
barīd mail, → ʿiliṭrūnī  e-mail 5/3
būrid cold 6/1
barlamān parliament 5/3
barnāmāj barāmi j programme 12/1
barrādha refrigerator 6/3
bas only 2/1
basaṭ → bustān
basīt būṣāṭ simple 6/11;
in poor supply 13/2
bāṣ bus 2/3
battāl → mish
batṭāniya blanket 3/3
bāṭn buṭn stomach 12/3
bawwāb doorman 3/3
bāyd eggs 9/5; → egg 9/6
baydā → ʿabyad
bāyi 9 selling 10/5
bayn between, among 2/7, 8
bayrūt Beirut 6/1
bayt buyūt house 6/1
bay 9 būṣāṭ sale 10/11
bāṣ būṣāṭ I, bay 9 sell 6/4, 7/4
bāzd after 2/7, 6/18; → mā after 3/1,
6/18; → bukrā the day after
tomorrow 7/3;
→ ayn afterwards 4/1;
→ ishrawy soon 11/21; → zuhr
bāzd some 8/1, 17; each other 8/17
bāзд 9an far from 4/1
bī with, in 2/7, 8;
→ kam (for) how much? 14/3
bī with it/him 2/8
bī- see 2/8
bīd (-āt etc.) want see 11/18


bidān without 2/7
bidā9a baḏāyī9 merchandise 14/1
būd → ʻabyad
țik → ʻahlān
bilād buldān country 6/11; → halad
bināyā building 3/1
binnī/binnī brown 12/11
bint  bānāt girl, daughter 6/3
biqī yibqā I remain 8/9
bīra beer 9/1
bissu  bisas cat 9/8
blūsīkī plastic 11/1
blūza blouse 14/3
boušta post office 4/1
britānī British 4/1
budda: lá ~ (min) thereā no
- escaping 12/1, 2
buhayra lake 13/3, 17
buhūth → bahāth
bukra tomorrow 7/1;
- ba9d ~ the day after tomorrow 7/3
buldān → bilād
būlūs police 4/3
binnī → binnī
burhān  9āla proof of 12/12
burstuqān oranges 9/3; /a orange 9/6
busāfā → basāf
bustān basūtān garden 6/3
butūn → bān
buwayb small door 13/17
buφyā9 → bay9
bużā/bużā ice 9/3

d
da this see 6/19
dabbar II arrange 9/10
daʃa9 yidʃa9 I, daʃ9 pay 3/6, 5/4
daʃ9 maʃfūtā payment 10/11
daʃāj chicken(s) 9/1, 5;
- ~a chicken 9/6
dāk that see 6/19
dakākīn → dukkān
dakāṭira → duktur
dakhāl yudkhul I, dukhūl enter 3/6, 5/4
dākhīl inside 2/7; ~iya Interior,

Internal Affairs 4/3
dalāl ʿadilla directory 7/3
dall yidill I direct, indicate 8/4, 5
dam blood 12/3
danānūr → dinār
daqīqa daqīqiq minute 4/1, 7/12
daṛ yidīr 1 bāl- take care 12/1, 2
daraja degree,
- t ḥarāra temperature 12/1
daras yudrus 1, dirāsa study 4/1, 5/4
dārīj colloquial 8/3
darras 2 instruct 9/10
dasāṭir → dustūr
davā’ ʿādwiya medicine 12/1
davlā duwat state 5/3; ~ kubra
- superpower, ~ nāmiya
- developing country, ~ šināfiya
- industrialised country 15/3;
- → jāmiʿa

dāyīman always 6/1
di this see 6/19
dibling diploma 8/3
diblingā diplomi(ic) 1/2
dijāf9 defence 4/3
da-diʃāla Tigris 13/3
dīk that see 6/19
diʃṭārīya dictatorship 13/11
dimashq Damascus 4/1
dimugraʃīya democracy 13/11
dīnār danānūr dinar 2/3
dirāsa study 8/1, 10/11
diʃmīb December 10/15
diʃyāa advertising 10/1
ad-douʔa Doha 5/1
doul these see 6/19
doulār dollar 2/3
dukkān dukkān shop 4/3
duktūr dukṭāira doctor 1/1, 2/4
dukhūl entry 8/1, 10/11
dulāk that see 6/19
dunya world 13/3
dustūr dasāṭir constitution 15/3
duwat → davela, jāmiʿa
duwaṭi international 5/3;
- → bank, șandāq
### ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>d</strong></td>
<td>dahak, yakar 1, dagh laug 6/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>darab yudrab</strong></td>
<td>strike 7/3; ~ ̱ibrā' 'ira 12/3; ̱ilaḥfūns telephone 7/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>da rāba ᵃ rabi' tax</strong></td>
<td>11/3; darur-a necessity 11/1; ~ī necessary 5/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dayf</strong></td>
<td>guest 3/3; da'if, ḍa'ifắ ́ weak 12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>didd</strong></td>
<td>against 2/7; ḍifī ḍifā' bank, shore, coast 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dā'if</strong></td>
<td>→ dayf; ḍa'ifā́ ́ → ḍa'ifī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dh</strong></td>
<td>dhakar yudhkur I mention 9/1; dhakkar II bi remind 9/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dhāt</strong></td>
<td>→ ̊ha 'km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dhūb</strong></td>
<td>see 10/15; dhābūb flies 9/5; ̄ ̄a dhubbān fly 9/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>f</strong></td>
<td>fa so, then 4/1, 11/16; fādi ̣ādiyā fādīyīn empty, free 1/1, 10, 7/13, 10/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>faddal</strong></td>
<td>II favour 9/10; min faḍāl (etc.) please 1/1, 3, 4, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fa lās</strong></td>
<td>fāliṣ ¹ fālawiḥ 12/1; fālās, examination 12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fākiha</strong></td>
<td>fawākhī h 9/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jaka</strong></td>
<td>small change 4/1; jāks tax 5/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jallāh</strong></td>
<td>peasant, farmer 13/3; jannān → finjān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jannān</strong></td>
<td>→ fann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jann fann</strong></td>
<td>fānn ⁵ fānān art 8/3; ḍ ̄ ̣ī technical 5/1; fāqāt only 2/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fāqīr</strong></td>
<td>fāqīr ² fāqīrah poor 6/11; farans-a France 1/2, 9; ̄ālīvī French 1/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>farja</strong></td>
<td>yifjarī IQ show 12/12; farṣha bed 3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fāsān</strong></td>
<td>→ jīfṣān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fāsal</strong></td>
<td>III bargain 14/1; al-faṣīḥ literary Arabic 8/3; fasl fāṣīl season 10/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fataḥ yifṭāḥ</strong></td>
<td>I open 3/6, 5/4; fatrā fatarār interval, period 7/13; fāṭash II ⁹aṭan look for 14/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fāwād</strong></td>
<td>III negotiate 15/1; fāwākhī → fākīhah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fī</strong></td>
<td>̣ī in 2/1, 7, 8; on 10/15; ̣ī there is/are 2/1, 11, 6/7, 7/7, 9/16; in him/it 2/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fibrāyīr</strong></td>
<td>February 10/15; fīlīm yifham l, faḥm understand 11/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fikra</strong></td>
<td>ʾafkār idea, thought 5/1, 2; ̣ūlah ̀ by the way 6/1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>filasṭīn</strong></td>
<td>Palestine 1/2; filfil pepper 9/3; fīnjān fanājīn cup 9/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fīṣīḥ</strong></td>
<td>9īl al- ̀ Easter 10/15; fish, mā̀ there is/are no 12/1, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fitr</strong></td>
<td>9īl al- ̀ see 10/15; fīziyā physics 8/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fouq</strong></td>
<td>above 2/7; up 3/1; upstairs 6/3; four boiling, ̀ an immediately 11/19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fūlās</strong></td>
<td>(pl) money 2/3; funūn → fann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fūqārā́</strong></td>
<td>→ faqīr; fūrāṣ → fursa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>al-fūrāt</strong></td>
<td>Euphrates 13/3; furṣa furṣa occasion, opportunity, ̣īṣā́dī ̀ pleased to meet you 5/1, 2; ̣īnāhaz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fustān</strong></td>
<td>fāṣātin dress 14/1; fuṣha: al-tugha l-́ literary Arabic 8/3; fuṣūl → ̣īl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
gharb west, ~ī western 13/1
ghasīl washing 14/3;
qābil li l~ washable 14/1, 10
ghassal II wash 14/3
ghayba absence 6/1, 2
ghāyib absent 7/1
ghayr other, not, un~ 7/1, 16, 10/7, 14/10; ~ 9ādīi extraordinary 10/3;
~ mumkin impossible,
~ mustafāmal unused, disused,
~ 9arābī non-Arab,
u ~ u/ha and so on 7/16
ghayyar II change 9/10
ghurfa ghuraf room 3/1;
~t hammām bathroom,
~t noun bedroom 3/3; ~t tijāra
Chamber of Commerce 10/1

h
habb yiḥabb I like, love 8/4, 5, 12
habb grains, seeds 9/5; ~a ḥubūb
grain, seed, ~at tīn (etc.) see 9/7
ḥadath yahduth I happen 15/1
ḥadd huddūd limit 11/1;
li ~ al-ān until now 11/2
ḥādith ḥawādith event 15/1
ḥādar yahdur I attend 10/3
ḥaddār I prepare 10/3
ḥādir present 7/13; ready, present, certainly 9/1;
fi l-waqt al~ at present 10/2
ḥādir tāk (etc.) you (etc.) 2/1, 2
ḥaṭaf yihṭaq I keep 6/1, 2
ḥaka yiḥki I speak 8/7, 8
ḥākī speaking 10/5
hāl ḥabhūl condition 1/1; kayf ḥabhūl
(etc.) how are you? (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4;
kayf al~ how are you? 5/2;
husn al~ good conditions,
sū’ al~ poor conditions 12/15;
9ala kull ~ in any case 11/1, 2
ḥāla case 8/1
ḥālhum (etc.) themselves (etc.)
13/1; see 13/14
halib milk 9/3
hall yihill I, kill solve 8/4, 5
halq ḥulqūq throat 12/1
ḥamd (al-) illa thank you, thank heavens 1/1, 5; al~ illa thank you, thank heavens 5/1
ḥammāl porter 3/1
ḥammām bath 3/3
ḥamrā’ ~ ahmar
haqīqa haqīqāq truth,
fi l~ in truth 11/20
ḥaqq ḥuqq field 8/1
ḥaraka movement 14/1
ḥūrārā heat, fever;
ḍarajat ~ temperature 12/1
ḥarb ḥurūb (f.) war 15/3
ḥārār hot 13/3
ḥāsis sensing 10/5
ḥass yiḥiss I feel 8/4, 5
ḥashara insect 9/8

hā
hāl ḥabhūl condition 1/1; kayf ḥabhūl
(etc.) how are you? (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4;
kayf al~ how are you? 5/2;
husn al~ good conditions,
sū’ al~ poor conditions 12/15;
9ala kull ~ in any case 11/1, 2
ḥāla case 8/1
ḥālhum (etc.) themselves (etc.)
13/1; see 13/14
halib milk 9/3
hall yihill I, kill solve 8/4, 5
halq ḥulqūq throat 12/1
ḥamd (al-) illa thank you, thank heavens 1/1, 5; al~ illa thank you, thank heavens 5/1
ḥammāl porter 3/1
ḥammām bath 3/3
ḥamrā’ ~ ahmar
haqīqa haqīqāq truth,
fi l~ in truth 11/20
ḥaqq ḥuqq field 8/1
ḥaraka movement 14/1
ḥūrārā heat, fever;
ḍarajat ~ temperature 12/1
ḥarb ḥurūb (f.) war 15/3
ḥārār hot 13/3
ḥāsis sensing 10/5
ḥass yiḥiss I feel 8/4, 5
ḥashara insect 9/8
ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART I

hashd hashid crowd 15/1
hatta until, as far as 2/7, 8;
so that 5/1; until 8/1, 2;
~ u law even if 11/1, 15
hātit putting 10/5
hātīyibūt I put 8/4, 5
hāwal III try 11/4
hāwar III dialogue with 11/4
hāwāl see 2/8
hāwātī around, about 2/7, 8
hawl around, about 2/7
hayā hayawāt life 13/1
hayawān animal 9/8
hayawāt → haya
hayy āhāyā quarter (of town) 4/1
hazīrān June 10/15
hazz: li husn al~ fortunately
12/1, 2, 15;
li sū āl~ unfortunately 12/2, 15
hiijā see 10/15
hiikāya narrative 10/11
hill ḫilllūl solution 9/1, 10/11
hilu, ḥilwa sweet 9/3
hilwa → ḥilu, qahwa see 9/4
hilwiyāt dessert, sweets 9/1
hisāb account 3/3; arithmetic 8/3
hisāf hisn horse 9/8
hiwār dialogue 11/9
hīzāt hāzāb (political) party 15/3
hubāb → habb
hudād → hadd
hukm dhāhāt autonomy 15/3
hukāma government 1/9;
maawazzaf ~ civil servant 1/2
hukāmi governmental 1/9
huilūl → ḥill
hulaq → halq
humr → ʿahmar
hugāl → haql
hurr ʿahrār free, ʿīya freedom 13/11
hurāb → ḥarb
husn good (noun) 12/2, 15; → hazz
husna best 9/14
husnun → hisān
husḥūd → ḥashd

i
i-tāmar VIII deliberate 13/6
i-timār deliberation 13/10
ibtāda VIII begin 13/6
ibtidā `beginning 13/1, 10; ~ an min
with effect from 13/10; ~ī primary
8/3; initial, primary 13/10
ibyadd IX blanch, go white 14/4
idhārab VIII clash 13/7
idhīrāb commotion, riot 13/10
ifākar VIII think 13/6
ifūdah VIII inaugurate 13/6
ifītīhah VIII inauguration 13/6;
~ī inaugural 13/10
ihamm VIII bi[fī be concerned by,
look after 13/6
ihītimām concern, attention 13/10;
ghayr gābil li l~ unremarkable
14/10
ihmarr IX go red, blush 14/4
ihmiyar going red 14/4
ihṭīj VIII ʿīla need 13/6
ihṭall VIII occupy 13/6
ihṭīmal VIII tolerate, be probable
13/6
ihṭāram VIII respect 13/6
ihṭīlāl occupation 13/10
ihṭimāl tolerance, probability 13/10
ihṭirām respect 13/10
ihṭiyāj need 13/10
ijāihad VIII exert oneself 13/6
ijāmāh VIII congregate 13/6
ijīthād zeal 13/10
ijīmad9 VIII meeting 5/3, 13/10;
~ī social 13/10
ikbīr → kbr
iktāshaf VIII discover 13/6
ikthīr → kthīr
ikhdarr IX go green 14/4
ikhātār VIII choose, select 14/1
ikhtiyārī optional 8/3
illī who, which, that 8/1, 13–15
imtadd VIII be extended 13/6
imtāz VIII be distinguished 13/6
imtiḥān examination 13/10
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>istaḥām</td>
<td>enquire about 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḡfār</td>
<td>apologise for 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḡnā</td>
<td>do without 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḡhrāb</td>
<td>be astonished at 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥlaq</td>
<td>last 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥbaq</td>
<td>deserve 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥḍār</td>
<td>summon 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥṣan</td>
<td>consider good 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḏāb</td>
<td>grant a request 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḏwāb</td>
<td>interrogate 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḵbar</td>
<td>be arrogant, consider great 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḵdām</td>
<td>employ 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istamār</td>
<td>continue 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istānkār</td>
<td>reject 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istānna</td>
<td>X wait for 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaqaql</td>
<td>independent, consider small 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaqaqal</td>
<td>receive 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istarāb</td>
<td>rest 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istashār</td>
<td>consult 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istathmar</td>
<td>invest 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istathna</td>
<td>except 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istawrad</td>
<td>import 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istawsaf</td>
<td>consult (a doctor) 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istawṣan</td>
<td>settle (in a place) 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥṭād</td>
<td>be ready 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istaḥlam</td>
<td>use 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isti’jār</td>
<td>tenancy 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isti’nāf</td>
<td>resumption 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḥbād</td>
<td>substitution 11/1, 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istighrāb</td>
<td>astonishment 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḥgāq</td>
<td>merit 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḥjavāb</td>
<td>interrogation 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḥkhdām</td>
<td>employment 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istimrār</td>
<td>continuation 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istinḵār</td>
<td>rejection 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḡbāl</td>
<td>reception 3/1, 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḡlāl</td>
<td>independence 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḵrād</td>
<td>importation 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiḵrāḥa</td>
<td>rest 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiṭmnār</td>
<td>investment 11/3, 14/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istiṭmnā</td>
<td>exception 14/8; ~i exceptional 8/1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
istihâd readiness 14/8
isti'9māl use 14/8
iswâd IX go black 14/4
isfâr IX go yellow 14/4
isti'âna IV manufacture 13/7
isti'âna manufacture,
~ artificial 13/10
isti'âghal VIII work 13/6
isti'târâ VIII buy 13/6
isti'târâkh participation, ~ social
13/10; ~iya socialism 13/11
isti'tâhâd VIII be united 13/6
isti'tâqîf VIII 9ala agree on 13/6
isti'tâkhdhâd VIII take 13/6
isti'tâsâl VIII b/ff contact 13/6
isti'tâf (spoken) agreement, ~iya
(written) agreement 15/3
isti'tâlīhd unity, union 13/10; al~
al-'urubbî European Union, al~
as-suflayîti/sufluwayîti Soviet Union
15/3; ~ federal 13/10;
~iya federalism 13/11
isti'tâkhdhâd taking 13/10
isti'sîl (telephone) call 7/3; contact
13/10
isti'tâyn two 4/11; (youm) al~
Monday 7/14
isti'hâshîr twelve 5/12
iyyâ~ see 11/1, 17
izdâd VIII be increased 13/7
izdâwaj VIII be double 13/7
izdâyâd increase 13/10
izraqî IX go blue 14/4
i9'tâbar VIII consider 13/6
i9'tâmâd VIII 9ala rely on 13/6
i9'tâqâd VIII believe 13/6
i9'tâbîr consideration 13/10; ~ an min
starting/with effect from 13/10;
→ 'akhdhâd
i9'timâd confidence 8/16;
accreditation, ~ 9ala dependence
on, confidence in 13/10;
→ 'awrâq
i9'tiqâd belief 13/10
i9wajj IX become bent 14/4
jāb yijjâb I bring 6/4, 7/4
jabal jibâl mountain 13/3
jabr algebra 8/3
jadâwil → jadâwâl
jadâd II renew, renovate 9/10
jadîd jadad new 6/11;
~ an recently 9/1, 11/19
jadâwâl jadâwil timetable 2/3;
~ al-9mâl agenda 10/3
jâhil juhhal ignorant 8/3
jâî next (in time) 7/13
jâkayr jacket 14/3
jâlîs yijlis I sit 8/1
jalâm jîmâl camel 9/8
jamârik → jumruk
jâmb beside 2/7
jamilî beautiful 4/1
jâmî9 all 8/19
jâmî9-a university 4/1; ~ at ad-duwal
al-9arabîya League of Arab
States 15/3; ~ university (adj.) 8/3
jâmîb jawânbî side 15/1
jâmîb south, ~ gharbî southwest,
~ sharîf southeast 13/3
jâra yijrî I flow, proceed 8/7, 8;
see 15/6
jârâyîd → jârîda
jârît jâriya jâriyîn current (adj.) 7/13,
10/5; flowing 9/1
jârîda jârâyîd newspaper 11/1
jârrâb II try 9/10
jârrâb surgeo 12/3
jalash → 'a9m
jalash 'ajâwîba reply 5/1; answer 11/9
jâwâb III answer 11/4
jawânb → jâmîb
jawâz, ~ safar passport 2/1
jawâla tour 5/1, 2
al-jâzâyîr Algeria, Algiers 1/2
jâzîmân: shukrân ~ many thanks 1/1
jâzîmâr island 13/3;
shâbîsh ~ peninsula 13/3, 16
jîbâl → jabal
jibnâ cheese 9/3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiddan</td>
<td>very 1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jimāl</td>
<td>→ jamal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jinayh</td>
<td>pound (£) 2/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jinayna</td>
<td>garden 6/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jins</td>
<td>‘ajnās sort 14/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jirāḥ</td>
<td>surgical 12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jism</td>
<td>‘ajnās 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jisr</td>
<td>jus 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jōsh</td>
<td>jus 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūs</td>
<td>jūs 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūs</td>
<td>jūs 395</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- māhā → anything at all, mata
- mā → at some/any time, mīn
- mā → anybody at all, wayn mā → somewhere or other, 13/13;
- yakūn fī there will be 7/8
- kanādir → kundara
- kanīsa kanāyīs church 4/3
- kānūn → (al-)’awwal December,
  → (al-)jihān January 10/15
- kārūsī → kūrisī
- kārim kūramā’ generous 6/11
- kās ku’ūs a glass 9/1
- kāslān kāslā lazy 8/3
- kās sawwār 9/10
- kātab yutūb l, kītāba write 3/6, 5/4
- kātab III write to 11/4, 12/5
- kātīb writing 11/5;
  → kūtīb, → a clerk 10/9,
  → ‘āla
- kāthtar II increase 13/1, 2
- kāwa yikwī l, kawī iron 14/3
- kawī ironing 14/3
- kawn existence 10/11
- kāwwan II constitute 9/10
- kāyf how 1/1; → mā as 11/15;
  → hāl, kān
- kasfīya mode, manner 10/1
- kūr kūr big 3/1; → sinn
- kīlāh → kalb
- kīlou kīloum gram 14/3
- kīmīya chemistry 8/3
- kīs ‘akyās bag 2/1
- kītāb kūtub book 2/1
- kītāba writing 8/3, 10/11
- kīthīr kīthār much, many 3/1, 17;
  → very 4/1, 2, 14
- kū’ūs → kās
- kūbra biggest 9/14; → dawla
- kul, → eat see 5/9
- kulayb puppy 13/17
- kull whole, all 5/1, 8/1, 18, 19;
  → 9āla → hāl in any case 11/1, 2
- kullīya faculty, college 8/3
- kundura kānādir shoe 14/3
- kūramā’ → kārim
- kūrsī kārāsī chair 6/3
- kūtayyīb booklet 13/17
li to, for 2/7, 8, 6/8; of 11/27; see 5/13;
~ 'ann because 14/1, 9;
~ mīn whose 5/15
lībiya Libya 1/2
liha → lihya
līhām welding 8/3, 23
lihya liha beard 6/15
lījān → lajna
lisān 'alsina (m./f.) tongue 12/1;
→ nāṭiq
lissa still, yet, (+ neg.) not yet 6/1
līdz → lazīz
līra lira 2/3
līsta menu 9/1
louān alwān colour 14/1
lūbnān Lebanon 1/2
lugha language 4/1, 8/3
lufаfī → latīf
mā do/does/did/will not 3/9, 5/7,
6/5, 19, 12/17, 14/10; what 12/9;
~ huwa/hiyu what 8/1, 15;
~ fi shī there is/it is nothing 4/1, 2;
→ 'ajmal, kān, yāli
ma 'kīl eaten 10/5
ma 'mūr official (noun) 2/1;
ordered 10/5
mahābī begun 10/5
mahābī' sold 10/5
mahārīk! congratulations! 14/1, 2
mabhūt well, pleased 1/1, 3
madākhil → madkhal
madāris → madrasa
madī yimūd I extend 8/4, 5
māddīa mawād material,
~ 'awwāliyya raw material,
~ tijāriyya commodity 11/3
maddād II extend 14/10
madfa'iyyt → dafī
madīna mudun city 13/3
madkhal madākhil entrance 4/3
madrasa madāris school 7/1, 8/23
mādī madīya mādīyin past 7/13
magāriq → magafrīq
magārīḥ → mifāḥ
magḥām understood 8/1
mafsaq magāriq crossroad 4/3, 8/23
mafsīḥ open(ed) 3/3
al-maghribi: Morocco 1/2
mahamama mahāmīn task,
assignment 7/1
mahma, ~ kān whatever 11/15;
~ kān anything at all 13/13
mahākīm → mahkama
mahall place 1/1, ~āl (pl.)
department store 4/3
mahattā station 8/23
mahdar ītimādī minutes (of meeting)
10/3
mahkama mahākīm law-court 8/23
mahkī spoken 10/5
mahsās sensed, tangible 10/5
maḥtūt put 10/5
majāl bāḥti terms of reference 10/3
majālis → majīl
majāriḥ → majriḥ
majbūr forced 12/1
majālis majālīs council,
~ an-nawwāb/ash-shuyūkhi
lower/upper house of Parliament,
~ al-wuzarī cabinet (of
ministers) 15/3
majūrī majūrīḥ injured 12/3
makātīb → maktab, maktaba
makātīb → maktab
makīnā: katab yuktub
~ al-~ bi l→ type
5/1
maktab makātīb office 4/3, 8/23
maktaba makātīb library, bookshop
4/3, 8/23
maktab written 5/1, 10/5;
~ makātīb letter 10/9
makhārī → makhraj
makhārīr → mukhtār
makhāzin → makhzn
makhlūṭ mixed 9/1
makhraj makhārīj exit 4/3
makhūf feared 10/5
makhzan makhāzin warehouse 4/3
māl: shī → ak (etc.) what's wrong with
you (etc.) 12/1, 2; → ra's
mālābis clothes 2/1, 14/3; → taḥt
malān full 12/1
malāyūn → malyūn
malāqiq → malāqqa
malik mulāk king 15/3
māliya finance 4/3
malmās tangible 12/1
malyūn malyūn million 7/10
malāqqa malaqqa spoon 9/3
manlakā mamālik kingdom 15/3
mārnnūn grateful 4/1, 2
mārnāā prohibited, forbidden 8/1
manāshīf → minshafo
manāshīr → minshār
manātiq → mīntaqa
manāzil → manzl
manāzīr → manzara
mandāb delegate 10/1;
commissioner 15/3
manzil manāzil residence 8/23
manzara manāzir view 13/1
maqāla (press) article 11/1
maqāyīs → mīqyās
māqīl fried 9/1
māqrū cut off 7/3
mara'niswān woman 6/3
marād 'amrād sickness 12/3
marākīz → markz
marādā → marād
marhaba, ~ustain hello 1/1, 3
marīd marzā 6/11
māris March 10/15
marjū requested 10/5
markz markākiz centre 4/3;
(telephone) exchange 7/1
marr yimurrr 1 bi/9ala pass by 8/4, 5
marr a time 7/13
mas'āla mas'āval matter 8/1, 10/11
mas'ūl person in charge 5/3;
~ (9an) responsible (for) 5/1, 10/5
masa 'amsā (m.) afternoon,
evening, ~ l-khayr/n-nūr good
afternoon/evening 1/1, 3
masābīkh → mashbah
masājid → masjid
masūmūr → mismār
masāyīl → mas'āla
masbah masābih swimming pool 3/3
māshī Christian 13/1
masjīd masajīd mosque 4/3
masīf boiled 9/3
masādir → masdar
masālīkh → maslahā
masānī9 → masna9
masdar masādir source 15/1, 2
maslahā masālih (legal/political)
interest 15/3
masna9 masānī9 factory 8/23
masha yimshī 1 walk 8/7, 8
masghāhil → masghhal
masākīl → muskīla
māshalla! Good heavens! 6/1, 2
masūhrī9 → mashrā9
masghhal masāghhal workshop
8/1, 23
masghhal busy 5/3
māshī walking 10/5
masūhrīk ft doubted 10/5
masūhrū drink 9/3, 10/9;
~āt (pl.) liquor 2/1
masūhrū9 masūhrī9 project 10/1
masūf seen 10/5
mata when 5/15;
~ má whenever 11/15;
~ má kār at some/any time 13/13
māsābik → māshīkh
māsālī → māshīb
māsār airport 2/3, 8/23
mātār 'amfār rain 13/1
mātār yumfār 1 rain 13/3
māsāqīm → masāqīm
māshīkh māshībik kitchen 6/3, 8/23
māshīb māshībih request 10/11
māshīb requested 10/5
māsāqīm restaurant 3/3, 8/23
maslāh 'amthāl example 11/19;
~an for example 8/1, 11/19
mawāddā → māddā
mawānī → mīnā
mawāsim → mousim
mawā9id → mou9id
ma'awal II finance 9/10
may mī'yāḥ water,
~ mā'dānī mineral water 9/3
maydān mayyādīn square (in town) 4/3
mā'yū May 10/15
māzza hurs dā' uvers 9/1
mazzāḥ correct 4/1; → qahwa
mā with 2/7; → an together 11/19;
~ as-salāma goodbye 2/1, 2;
~ 'inn although 11/15
mā'āhid → mā'ahad
mā'āmil → mā'amil
mā'ālaysh no matter 4/1, 2
mā'arīf → mā'ərif
mā'dānī' mineral (adjective) 9/3
mā'had mā'ahid institute 8/1, 23
mā'īsha life 13/1
mā’ilām known, of course 8/1;
~-ā (pl.) information 10/1, 9
mā'mal mā'mil workshop, laboratory 8/23
mā'ərif mā'ərif knowledge, acquaintance 5/1, 10/10, 11
mā'ərif famous 4/1; known 10/5;
'īmal (etc.) ~ be so kind 9/1, 2
miftāḥ mafītalīb key 3/1, 8/23
mikānīk mechanics 8/3
mīlād Christmas,
~ 'ī, sana → 'ay 10/15
milā'ī file (of papers) 5/3
mīlīh salt 9/3
mīmīn than 9/13; from what 12/9
mīn from 1/1, 2/7, 8; since 3/15; than 9/13; ~ ayl for (the sake of) 15/1;
~ al- see 6/17; ~ fadālikum please 1/4; ~ faddak please 1/1, 3;
~ fađil please 1/1, 4; ~ qarīb recently 11/24; ~ sha' n for the sake of 6/1;
~ zamān for a long time now 6/2; (in fractions) see 7/11
mīn who, whose 5/15; lī ~ whose 5/15; ~ ilī who see 8/15;
~ mā whoever 11/15;
~ mā kān anyone at all 13/13
mīnā mawānī port 13/3
minshāfa manāshīf' towel 3/3, 8/23
minshār manāshīr saw 8/23
mintaqā manātīq region, area 13/1
miqyās maqāyīs measurement 8/23
mirīd yimrād I be/fall ill 12/3
mīsim māsimīr nail 8/23
miṣr Egypt 1/2, 9; ~ī Egyptian 1/9
mīsh not 4/1, 13, 6/19, 7/16, 10/7;
~ bațāl not bad 1/1, 3;
~ qailīf quite a lot 12/2;
~ kādha isnāt that so? 4/1
mū → mīya
mitayn two hundred 7/1, 10
mitr 'antār metre 4/1
mīthl like 2/7, 8/22; as ... as 9/15;
~ mā as 8/22
mī-yā hundred 5/1; ~t hundred 5/12;
fi/bi l'-ya percent 7/11
mīyāḥ → may
mīzānīya budget 5/3
mnīh mnīhī good 6/11
moudīfī mawādī'ī subject, shaklan
→ an in form and content 11/19
mouājad present, available 5/1, 10/5
mouājad an-nabī the Prophet's birthday 10/15
mouqīf: ~ bāx bus stop 4/3;
~ min attitude towards 15/1
mouṣīm mawāṣīm season 10/15
mouz bananas 9/5; ~a banana 9/6;
ḥabbat ~ banana 9/7
mouādīd mawādīd appointment 4/1
mu'ālīf writer 1/2
mu'tāmar conference 7/1, 13/9
mubāhhar spicy 9/3
mubātīd beginner 13/9
mudād → mudīd
mudārā' → mudīr
mudarrīs instructor 8/3, 10/9
mudda mudād period 5/1, 7/13
muddīr mudārā' director 1/2;
manager 5/3
mudun: 'ahl al-
~ zamān at the townspeople 13/3;
→ mādīna
muddīf added 11/8
mudīf stewardess 1/1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mudjarib</td>
<td>agitated 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudhakkira</td>
<td>memorandum 10/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudhir</td>
<td>(radio, TV) announcer 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mudif</td>
<td>useful 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhaddara</td>
<td>departure 2/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhajara</td>
<td>immigration 2/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukhandis</td>
<td>engineer 1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukimm</td>
<td>important 5/1, 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubaddar</td>
<td>prepared 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muba'dir</td>
<td>preparing 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubami</td>
<td>lawyer 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhammara</td>
<td>roasting(ed) 9/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubarram</td>
<td>see 10/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubahsi</td>
<td>accountant 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubahwala</td>
<td>attempt 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubahwara</td>
<td>dialogue 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubibb; dawla/duwal</td>
<td>a state(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace-loving nation(s)</td>
<td>(الدولة والدولة السلمي)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubif</td>
<td>ocean 13/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubmar</td>
<td>reddening 14/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muhaj</td>
<td>needy 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubhall</td>
<td>occupied, occupying 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubtama</td>
<td>bearable, probable 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mubtazam</td>
<td>respected 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahab</td>
<td>obligatory 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujib</td>
<td>obligating 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujaz</td>
<td>summary 15/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujahiid</td>
<td>industrious 6/1, 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mkatiba</td>
<td>correspondence 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muktib</td>
<td>correspondent 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukawwan</td>
<td>constituted 10/6; ~ min composed/consisting of 10/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukawwin</td>
<td>constituting 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukayyif</td>
<td>(air)conditioner 6/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukhadda</td>
<td>pillow 3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukhtalif</td>
<td>varied, various 8/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukhtar</td>
<td>makhfuir mayor 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulqa</td>
<td>encounter 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulhaq</td>
<td>attaché 6/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulak</td>
<td>→ malik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumarrid</td>
<td>orderly, a nurse 12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumathil</td>
<td>representative 10/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumkin</td>
<td>possible 7/1, 9; may, might, can 7/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumtadd</td>
<td>extended 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumtaz</td>
<td>excellent 5/1; excellent, distinguished 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munasib</td>
<td>suitable 8/1, 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munazzama</td>
<td>organisation, body 10/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundh</td>
<td>since 2/7, 3/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munfa'ir</td>
<td>explosive 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munfasil</td>
<td>separate(d) 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munhall</td>
<td>(being) solved 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muntakhab</td>
<td>elected 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muntakhib</td>
<td>elector 13/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu'tj</td>
<td>productive 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muna'aba</td>
<td>encounter 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqabil</td>
<td>opposite, remuneration 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqaddam</td>
<td>offered, presented 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqaddim</td>
<td>offering, presenting 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqarrir</td>
<td>reporter 10/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqatila</td>
<td>fight 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqatil</td>
<td>fighter, ~a fighter aircraft 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muqbil</td>
<td>next 7/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mur</td>
<td>~i, ~a order see 5/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murabba</td>
<td>jam 9/3; educated 10/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murabbi</td>
<td>educating 10/6; educator 10/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu'ashshah</td>
<td>candidate 8/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murdi</td>
<td>muri oath muridiin satisfactory 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mursal</td>
<td>sent 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mursil</td>
<td>sender 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mur'</td>
<td>traffic 4/1, 10/11; ma9 ~ az-zaman with the passage of time 7/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musafir</td>
<td>traveller 2/3, 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musahhada</td>
<td>help 11/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musahhid</td>
<td>assistant 7/1, 11/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musakkar</td>
<td>closed 3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mussakhkan</td>
<td>cooked in spices 9/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musawwada</td>
<td>draft 10/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musta'</td>
<td>ja tenant 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustajo'</td>
<td>deserving 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustahsan</td>
<td>approved 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustajib</td>
<td>'ila responsive to 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustakhir</td>
<td>employee 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustakhdim</td>
<td>employer 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustamirr</td>
<td>continuous 14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustansir</td>
<td>objectionable 14/7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mustaqbal future 14/7
mustaqbil (radio) receiver 14/7
mustaqil independent 14/7
mustarāh lavatory 14/7
mustarīf restful 14/7
mustashār counsellor 14/7
mustashfa hospital 4/3
mustathmir beneficiary 14/7
mustathna excepted 14/7
mustawrād import 11/1;
imported 14/7
mustawrid importer 14/7
mustawṣaf clinic 14/7
mustawfīn native 14/7
musta9idd ready, prepared 8/1, 14/7
musta9mal used 7/1, 14/7
musta9mil user 14/7
mustirr persistent, resolute 11/8
mustāna9 fabricated 13/9
musthikala masha'tākil problem 7/1
mustirif supervisor 11/1
mustarāk common, joint 13/9, 15/3
mustarayāt (pl.) shopping 14/3
mustārāk participant 13/9
muta 'akhhir delayed, late 2/3, 12/7
muta 'assif sorry 7/1, 12/7
mutabādāl mutual, reciprocal 12/7
mutakallim speaker 12/7
mutakharrij graduate 8/3
mutakhassīs specialising,
specialist 5/1, 12/7
mutanawwal available 12/7
mutanāwib alternating 12/7
mutaqaddim translated 12/12
mutarjam translator 12/12
mutawādīl in charge 12/7
mutawaqqa9 conditional/dependant on 12/7
mutawassit middle, medium (adj.)
8/1; → bahār
mutazāhir demonstrator 12/7
muta9allim educated, apprentice 12/7
muta9alliq bi relevant/pertinent to
nāshif dry 14/3
nashra bulletin 15/1
nātiq bi līsān spokesman 15/3
nawā yinwī I intend 8/7, 8, 12
nawwā9 II assort, vary 14/1
nazzal II take down 9/10
nazāri: bi sāra ~ya theoretically
     8/1, 11/22
naḏīf muḵfā9’ clean 6/11
naḏha9 9ula n-nāshif dry-clean 14/3
nāṣib nuwwāb deputy, member of
     lower house of parliament 15/3
na9am yes 1/1
nbīḏ wine 9/3
niḥna we 1/5
nijāra carpentry 8/3, 8/23
an-nīl Nile 13/3
niqābat 9ummāl trade union 11/3
niqāsha painting 8/23
niṣān April 10/15
niṣ ḫ yinṣa I forget 8/9, 12
niswān women 6/11
nisf ’ansāf half 7/11
niẓil yinṣil I, nuẓil get/go down 3/6, 5/4
noun sleep 10/11
nu99 ‘awwā9 kind (noun ),
     ‘ayy ~ min what kind of 5/15
novimbiir November 10/15
niqūl descent 10/11
nuḏfā9 → naḏīf
numra numar number 7/1
nuqqaš → nāqīs
nuskha masakh copy 5/3
nuṣ half 7/1, 11; ~ layl midnight 7/3
nuskurarlaa than God 1/1;
     thank you 1/3
nuwwāb → majlis, nāṣib
q
qābal III meet 11/4
qābil li: ~ l-ghasil washable 14/1, 10;
     ~ li t-tajdid renewable,
     ~ li t-tamādil extensible 14/10;
     ~ li l-iḥtimād reliable 15/2;
     → iḥtimām
qabl before 2/7, 6/18; ago 3/15;
     ~ mā before 6/18;
     ~ an before(hand) 11/19
qad see 15/11
qaddam II offer, serve, present 9/10
qadīm qutamā’ old 6/11
qadīya qadīya case, cause 15/3
al-qāhira Cairo 5/17
qāhwa coffee 1/1; ~ ḫilwa very
     sweet, ~ sāḍa without sugar 9/3;
     ~ mazbāṭ(a) medium sweet 9/3
qāl yiqūl I, qawl say 6/4, 7/4
qāl bal qulūb heart 12/3; ~īyan
cordially 9/1
qālī little 9/13; mish ~ quite a lot 12/2
qām yiqūm I bi, qiyām undertake
     6/4, 7/4
qamar ‘aqmār moon 13/3
qanīs qumsān shirt 14/3
qammāsh draper, cloth merchant
     14/1
qanānī → qinnīna
qanāṣil → qunsul
qara yiqraa I, qirāya read 8/7, 8
qarār resolution 10/3
qārī reading 10/5
qarib: ~ min near to 4/1;
     ~ an soon 11/19;
     ~ min ~ recently, 9an ~ soon 11/23
qārra continent 13/3
qarrar II decide, report 9/10
qāriya qura village 13/1
qās yiqās I measure 14/3
qaṣd see 12/15
qaṣīr qisār short 6/11
qaṣš yiquss I cut 14/1
qāṭal III fight 11/4
qawī ‘aqwiyyā strong 9/13
qawil ‘aqwīl saying, utterance 10/11
qa9da see 10/15
min qībal by, on the part of 13/15
qidir yiqdar I can, be able
     8/1, 12
qinnīna qanānī bottle 9/3
qirāya reading 8/3, 10/5
qism ‘aqsām division, department
     5/1
qiṣār → qaṣīr
gitāl light 11/9
qiṭ9a → qiṭ9a
qiṭā9 sector,
al- al-khāṣṣ private sector,
al- al-9āmm public sector 5/3;
~ al-khīdāmī services sector 11/3
qiṭ9a qiṭ9a part, component 11/1
giyām bi undertaking 10/11
qānçh "aqmīshā cloth 14/1
qudamā' → qadīm
guddām in front of 2/7
quduman ahead 9/1, 2
gulūb → qalb
gumšān → qamīṣ
qunsul qanāṣīl consul,
~īya consulate 4/3
qura: 'ahl al- ~ al-'awwal/ath-thānī see 10/15
~ al-wuzar (~ al-jumhūrī) ~ al-khīdāmī (~ al-khīdāmī)
~ al-khīdāmī
ra 'ī ra'ī opinion 7/1; shū ~ yak (etc.) what do you (etc.) think?
7/2
ra 'īs ru 'asā' chairman 10/3;
(~ al-jumhūrī) president (of the republic) 15/3;
~ al-wazara' prime minister 15/3;
~ī principal, main 4/3
ra's ru 'īs head 12/3; ~ as-sana New Year 10/15; ~ māl capital 11/3;
~īlīya capitalism 13/11;
9āla ~ī certainly 4/1, 2
rabba II bring up, educate 9/10
rabīh yirbaḥ I min profit from 11/3
rabīh spring (season) 10/15;
~ al-'awwal/ath-thānī see 10/15
rabīh fourth 8/20
rášīdiyā radio 15/1
raghba raghābāṭī wish for 8/1
bi r-ragḥm min despite 2/7
ráḥ yirāḥ I go 6/4, 7/4
ráḥ- shall, will 10/14, 15/12
raja yarjū I request 8/7, 8
rajab see 10/15
ra'ī requesting 10/5
rajul riyāl man 6/3
rákib rukkāb passenger 2/3, 10/9
rama yirmī I throw 8/7, 8
ramādān see 10/15
raml rāmāl sand, ~ī sand (adj.) 13/3
raqm 'argām figure, number 4/1, 8/21
rasab yursub I fail (in examination)
8/3
rasīmī official 5/3; bi sīrā ~ yā
officially 11/1; ~yān officially 11/19
rashī a cold 12/1
rāyīh going to, shall, will 10/14, 15/12
rayy irrigation 13/1
riyādī sport 8/3
riyādiyāt mathematics 8/3
riyāḥ → rīḥ
ribīḥ 'arbāḥ profit 11/3
rīḥ riyāḥ (f) wind 13/3
rijāl → rajul
rijīn yirja9 I return 5/4
rikīb yirkaḥ I mount, get into 3/6, 5/4
rimāl → raml
risālā letter 5/1
riyāl rial, riyal 2/3
rkāḥ ṭartāḥ cheap 6/11
ru 'asā' → ra 'īs
ru 'īs → ra's
rubīn 'arbāḥ a quarter 7/11
rufāt return 10/11
rukkāb → rākīb
räsiyā Russia 15/3
ruzz rice 9/1
sa shall, will 15/12
sa 'al yis'āl I su'āl/mas'āla enquire
3/7, 16, 5/4
bi sabab because of 2/7
sabbāb II cause 15/1
sabbāb smelter, plumber 8/23
sābih former 6/1
sabīnī mīya seven hundred 7/10
sābih seventh 8/20
sabt: (youm) as-~ Saturday 7/14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sab9a 7/1; 4/1, 11;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—‘as̱ẖr 17/2; 5/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabīn 7/5; 5/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāda 7/5; 9/3; → qahwa, sayyid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sādati 1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sādis 8/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāfar → jawāz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāfar III travel 11/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safir safirā‘ ambassador 4/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāhil easy, ~ sūhil plain (noun) 13/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sahlan → aḥlan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāhla square (in town) 4/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāhāb clouds, ~ sūhāb cloud 13/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāhab yishab I pull 13/4; drag 13/14; ~ hālū take oneself off 13/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakākīn → sikkīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakan yusakin I live 6/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sākīn sūkkān inhabitant 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakkar II shut 9/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salālim → sullam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salām peace 15/1; → muḥabb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salām-a: ~ lak (etc.) no, thank you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9/1, 2: Get well 12/1, 2; → ma9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sallim 9alayha (etc.) Give her (etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my/o ur regards 6/1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sana samāwāt (m./f.) sky 13/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samād ‘asmi’dā fertilisers 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samah yisamah I li permit 5/4, 8/12; → law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sama → sama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samāwāt → sama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samma II name 9/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sana samāwāt/snīn year 4/1, 10/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanawī annual, ~yan annually 11/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>santimitr centimetre 14/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāq yisāq I drive 6/4, 7/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saqat yusqat I fall 13/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sārim sīrā9 fast 9/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawa together 13/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawāyil → sāyil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawdā‘ → ‘aswād</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawfa shall, will 15/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawwāg driver 3/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāyil asking 10/5;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ sawāyil liquid, fluid 12/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sayyāra car 2/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
su9ad → sa9ad
sur9a → surah
sukkān: 9adad ~ population 13/2;
→ sákín
sukkar sugar 9/3
sukhn hot 9/3
sullam salālim staircase 6/3
sulta authority 15/3
sūq ‘aswāq (f.) market 11/1;
→ al-’urubbiya l-mushtaraka
Common Market 15/3
ṣūriya Syria 1/2
sur9a speed, bi ~ fast 11/20
su9a’dā → sa9id

ṣabāh: ~ al-khayr/an-nūr good
morning 1/1, 3;
~ an in the morning 11/19
ṣadar yus’ur I be issued, appear
10/1
ṣaddaq II believe 9/10
ṣaddar II export 11/3
ṣadīq ‘asdaq’ friend 6/11
ṣādirāt exports 11/3
ṣadr sudār chest 12/3
ṣafar see 10/15
ṣaff su9af (school) class 8/1
ṣafra’ → ‘asfar
ṣaghīr: 9id as ~ see 10/15
ṣahyānī Zionist 15/3
ṣahāra → sahara
ṣabih ‘asbah owner,
~ bayr landlord 6/3;
~ al-9amal employer 11/3
ṣabih ‘asbah true 4/1; healthy 12/3
ṣahin sahīn plate 9/1
ṣahrā ‘sahara/sahrāwāt desert 13/3
ṣālaun living-room 6/3
ṣanādiq → sandāq
ṣana9 yisna9 I manufacture 11/3
ṣandāq sanādiq box, trunk 2/3;
~ an-naqd ad-dawafi
International Monetary Fund 15/3
ṣanma9 II industrialise 9/10
ṣan9/sun9 manufacture 10/1
ṣār yisr I become 6/4, 7/4; begin to
9/12; → yiṣr; ~ li see 6/8

ṣawt ‘aswāt voice, noise 7/1
ṣawwār II depict, photograph 9/10
ṣaydalīya pharmacy 12/1
ṣayf summer 6/1;
~ ṣummer (adj.) 14/1
ṣa9b si9āb difficult 6/11
ṣghīrṣghīr small 2/1; → sinn
ṣīr zero 4/11
ṣīhā → sahīh
ṣīḥa health 4/3
as-sūn China, as ~ ash-sha9bī
People’s Republic of China 15/3
ṣinā9-a industry 4/3;
~ ṣ-industrial 15/3; → dawla
ṣi9āb → sa9b
ṣuhb ‘asbah morning 7/3
ṣudār → sa9dr
ṣufr → ‘asfar
ṣūfī → saff
ṣughra smallest 9/14
ṣuhfij journalist 1/2;
~ ṣa journalist 3/13
ṣuḥūn → sahn
ṣun9 → san9
ṣūra suwar form, shape, picture 5/1;
form, image, bi ~ ... in a ...
manner 11/21

sh
sha’ n shu’ōn matter 6/11; min ~
for the sake of 6/1
shabāb → šabb
shabābik → shubbāk
shāb šabāb young man 13/1
shādīd ‘ashiddā severe 9/13;
~ an severely, vigorously 11/19
šāf yishāf I see, look (at) 6/4, 7/4
shahāda certificate 8/1
shahr ‘ashhur month 6/11
shāf tea 1/1
shajar trees 9/5; ~ a tree 9/6
shakar yushkur 9ala thank for 5/4
šākīk doubting 10/5
shakk yishuuk 1 fla, shakk doubt 8/4, 5
shakk shukāk doubt 10/11, 11/20;
~ bi ša ~ doubtless 11/20
šakl ‘ashkāl form 11/19; pattern
ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART I

14/3; ~an wa moutdi9an in form
and content 11/19
shakhsh i ashkhah person 4/1;
someone see 9/16; ~i personal
2/1; ~yam personally 11/1, 19;
`aayi ~ anyone, no one see 9/16
ash-shah Damascus, Syria 6/1
shimal comprehensive 10/1
shams shumis (f.) sun 13/3
shantu (suit)case 2/1
shiqq shiquq apartment 6/3
sharaf honour 13/1, 2
sharaha yishrah I, sharh explain 5/4
sharashif ~ sharshaf
sharika company,
~ midir ~ company director 1/2
shari9 shawari9 street 4/1
sharq east, ash~ al-`adna Near
East, ash~ al-`aqsa Far East,
ash~ al-`awsat Middle East 13/3
sharraf II honour 9/10;
~tun see 9/1, 2
sharshaf sharashif sheet 3/3
shart shurit (pre)condition 8/1
shatawi winter (adj.) 14/3
shati9 shattar clever 6/1
shawari9 ~ shari9
shawwali see 10/15
shayja` seeing 10/3;
~ hul (etc.) conceited see 13/4
shaykh shuyukh old man, elder
13/1; senator 15/3
sha9bani see 10/15
sha9bi people Saw 15/3
shi` i ashayha` thing 4/1; something,
nothing see 9/16; kull ~ everything
6/1; `aayi ~ anything, nothing see
9/16; walali ~ nothing 9/1, 17;
something 6/1
shibih i ashbah resemblance 13/16;
~ jazira peninsula 13/3, 16;
~ hukami quasigovernmental,
~ qarra subcontinent,
~ rasmi semi-official 13/16
shidda vigour, severity,
bi ~ vigorously, severely 11/20
shimal left 4/1; north,
~ gharbi northwest,
~ sharqi northeast 13/3
shiqiq shiqqa
shirib yishrab I drink 8/1
shita `ashtiya winter 10/15;
snow 13/3
shloun see 8/24
shouka shuwak fork 9/3
shourabu soup 9/1
sh what 2/1, 5/15, 12/9;
~ malak (etc.) what is wrong with
you (etc.)? 12/1, 2
shu`in: ~ al-muwazzafin personnel
(matters) 5/3; ~ sha`n
shubat February 10/1, 15
shabbak shababik window 6/3
shughl i ashghal work 4/3
shukran thank you 1/1, 3
shakik ~ shakk
shumis ~ shams
shurt-a police, ~i policeman 4/3
shurti ~ shurt
shattar ~ shatir
shuwak ~ shouka
shuyukh ~ majlis, shaykh
shuyukhi communist 15/3
shwayy a little 4/1;
ba9d i~ soon 11/23

f

ta`akkhar V be delayed 12/4
ta`assaf V be sorry 12/4
ta`khir delay 2/3, 10/12
tabadul VI exchange with each
other 12/5
tabadul exchange 12/8
tabassam V smile 12/4
tabash9 belonging to 12/1 see 12/16
tabrid refrigeration 8/3
tadabir ~ tadbir
tadakhil VI, f intercede in 12/5
tadakkhal V, f intervene in 12/4
tadakkhul intervention 12/8
tadakhul interference 12/8
tadbir tadabir/tadbirat arrangement
10/12
túdhiya  heating 6/3
 tadřib  training 8/3
tadris  instruction 8/3, 10/12
tadhâkâr  →  tadhkara
tadhâkâr V remember 12/4
tadhkara  tadhâkâr ticket 2/3;
   (medical)  prescription 12/1
tafiham  mutual understanding 12/15
tafisil  →  tefsîl
tafilsaf  IQ  philosophise 12/12
tafisîl  tafisil  detail,
   bi t-t~  in detail 11/20
taghîr  change 10/12
tahrung  V improve, get better 12/4
tahrungun  improvement 12/1
tahdir  preparation 10/12;
   ~t preparatory 8/1, 11/11
tahsin  improvement 10/1
talt under 2/7; downstairs 6/3;
   malâhîs ~âniya  underclothes 14/3
tajrij  →  tajriba
tajdid  renewal, renovation 10/12;
   gâbil li t~  renewable 14/10
tajir  tujjir  businessman, trader 1/2
tajmil (act of)  collecting 10/1
tajriba  tajrij  attempt, experiment 10/12
tajrihi  experimental 11/11
takalif  →  takîif
takallam  V speak 12/4
takâth  VI write to each other 12/5
takîf  takif  cost 10/12
taksî  taxi 2/3
takwin  formation 10/12
takif  conditioning 8/3
takhasas  V f  specialise in 12/4
takhasas  specialisation 8/1, 12/8
takhsîf  planning 5/1
talâmîdîh  →  tilmîdîh
talâqa  VI come together, meet 12/5
talfan  IQ telephone 12/12
talfaz  IQ, talfaza  televise 12/12
talfaza  television 12/12
tamakkam  V min be capable of,
   possess 12/4
tamâm  complete, perfect, perfection 6/3; ~an completely 9/1, 11/19
tamâthil  →  timthil
tamdid  extension,
   gâbil li t-t~  extensible 14/10
tamm  yitimm  l be completed 8/4, 5;
   see 15/6	tammâz  July 10/15	tamr  dates (fruit) 9/1, 5; ~a tumûr
   9/6, habbat  ~ date 9/7
tanwil  financing 10/1, 12
tamîz  discrimination, ~ 9unsurî racial discrimination 15/3
tanîn  →  tannûra
tanawab  VI alternate 12/5
tanawal  VI reach for, take
   (food/drink) 12/5
tanuwul  intake (food/drink) 12/1, 8
tanfidh  execution, fulfillment 11/1
tânmiya  development 4/1
tannûra  tanîn  skirt 14/3
tanżim  organisation 5/1	taqaddam  V progress 12/4
taqaddum  advance, progress 12/1, 8;
   ~i progressive 12/8
taqir  →  taqîr
taqwîm  →  taqwîm
taqdim  offer(ing) 10/12
taqrij  approximation 11/19;
   ~an approximately 2/1, 11/19
taqrij  taqrij  report 8/3, 10/12;
   ~taqrijât  decision 10/12
taqwîm  taqwîm  calendar 10/15
taraddâd  V hesitate 12/4
taraddud  hesitation 12/8
tarajim  →  tarjama	tarak yutruk  I leave 3/6, 5/4
tarashshah  V catch a cold 12/4
tarbawi  educational 8/3
târbiya  education 4/3, 10/12;
   education, upbringing 8/3, 10/12
târîkh  tawarih  history, date 8/3
tarjama  IQ, tarjama tarajim  translate 12/12	tarjama tarajim  translation 12/12
tarîwîj  promotion 10/1
tasallam  V receive 12/4
täsi9 ninth 8/20
taswäiq marketing 10/1
tasnĩ9 industrialisation 10/12
taswäir depiction, photography 10/12
taswili voting 10/3
tasharruf V be honoured 12/4
tashrīf honouring 10/12;
~āt protocol 10/12
tażawwar V develop 12/4
tażawwar evolution, ~ī
evolutionary 12/8
tawaffar V be plentiful 14/3
tawalla V be (put) in charge 12/4
tawqāqaf V ādala depend on 12/4
tawqāqa9 V expect 12/4
tāwārikh → ārikh
tawassā9 V expand 12/4
tawassu9 expansion, ~ī expansionist
 12/8; ~īya expansionism 13/11
tawqīf′ detention, parking 10/12
tawqī9 signature 10/3
tawsī9 broadening, expansion 11/1
tāwysiya recommendation 10/3
tawṣīf′ recruitment 10/1, 12
taζalζal IQQ quake 12/12
taζalζal quaking 12/12
taζawwaj V bi get married to 13/1
taζāḥaw VI demonstrate (politically)
 12/5
taζāḥaw (political) demonstration
 12/8
taζāfā VI recover health 12/5
taζāl, ~ū, ~ū come see 8/10
taζallām V learn 12/4
taζallaq V bi depend on, pertain to
 12/4
taζarraraf V bi/īla get acquainted
  with 12/4
taζarraraf acquaintance 12/8
taζāwawān VI cooperate 12/5
taζāwawān cooperation 8/1, 12/8;
~ī cooperative 12/8; ~īya
coopertivism 13/11
taζbān tired 9/1
taζlim teaching 8/1, 10/10, 12;
~āt instructions 10/1, 12;
~ī educational 8/1, 11/11
tfaddal, ~ī, ~ū please 1/1, 3, 13
tijār-a trade 4/3; ghurfat – Chamber
of Commerce 10/1;
mādda –īya commodity 11/3
tikram, ~ī, ~ū certainly 3/1, 2
tiljoun telephone 7/1;
~īyan by telephone 7/3
tilmūdh talāmīdh pupil 6/1
timthāl tamāhīl statue 4/3
tīn figs 9/5; ~a fig 9/6;
ḥabbāt – fig 9/7
tisi9 miya nine hundred 7/10
tisi9a nine 4/1, 11;
~tāšīr nineteen 5/12
angīnin ninety 5/1, 12
ṭīṣḥīḥ (etc.) ādala khayr good night
 9/1, 2
tiṣhrīn see 10/15
taslim 9alayk (etc.) she sends her
  regards 6/1, 2
tsharrafna see 9/1, 2
tuffāḥ apples 9/5; ~a apple 9/1, 6;
ḥabbāt – apple 9/7
tudīd al-anbā′ bi it is reported 15/2
tujjār → tājīr
tūmūr → tamra
ṭūnis Tunis(a) 1/2
tus9 āṣā9 a ninth 7/12

f
ṭābla table 6/3
ṭabbākh cook 8/23
ṭābīb ′ajibbā′ doctor 1/1, 6/11
ṭab9an of course 4/1, 2
ṭalab yuṭla 1, ṭalab request 3/6, 16,
 5/4
ṭalab request 10/11
ṭālīb ṭulāh, ~a student 1/2, 10/9;
  requesting 10/5
ṭaqs weather 13/1
ṭār yifīr I fly 6/4, 7/4
ṭarabayza table 6/3
ṭarīq ṭurq (m./f.) road 3/1
ṭarshā′ → ′afrash
tawla table 6/3
tawīl fiwāl long 2/1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARABIC TODAY</th>
<th>thulār aeroplane 2/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tīyāh good 2/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāza fresh 9/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṯībḫa cookery 8/1, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭibh medicine (medical science), ~i medical 12/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭfīl 'affāl child 13/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭila yiṭla9 l, ṭūlā9 go up, rise 3/6, 5/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭiwāl → ṭawl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭoub bricks 9/5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭāl for the whole (duration) of 2/7; ~ ṣāvwāl length, height 14/3; 9ala ~ immediately 9/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṯūla longest 9/14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭullāb → ṭālib</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭurq → ṭarq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jāsh → 'atresh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭh thābī firm, stable 14/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalaj yuthluj 1 snow 13/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalāth miyā three hundred 7/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalāhih three 2/1, 4/11; (youn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ath→ Tuesday 7/14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalāhīn thirty 5/1, 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalatt9ashr thirteenten 5/12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalith third 4/1, 8/10; → 9ālam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhalij ice 9/3; ~ ṭhlūj snow 13/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhaman 'athmān cost 11/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhamān miyā eight hundred 7/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhamāniya eight 4/11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhamānīn eighty 5/12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhamant9ashr eighteen 5/12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhāmīn eighth 8/20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhāmawī secondary 7/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhānī second, other 8/20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhāniya thawān a second 7/13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhawāf-a culture 8/3; ~i cultural 6/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhawāf ‘athlā’ ‘athlā’ → ṭhawāf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhawara revolution 15/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thintayn two 4/11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhulth ‘athlāth a third 7/1, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhulij → ṭhāli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhumān ‘athmān an eighth 7/11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhuqālā’ → ṭhuqāl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭu u and 1/1, 14, 5/12; while, when 6/1, 10; past (an hour) 7/12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭu wān 1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwād widyān valley 13/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwādīh clear 6/1; bi ṣāra ~a clearly 11/22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwād9 ‘oudā9 situation, position 8/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwāfāg III 9ala agree on/to 11/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwāhà oasis 13/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwāhid, <del>a one 2/1, 4/11; al</del> one (pronoun) 9/1, 16; ‘aay ~ which one 5/15; anyone 9/16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwajad yiṭjid I find 3/8, 5/6, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwaja9 ‘oudā9 pain 12/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwājīd finding 10/5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwakāla agency 4/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwākil wukalā’ agent 4/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwala shi nothing 9/1, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwalad ‘oulād child, boy 6/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwaikān but 3/1, 4/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭwālid parent 6/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waallāh Good Heavens 4/1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqqaf II (bring to a) stop 9/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waqt ‘ouqāt time 2/1, 7/13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wara behind 2/1, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warrad yūrīd I come in, arrive 15/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warrag foliage, paper 9/5; ~a ‘awrāq (sheet of) paper 5/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warsha workshop 11/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāsi9 wīsā9 wide 9/13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāsil arriving 10/5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waṣal Il convey 9/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waṭān ‘awfān home country, ~i national 5/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāti9 low 14/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wathīqa wathā’iq document 10/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wayn where 2/1, 5/15; ~ mā wherever 11/15; ~ mā kān somewhere or other 13/13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ważān yūzin I weigh 14/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ważīr wuzzārā’ minister 4/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ważn ‘ouzān weight 12/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ważzaq II recruit 9/10
widyān → wād
al-wīlāyāt al-mutthābida (li
'āmaryka/l-'amrīkiya) United States (of America) 15/3
willa or 1/1
wisā9 → wāsi9
wisīl yūsūl I, wuṣūl arrive 3/8, 5/6, 9
wizāra ministry 4/3
wuṣha direction, aspect 10/1
wuṣūd existence 12/15
wuṣkalā’ → wākil
wuṣūl arrival 2/3, 10/11
wuṣzarā’ → majlis, ra ‘īs, wazīr
yā see 1/1, 12
al-yābān Japan 1/2
yāfī: kama ~ as follows,
ma’ ~ what follows 12/9
yamīn right (not left) 4/1
yanāṣīr January 10/15
yafrīk: ‘alla (etc.) see 6/1, 2
yafrīn that is to say 4/1, 2
yafrīk (etc.) al-9āfīya see 6/1, 2
yikaththir khayrak (etc.) God bless you (etc.) 13/2
yisallim: ~ 9āl alayk (etc.) hē (etc.)
sends his regards 6/2; → ‘alla
yisīr it is acceptable 7/1, 6
yoom ‘ayyām day 6/11, 7/13; al—
today 1/1; ~ al-‘āḥad Sunday
7/1, 14; ~ al-‘arba9a Wednesday,
~ al-ithnayn Monday, ~ al-jum9a
Friday, ~ al-khamīs Thursday,
~ as-sahar Saturday,
~ ath-thalātīha Tuesday 7/14;
~ 9, ~ 9yān daily 11/19
yūlū July 10/15
yumkin perhaps 7/1; may, might
7/8, 8/12; perhaps 7/9; see 9/15
yūnū June 10/15
yūro euro 2/3
z
zahūn zabāyīn customer 14/3
zād yīzīd I, ziyāda increase 6/4, 7/4
zāl: mā ~ la yuzāl I see 15/13
zalzal IQ, zilzāl shake 12/12
zamān/zaman ‘azmān time 6/1, 7/13;
ma9 murūr az→ with the passage
of time 7/3; min ~ for a long time
now 6/2
zamīl zumalā’ colleague 5/3
zār yīzūr I, ziyāra visit 6/4, 7/4
zar9 yizra9 I, zar9 farm, plant,
cultivate 13/1
zarqā’ → ‘azraq
zawwad II supply 14/3
zawwar II show round 9/10
zayy as, like 9/1, 2
ziyāda increase 10/11
ziyāra visit 2/1
zibda butter 9/3
zilzāl shock, earthquake 12/12
zirā9a agriculture 4/3
zouj ‘azwāf husband 5/1; ~a wife 6/1
zumalā’ → zamīl
zurq → ‘azraq
zāhī accuracy, exactness 11/1;
precision, bi z→ precisely 11/20
zahār yīzhar I appear 5/4
zahr 9aḥūr, zahr zuhūr back 12/3
zhāl yōqūl, zāl yizall I remain 8/4, 5
zann yizunn I suppose 8/4, 5
zuh ‘aḥūr noon, midday,
ba9d az→ afternoon 7/3
9
9a- to see 4/9
9abbar II 9an express 15/1
9āda habit 11/19; ~ tan usually 8/1,
11/19
9addā’ a9dād number 13/1; ~ min
a number of 6/1;
~ sukkān population 13/1, 2
9adam lack of 12/1, 15
9ādī ordinary 10/3
9a9dīn lacking 12/15
9afwan donā mention it/youâe
welcome 1/1, 3; excuse me 4/1
9āfīya see 6/1, 2
9āla on 2/7, 8; up to see 4/9; ~ fikra
by the way 6/1, 2; ~ kūl ḥāl in any
case 11/1, 2; ~ ra’si certainly
4/1, 2; ~ tāl immediately 9/1;
~ 9āyyīn certainly 4/2; ~ 9ilm bi
aware of 7/1, 2; (in fractions) see
7/11
9ālaj III treat (medically) 12/3
9ālam 9awālim world 13/3;
al-~ ath-thālith third world 15/3
9alāqa relation(ship) 10/1
9alāy (etc.) see 2/8, 4/1
9āli high 9/13;
ašlim ~ higher education 8/3
9alām II teach 9/10
9amal labour 4/3; ~ī practical 8/1;
~īya operation 12/3;
bi sūra ~īya in practice 11/22
9āmal III treat 11/4
9āmil working 10/1
9āmil 9ummāl, ~ a worker 10/9;
(~ tilifoun) (telephone) operator
7/3; ~ 9awāmil factor 10/9
9āmn general, public 5/1, 3;
bi sūra ~ā in general 5/2, 11/22
9umm from what 12/9
9ummān Amman 1/1.
9amyā’ ~ ‘a9ma
9an from 2/7, 8; ~ qurīb soon 11/24
9a9ān → 9umwān
9aqad yaqīd I, 9aqīd tie, hold 15/1
9aqqad II complicate 13/1
9arabī 9arab Arab 1/2; Arabian 13/3;
Arab 15/3; al-lugha l-→ ya Arabic
(language) 8/3; → jāmī’u
9arraf arrack 9/1
9ard 9urād width 14/1, 2
9ārif knowing 10/5
9arjā’ ~ ‘a9raj
9arraf II acquaintance 9/10
9āsurīr 9āṣāfīr bird 9/8
9āṣīfī 9awāṣīf storm,
~ ramlīya sandstorm 13/3
9āsimā 9awāsim capital city 15/1
9āsur juice 9/3
9āshī ṭiyāfī I, ma9īša live 13/1
9ashā’ dinner 3/3
9āshīr tenth 8/20
9ashra ten 4/1, 11
9āshān 9atsha 9i9ash thirsty 9/3
9awālim → 9ālam
9awāsīf → 9āsīfā
9awāsīm → 9āsīma
9āwīz wanting 6/19
9ayād → 9ād
9ayla 9iyāl family 6/3
9ayn 9uyūn eye 4/2, 12/3
9ażīm 9uzamā’ huge, splendid 6/11
9īd 9ayād holiday 10/15
9idda (in indef. construct) a number
of 5/1
9ilāj treatment, cure 12/1
9ilm 9ulām science, ~ī scientific 8/1;
9ala ~ bi informed/aware of 7/1, 2
9imāra building, block 6/3
9inīl 9īnlīmal I, 9amal do, make 5/4
9inab grapes 9/5; ~a ‘a9nāb grape
9/6; ḫabbat ~ grape 9/7
9ind at, in the presence of
~ī āt 2/7;
with, in the possession of 2/12;
at the time of 6/18
9indama when 15/1
al-9irāq Iraq 1/2
9īrīf ya9raf I, ma9īsīf know 3/6, 5/4
9ishrīn twenty 5/1, 12
9i9ash → 9āshān
9iyāda clinic, surgery 12/1, 3
9iyāl → 9ayla
9āwū ‘a9dā’ member 15/3
9ilām → 9ilm
9uyūn highest 9/14
9umāni → ‘a9ma
9ummāl → 9āmil
9umr ‘a9mār age, life 12/14
9unṣūrī: ~īya racism, racialism,
tamīyāz ~ racial discrimination 15/3
9umwān 9umwān address 3/1
9urj → ‘a9raj
9urūd → 9arraj
9ursh ‘a9shār ‘9ushur a tenth 7/11
9uzamā’ → 9ażīm
9uyūn → 9ayn
English, Parts I and II

The following are not listed here, and can be found through the Contents or the Grammar Index: days, demonstratives, months, numbers, personal pronouns, possessives. The sign ~ repeats the headword (or that part of it preceding the hyphen -); the sign ₀ repeats the headword but with a capital initial letter.

A

able: be ~ gidir yiqdar I 8/1, 12; ₀iṣtafā 9a X 22/5
~able gābil li 14/10; see 13/5
abound wafara yafīra I 24/2
about ḥawāli, ḥawl, ḥan 2/7
above fouq 2/7
absent-ce ghayba 6/1; ~t ghayib 7/1
Abu Dhabi ‘abū ǧabīl 23/1
abundantly jazīlān 1/1
academic dirāsī 24/1
accent laḥja 4/1
accept taqābīla V 24/2; ~able muqābīl 19/1; it is ~able yīṣir 7/6; ~ about tākhdīth 10/11,
~able qabīl 24/1
access to ḥusūl 9ala 20/1
according to ḥusāb 19/1
account hisāb 3/3; ~ant muḥāṣib 1/2;
~s muḥāṣibāt 24/1
accreditation iḥtimād 13/10
accredited muṭāmād 13/9
accuracy zaḥb 11/1
acquaint 9a‘arrāf II 9/10; get ~ed with ta‘ārrāf V 4 12/4; ~ance ma’ārif 5/1, ta‘ārrāf 12/8
acquire taqābbala V 23/9, 12
acquisition talaqqin (at-talaqqi) 23/12
action fījīl ‘afṣād 18/4
actual fījīlī 26/1
AD milādī 10/15
add ‘adāf yuṣūf IV 11/6; ~ed muḍāf 11/8; ~ional ‘idīfī 11/1, 11
address 9uwmān 9umān 3/1
administr-ation ‘idārā 5/3; ~ive ‘idārī 24/1
admir-able muṣjīb, ~er muṣjāb 11/8
advance taqaddām V 12/4;
~d taqaddām V bi 25/6;
~d mutaqaddīm 12/7
advertising diqāya 10/1
aeroplane ṭayyāra 2/3; ~a tā’ira 17/10
affair ‘amr ‘umūr 4/3, 10/11
affect (have an effect on) ‘aṣṭāhar II 9ala 9/10
aforementioned māḏkūr 24/1
Africa ‘afrīqa, ~ ‘afrīq 13/3
after baṣda 2/7, 6/18; baṣda mà 3/1, 6/18; baṣda ‘an 25/4;
~noon baṣda az-zahr 7/3; ~wards baṣdayn 4/1; Good ~noon masa l-khayr-nīr 1/1, 3
again: do ~ 9āda yaḥūdu 1 25/2; ~st ḍidd 2/7
age 9umr ‘a9mār 12/14
agency wakāla 4/3
agenda jadwal ‘a9māl 10/3
agent wakīl wakalā 4/3
agitated muḍfārīb 13/9
ago qabīl 3/15
agree: ~ to wāfaq III 9ala 11/4,
~d to muwāfaq 9ala, ~ing to muwāfaq 9ala 11/8; ~ment (spoken) ittīfaq, (written) ittīfaqiya 15/3
agriculture zirā ṭa 4/3
AH (Anno hegorae) hijrī 10/15
ah! ‘ahā! 6/1
ahead qudūman 9/1, 2
air ḥawa ‘āhwiya 13/3, (adj. line) ḥawwī, ~line ḥawwī 20/2; ~ conditioner
mukayyifa 6/3; ~ conditioning

kayf al-hawa 8/3; ~ waybill

airport matâr 2/3, 8/23

algebra fahr 8/3

Alg-eria, ~ers al-jazâyîr 1/2

all kull 8/1, 18, jami'9 8/19; ~ right

ma9alahsh 4/1

alleg-ation iddi'9a', ~ 

iddi'9a' VIII 23/1, 9

allowance badal 'abdál 4/2

most bi l-kâd 11/21; ~ to (do)

kâd yakdâd 125/2

alphabet 'ahjad 24/11

also kamân 1/1, 'aydan 3/1

altern-ate tanâwâb VI 12/5; ~ing

mutanâwîb 12/7

always dâyîman 6/1

 ambassador safîr sufârâ' 4/3

America 'amarykâ 1/2;

~n 'amarykî 'amayrkân 1/1,

Amîrîki 23/1

Amman 9ammân 1/1

among ha9a 2/7

amount mabîligh mabâligh 16/1; ~ to balâgh

yibîligh I 15/1

and wa' 1/1, u 1/1, 14; ~ so on u

wa/i kadha u kadha 24/1

animal hayawân 9/8

annex 'adâd yu'dîf IV 11/6;

mulhâq 19/1; be ~ed to indâm

VII 13/4; ~ation in-dâmân 13/10;

~ed mulhâq 19/1

announce 'a9lan yîlîn IV 15/1;

~ment 'allâân 'îlân 24/1;

~r mulhîf 9 11/8

annoying musûq 11/3

annual sanâwî, ~ly sanâwîyân 11/19

answer jâwâb 'ajwîba 11/9

any 'aay 5/15; ~one at all min mâ

kân 13/13; ~one 'aay wâhid/

shakhsh, ~thing 'aay shî 9/16;

~thing at all mahma kân 13/13;

~ way one can kayf mâ kân

13/2, 13; at ~ time mata mâ kân

13/13; in ~ case 9ala kull hâl 11/1

apartment shaqQA 6/3

apologise for istâghfar X min 14/5

appear (seem) zahar yîzhar 15/4

(be issued) sadar yasâd 110/1

apple tuffâh 9/1, 6, habbat tuffâh

9/7; ~ s tuffâh 9/5

application tathûq, ~

tabbaqa II 21/1

appoint wa'lla II, be ~ed to

tawallâ V 25/7; ~ment mou9id

mawâqîd 4/1

apprentice muta9allim 12/7

appropriate munâsib 8/1

approve رضي يراضي ب rádîya

yarda I bi 23/7; ~ ô mustahsan

14/7

approxim-ately taqrîb 2/1, 11/19;

~ation taqrîb 11/19

Arab 9arabî 9arab 1/2; ~ic al-(lugha

l-)9arabîya 8/3; ~ian Gulf al-

khali{î 9arabî 13/3; ~ian Pen-

insula al-jazîra/shibiîh al-jazîra

I-9arabîya 13/3, 16

area (region) mîntaq̱a manâqîf 13/1

arithmetic hisâb 8/3

arm 'id 'ayd (f.) 12/3

around hawî, hawâl 2/7

arrack 9arag 9/1

arrange dabbar II 9/10; ~ment tadâbîr

tadâbih/tadbîrât 10/12

arrîf al- wasûl 2/3, 10/1; ~e wa-âsâl

yûsûl I, wûsûl 3/6, 5/6; warad

yûrîd I 15/1; ~ing wâsîl 10/5;

~ing from qâdîman min 23/1

arrogant: be ~ istakbar X 14/5

art fann funûn 8/3

article (press) maqâlu 11/1

artificial istînâ T 13/10

as kama 5/1, ka 6/1, mithl mâ 8/22,

9/15; ~ far as hatta 2/7; ~ it ka 'inn

11/14; ~ if/though kân ka 'anna

21/8; ~long as tâllâmâ 25/4;
ENGLISH WORD INDEX

~ follows kama yalī 12/9
~ as ... as see 9/15
Asia āsīya, ~ āsīyānī 13/3;
~ Minor āsīyānī 13/3;
Asia al-muhāmmīn 13/3;
~ World āfīlās IV 26/1
ask (request) talāb yuštib I, jālāb/
matlāb maṭālih 3/6, 16, 5/4;
( enquire) sa’il yis’āl I, su’il
as’ila/ma’s ‘ala musā’il 3/7, 16,
4/6, 5/4; ~ing sāyīl 10/5;
~ permission ša’ta’dh a’n X 14/5
aspect wajha 10/1
assemble ijtāma9 VIII 13/6;
in9āqad VIII13/4
assignment māhāmma māhāmān 7/1
assistant musā9id 7/1, 11/8
assort navwā9 II 14/1
assumption of office tawallīn (at-tawallīf) 25/9
astonish: be ~ed at istaghrāb X min
14/5; ~ment istaghrāb 14/8
at 9ind 2/7; ~ all abādan 6/1, 2
Atlantic Ocean al-muḥīf al-āfīlas
13/3
attached múhāba 6/1
attempt tajriiba ta9jriib 10/12;
mūhāvala 11/9
attend ḫadār yuẖdūr I 10/3
attention ihtīmān 13/10; pay ~
dār yidār bi bābāk (etc.) 12/1, 2
attitude towards monāfīf min 15/1
authority sulta 15/3
autonomy hukm dhādī 15/3
autumn kharīf 10/15
available mutānāwāl 12/7
await tawwāq9 V 12/4
aware of 9alā 9ilim bi 7/1

B
back zahr zuhār, ḍahr ḍūhīr 12/3
bad: ~ luck sā ‘al-ḥazz 12/15;
not ~ mish bāṭāl 1/1
bag kis’ akyās 2/1
Bahrain bahrāyn 6/1
balance tawāzūn, be ~d tawāzūn
tawāzūna VI 26/1
banana mouza 9/5, ḥabbat mouz 9/8;
~s mouz 9/5
bank (financial) bank bunūk 1/2;
(shore) diffa dhifā 13/1; ~ World;
~ruptcy āfīlās ‘iffās, be/go ~rupt
āfīlas ‘āfīlasa IV 26/1
bargain fāsāl III 14/1
barrel ibrāmil barāmi9
~s 22/2
basis āsāsī 8/1, ~cally bi l-āsās
10/1, 2; ~’s āsās ‘usu9 8/1
bath hāmmām, ~room ‘oudat/ghurfat
hāmmān 3/3
bay khalīf khulīf 13/3
be see 1/6; ‘ān yikān I, kawn 6/4, 6,
7/4; ~an kān yakānū I
21/4; ~ no, not, still
bear ḍamūl ḍamūl hamala
yakīnū I, haml 24/1; ~able
muḥtāmāl 13/9
beard lih lih 6/15
beautiful jamūl 4/1
because li ‘anna 14/1, 9; ‘alān li
‘anna 21/8; ~ of bi sabab 2/7; min
sā’ān 6/1
become sār yisīr 16/4, 7/4;
чивor  suger sāra yasīru 12/4
bed ḍarsha, ~room ‘oudat/ghurfat
noum 3/3
beer bīrā 9/1
before (place) ‘amām, quddām,
(time) qaḥb 2/7, 6/18; qaḥb mā
qaḥb ‘an 25/4; ~hand qaḥlan 11/19
begin bada yība’d 8/7, 8, 12; see
9/1, 12; ibtāda VIII 13/6;
صار ينصبي sāra yasīru 1
bada’a yāba’d ‘u 125/2;
~ner muḥtādī 13/9; ~ing bādī
10/5, ibtidā’ 13/1; 10 see 6/11
begun mabdu9 10/5
behind wara 2/1, 7
Beirut bayyūr 6/1
belief t9tīqād 13/10
believe sāddas II 9/10; t9tīqād VIII
13/6; ~d mu9tīqād 13/9
belonging to taba9 12/1; see 12/16
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beneficiary mustathmir</td>
<td>14/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit 'afād yufid</td>
<td>11/6; ~ from istafād</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bent: become</td>
<td>~ i'jwāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside jamb</td>
<td>2/7; ~ s ghayr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best see</td>
<td>9/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better 'alssan</td>
<td>4/1, 9/13; get ~ talassan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between bayn</td>
<td>2/7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beyond</td>
<td>9/abra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big kār kār</td>
<td>3/1; ~ ger 'akbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill ḥiṣāb</td>
<td>3/3; ~ of lading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board: ~ of directors</td>
<td>(etc.) 11/14;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitumen</td>
<td>22/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>'aswād sawdā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanket bāṭānīya</td>
<td>3/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bless bārok</td>
<td>III 14/1, 2; God ~ 'alla yihfad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>'aīma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>block (of buildings)</td>
<td>9imāra 6/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood dam</td>
<td>12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouse blūz</td>
<td>14/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>'azraq zarqa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blush ihmarr</td>
<td>IX 14/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board: ~ of directors</td>
<td>مجلس الإدارة</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ lawhā</td>
<td>24/1; on ~ علی مات</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body jīsm</td>
<td>'ajjām 12/3; (organisation) hay'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil-ed mastūq</td>
<td>9/3; ~ing (noun) four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book kitāb</td>
<td>kutub 2/1; ~ let kutayyib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both</td>
<td>كلا</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottle qinnina qanāni</td>
<td>9/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box šandūq sanādīq</td>
<td>2/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy walad</td>
<td>'oulād</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bravol</td>
<td>see 6/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread khubz</td>
<td>9/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakfast futūr</td>
<td>3/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bricks</td>
<td>tāb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bridge jīsr jusūr</td>
<td>4/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bringing jāb yijīj</td>
<td>1 6/4, 7/4; ~ about ب jā' a yajī'u 1 bi 25/6; ~ about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brit-ain 'inglītra</td>
<td>1/2; ~ish 'inglīzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>adhā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadening tawsīf</td>
<td>9 11/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken: be</td>
<td>~ inkasār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broker</td>
<td>خمسار</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td>'akh 'ikhāwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>bunnī, binnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brussels brussels</td>
<td>bruksil 18/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budget māzānīya</td>
<td>5/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building bināya</td>
<td>3/1; 9imāra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulk</td>
<td>حج حجوم</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulletin nashra</td>
<td>15/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus 'utubūs, bāy</td>
<td>2/3; ~ stop mouqif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>businessman</td>
<td>tājir tujjār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>mashghāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but walākīn</td>
<td>3/1, 4/8;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher</td>
<td>lahāhām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter zibda</td>
<td>9/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy ishtāra</td>
<td>VIII 13/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by min qibal</td>
<td>see 13/15; ~ the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cabinet (of ministers)</td>
<td>majlis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairo</td>
<td>al-qāhira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calendar taqvīm tagāvīm</td>
<td>10/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call (name)</td>
<td>samma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camel jamal jīmāl</td>
<td>9/8; ~s 'ibl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can (be able)</td>
<td>mumkin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yiqdar 8/1, 12: استطاع

candidate murashshah 8/1
capable: be ~ of tamakkan V min 12/4
capacity: in the ~ of ka 6/1
capital (city) 9āsima 9awāsim 15/1; (money) ra’s māl 11/3
capitalism rā’smāliya 13/11
car sayyāra 2/3
care: take ~ of yiqdar 12/1, 2
carpein-er najjār 8/23; ~ry nījāra 8/3, 23
carry حمل يحمل حمل kamala yahmilu I, hamāl 24/1
case (abstract) ĥāla 8/1; qadiyya qadāya 15/3; in any ~ 9ala kull ĥāl 11/1, 2; (sult-n) shanta 2/1
cat bīssa bīsās 9/8
catch a cold tarashshahī V 12/4
cattle baqr 9/5
cause sabbāb II 15/1; sabab ʻashbāb 21/1; (case) qadiyya qadāya 15/3
cease ẓāl yazāl I see 15/13
centimetre santīmītr 14/1
centre markaz marākiz 4/3
century qān qurān 26/1
certain musāyyan 10/1; ãy tikram (etc.) 3/1, 2; 9ala ra'sī 4/1, 2; 9ala 9aynī 4/2; ĥādir 9/1
certificate shahāda 8/1
chair kursī karāsi 6/3; ~man ra'is ru' as'ā 10/3; ~manship رئاسة رئاسة ri'āsāt riyyāsa 17/5
Chamber of Commerce ghurfat tijāra 10/1
change ghayyar II 9/10; taghyīr 10/12; (small ~) fākka 4/1
characterised by قد ذو dhū (etc.) see 24/19
charge: be put in ~ sawalla V 12/4; in ~ mutawalli 12/7
cheap rkhīs rkhās 6/11; ~r' ʻarkhaṣ 9/1, 13
cheese jībna 9/3
chemistry kīmiyya 8/3
chest (breast) ʻadr sudur 12/3
citizen dājīja 9/1, 6; ~sa dājīj 9/5
Chief Engineer مديرو الهندسة muḍīr al-handasa 19/1
child wālad ʻoulād 6/3; ṭfīl ʻafāl 13/1
China: People's Republic of ~ as-ṣīn ash-shābī 15/3
choose ikhtīr VIII 14/1
Christian masīhi 13/1
Christmas (9īd al-)milād 10/15
church kanīsa kanīsī 4/3
cigarette sigāra sagāvīr 2/1
circle → club circular (memorandum) manshūr 24/1
circumstance ظرف ظروف ٧ـrurīf 21/1
city mādiña mudun 13/3
civil servant muwazzaf ḥukūma 1/2
claim ṣalab 19/2; ṣa kan iddā 9a VIII 14/1
clash idfārāb VIII 13/7
class (school) saʿf sūfī 8/1
clean naḥīf nuḥaṣaf 6/11; ~dry ~ naḥḥaf 9ala n-nahṣif 14/3
clear wādāh 6/1; ~er ʻawda 9/13; ~ly bi šūrā wādīha 11/21
clerk muwazzaf 3/1; kāṭīb kutasb, kāṭib, muwazzaf 10/9
clever shātīr shuṭāf 6/1
clinic 9iyāda 12/3; mustawsaf 14/7
clock sawa 7/1
close: be ~ to (doing) ʻawshak yuṣhik IV 9ala 11/6
closed musākkar 3/3
cloth qmāsh ʻaqīmīsh, ~ merchant gammāsh 14/1
clothes malābis 2/1
cloud saḥāba suḥub, ~s saḥāb 13/3
circle (circle) ناُم (ان-ناَم) ʿandīya 26/1
coast diʃa diʃāf 13/1; saḥil sawāhil 22/1
coat jākayt 14/3
coffee gahwa 1/1; see 9/1, 3; bunn 16/19; ~house مَـقهَـى (المقهى) maqhan (al-maqha) maqāhin (al-maqāhī) 24/20
cold bārid 6/1; (noun) rashsh 12/1; catch a ~ tarashsh V 12/4
colleague zamīl zumālā’ 5/3
collection tajmīn 10/1
college kulliyā 8/3
colloquial Arabic al-ługha l-9arabiyā/l-9arabiyā d-đārīja, ad-dārīj 8/3
colour loun ‘atwān 14/1
come ’aja yīf 18/9, 10; ~ in warad yārid I 15/1; ~ out kharaj yūkhrīj I, kharuj 3/6, 5/4; ~ together talāqa VI 12/5
command ‘amr ‘awamīr 10/11
Commercia Chamber
commissioner mandāb 15/3
committee lajmā lijān 5/3
commodity mādād tijārīya 11/3
common mushtārk 13/9; Market as-sūq al-’urubbiyya l-mushtārak 15/3
commotion iḏtirāb 13/10
communications muwāṣalāt 11/1
communist shayyāfī 15/3
company shārikā 1/2
compensation taqwiḍ 19/1
complaint shkawat shakwa shakawāt 21/1
complete kāmīl 12/1; ‘atam tamm 16/24; ādam tamm IV 23/1; ~ by tamāmān 9/1, 11/19; be ~ d tamām yīttimn 18/4, 5
complicate saqqad II 13/1
component qitqa qitaq 9/11
composed of mukawwān min 10/1
composition ‘indaš 10/10
comprehensive šāhīl 10/1
comprise ظلم ضَمْ 9a damma ya’dumnu l 26/1
compulsion ‘ijāb 10/10
compulsory ‘ibārī 8/3
computer kambiyātir 5/3
conceited shārif ĵalā (etc.) see 13/14
concentrated: be ~ tarakkaza V 26/1
contact ‘ahamm yihinn IV 11/6; ihtimām 13/10; be ~ d bi ihtimām bi/f VIII 13/6; ~ in ki khuṣūṣ 2/7
conclude اتام 9atam IV 23/1
condition (state) ḥāl ʔawwāl 1/1; (pre-) shart shurāf 8/1; ~ al on mutāwliq bi 12/7; (circumstance) ظرف 9arif 21/1; good/poor ~ hsynn ‘s al-ḥāl 12/15
conference mu tamar 7/1, 13/9
confidence (in) i9tibār 9atala 13/10
confirmed: it was ~ ‘akkid 15/1
congratulations! mabrāk! 14/1, 2
congregate ijtīmā’ VIII 13/6
consider i9tābar VIII 13/6; ~ good istahsan X, ~ great istakh X, ~ small istaqqal X 14/5; ~ation i9tibār 13/10; → take
consisting of mukawwān min 10/1
constancy milwālā 25/9
constant: be ~ wa’ila III 25/7
constitut-e kawwān II 9/10; shakala II 24/1; ~ ed mukawwān, ~ing mukawwān 10/6
constitution tashkil 26/1; (political) dustur dasātir 15/3
construct ‘ansha yunsh IV 11/6
consult qunsul qansīl, ~ ate qunsulīya 4/3
consult istashār X, (doctor) istawaf X 14/5
consumer istahlaka X, ~ pation istihlāk 22/2
contact istāsāl VIII bi/f 13/6; ittisāl 13/10
container mustawda 9a 20/1
content: in form and ~ shaklan wa mouḏāna 11/19
continent qārra 13/3
continuation istimrār 14/8
continue istamarr X 14/5; mā zāl lā yazīl I 15/1 see 15/13; istamarrā X 25/2; mā zāl lā yazālū I 25/2
continuous mūstamarr 14/7
contract (agreement) 9aqd 9uqād 19/2
convened: be ~ in 9uqād VII 13/4
convening in 9uqād 13/10
convey wasāf 9/10
convinced of mūta’akkid min 21/1
cook tābbākh 8/23; ~ery tībākha 8/1, 23; ~ed in spices musakhkhan 9/1
cooperate taqāwān VI 12/5
cooperation taqāwān 8/1, 12/8; non~ 9adām at-taqāwān 12/15
cooperative taqāwānī 12/8; un~ 9adīm at-taqāwān 12/15
cooperativism taqāwānīya 13/11
copy muskh musakh 5/3
cordially qalībīyān 9/1
corps (diplomatic etc.) hay’a 15/3
correct mazḥūb 4/1
correspond: ~ with kātab III 11/4
~ence mukātaba 11/9, مراحلة murāsala 24/1; ~ent mukāthib 11/8
cost kallaf II 9/10; taklīf takālibf 10/12; thaman ‘āthmān 11/3
council majlis majlīs 15/3; → security
counsellor mūstashār 14/7
counted: be ~ in 9uqād VII 13/4
country bilād buldān 6/1; ~ people ‘ahl al-qura 13/3; home ~ watan 9awtān 5/3; ~ developing, industrialised
coup dūrat inqilāb 15/3
course: of ~ tāb9an 4/1, maqālām 8/1; in the ~ of f khitāl 15/1
court (law) mākjama māḥākim 8/23
cow baqara 9/6
creat-e ‘ansha yunshī IV 11/6; ~ion ‘inshā’ 10/10
credentials (diplomatic) ‘anwāq al-sūrāmād 13/10
criticis-e ‘inṣāf ṭursh 12/11
crossroad mafraq mafāriq 4/3, 8/23
crowd ḥashd būshād 15/1
crude oil nuqta’ī yām zayt khām 22/1
cubic mūkak muka’tab 20/2
cultivate zara9 yizra9 l, zara9 13/1
culur-al ṭhāqāfī 6/1; ~e ṭhāqāfā, ~ed mūthaqqaf 8/3
cup finjān ṣanāfīn 9/3
cure 9ilād 12/1
current (adjective) jārī jāriya jārīfān 7/13, 10/5
customer zābūn zahāyīn 14/3
Customs jumruk jamārik 2/1
cut qaṣṣ yiqṣṣī I 14/1; ~ off (telephone) maqāfā 7/3
D
daily youmū (yan) 11/20
Damascus dimashq 4/1, 5/17; ash-shām 6/1
damage khasāyir (pl.) 15/1
dangerous khaṭir 12/1
data mukqāb 11/8
date (calendar) tārīkh tawārikh 8/3; ~d mūrūk mu ‘arrakh 19/1; (fruit) tamra tamrūr 9/6, habbat tamr 9/7; ~s tamr 9/1, 5
daughter hint banāt 6/3
day youm ‘ayyām 6/11, 7/13, 14; ~time nāhār ‘anhr, the ~ after tomorrow ba9d būkra, the ~ before yesterday ‘awwal ‘ams 7/3; → next
deaf ‘apraṣh ‘ṭarshā ‘ṭursh 12/11
dear 9azīz ‘a9izzā ‘24/4
debt dīn dīyān 26/1
decide qaṣrār II 9/10; ~sion taqār 10/12
declare ṣarraḥa II 26/1
defective kharbān 7/1
defence dīfā 4/3
defence ‘ikrām 13/1, 2; treat with ~
does not mà 5/7, là 15/10
dog kalb kilāb 9/8
Doha ad-douha 5/1
dollar doulār 2/3
donate سميطر علي saytara IQ
9ala 26/1
donation '9tā '10/10; ~or ma9tī 11/8
door bāb `abwāb 3/1; ~man bawwāb 3/3; small ~ buwayb 13/17
double تثاني thunā 17/5; be ~ izdāwāj VIII 13/7; ~d muzdāwīj 13/9
doubt shakk yishak I, fi shakk 8/4, 5, 10/11, 11/20; ~ed maskāk fī, ~ing shākīk 10/5, 13/9; ~less bi là shakk 11/21
downstairs taht 6/3
draft musawwada 10/3
drag sahab yishab 11/14
deraper qammāsh 14/1
drawing رسم رسوم rasm rūsūm 19/1
dress (woman's) fostān fasātin 14/1
dressmaker khayyāta 8/23; ~ing khīyāta 8/1, 23
drill حفر محرف حفر haffara yahfīrū I, hafr 22/1; ~er حفار haffār, ~ing rig jihāz hafr 22/2
drink shirib yishrab 18/1; mashrūbāt 2/1, 9/3; mashrūb 10/9
drive sāq yisīq I 6/4, 7/4; ~r sawwāq 3/1
dry-clean na9dāf II 9ala n-nāshif 14/3
duration: for the ~ of fūl 2/7
during kilād 2/7
dying مات ma'it 17/5
each kull 8/18; ~ other see 8/17
early see 6/11
earthquake zīlāl 12/12
ease-e suhūla، ~بـ bi suhūla 11/20
east sharq 13/3; ~ Far, Middle, Near
Easter 9īd al-fisih, al-9īd al-kabīr 10/15
easy sahīl 13/3
eat `akal yākul I, `akl 3/7, 5/5; ~en ma'kāl, ~ing 'ākil 10/5
econom-ic iqtiṣādī، ~y iqtiṣād 11/3
educate rabba II 9/10; ~d muthaqaf 8/3; murabba 10/6; mutā9allim 12/7
educating murabbī 10/6
education tīrbiya 4/3, 8/3, 10/12; ta9lim 8/1; ~al ta9lim 8/1, tarbavī 8/3; ~ high
educator murabbī 10/9
effect: with ~ from ibtidā'ān min, i9tibārān min 13/10
effectiveness فاعلية fā'īliyya 26/1
efficiency فاعلية fā'īliyya 26/1
egg bayda 9/6; ~s bayd 9/5
Egypt misr 1/2, 9; ~ian misrī 1/9
either ... or 'imma ... 'aw 8/1
elder shaykh shuyūkh 13/1
elect intākhāb VIII 13/6; ~ ed muntākhab 13/9; ~ion intikhāb 13/10; ~or muntākhīb 13/9; ~oral intikhābī 13/10
electricity kahraha 8/1
e-mail barūd 'iliktroun, 'imayl 5/3
embassy sīfāra 4/1
emir 'amīr 'umarā; ~ate 'imāra 15/3; ~ United
employ istakhdam 14/5; ~ee muwazzaf 3/1, 10/9; ~ed mustakhdam 14/7; ~er sahib (pl. 'asbāb) al-9amal 11/3; mustakhdam 14/7; ~ment istikhdam 14/8
empty fādī fādiyya fādiyin 1/1, 10
encounter lāqa III 11/4, mulāqā, muqābala 11/9; تلقيي talāqa VI, تلقيي (النفاثي) talāqīn (at-talāqī) 23/10; be ~ed inlāqa VII 13/4
end see 6/11; intāha VIII 13/6; intihā' 13/10
energy طاقة tāqa 23/1
engineer muhandis 1/1; ~ing
handasa 8/3; → Chief

Engl-and 'inglitra 1/2; ~ish 'inglisī 'inglī 1/1

enjoy oneself inhasat VII 13/4

enquire sa'al yīs'al 13/7, 16, 5/4;
~ about istahham X 9an, ~ of istah9am X 14/5

enter dakhal yudkhul I, dukhāl 3/6, 5/4

entrance, ~y 5/4
especially enter 25/7; ~y into masāwa 25/9

equilibrium ghalat tawāzun 26/1
escaping: there is no ~ lā budda
min 12/1; see 12/2
equally: be/make ~ min 11/1, 20
establish ~ assasa II, ~ment ta'īs 25/1

Euphrates al-furāt 13/3

euro 'īro, yūro 2/3

Europe 'urubba 1/2; ~ an 'urubbī 1/9;
~ an Union al-itthād al-'urubbi 15/3
even: ~ al hatta u law 11/1, 15;
~ though maš 'inn 11/15
evening: ~ masā 'amsā
17/6; → good
event hāditha hawādith 15/1
ever abadan 6/1, 2
every kull 8/18; ~ing kull shī 6/1, 2
8/18, 9/16

evolution tatāwvar, ~ary tatāwvarī 12/8
evolvic tatāwvar IX 12/4

exactness zabt 11/1

exaggerated: it is ~ tubālagh 15/1

examin-e (medically) fahās yīfahā I, fahā 12/1;
~ing ~ahāthā yahbuthā 1/f 9ala 25/1;
~ation (academic) intiḥān 8/1,
(medical) fahā tibbī 12/3; ~ation of

bāhith bāḥūth 9ala 26/1

example mathal 'amthāl 11/19;
~mal ~ilāla 26/1;
for ~ matha'm 8/1, 11/19

excel fāqa yafāq 124/1

Excellency (title) sīyāda 7/1, 2

excellent muntāz 5/1, 13/9

except istahma X 14/5; ~ (for) 'illa
2/7; ghayr 7/16; ~ ed mustathna
14/7; ~ion istithnā 14/8; ~ ional
istithnā 18/1

exchange tabbādul VI 12/5; tabbādul
12/8; istabdal X 14/5;
baddala II, tabdil 23/1;
(telephone ~) markāz marākiz 7/1

excuse 9afa yafāf 1 lī
23/7; me 'ismah lī 1/1, 3;
9afwan 4/1

execution (of a task) tanfīd 11/1

evert oneself jīthād VIII 13/6

existence kawn 10/11; wujūd 12/15

ext makhraj makhārij 4/3; khurāj
10/11

expand tawassār 9 V 12/4

expansion tawṣīr 11/1; tawassār
12/8; ~ ism tawassārīya 13/11;
~st tawassūrī 12/8

expect tawqīf 9 V 12/4; ~ation
intīzar/intiḥār 13/10; ~ ed mutawqīf 9 12/7

expel 'akhraj yukhrīj IV 11/6

expense ghālī ghāliyya ghāliyyīn
14/1

experiment tajriba tajārib 10/12; ~ al
tajriba 11/11

expert xirāb xibābra, ~ise xibra
25/1

expiry anīhā intiḥā' 19/2

explain sharah yīshrah I, sharh 5/4

explode infīqār VII 13/4

exploitation istithmār 14/8

exploration istikhāf; ~ation
istakhaf 22/1

explosion infījr 13/10;
~ive munfājr 13/9
ENGLISH WORD INDEX

- export 9addar II, ~s 8ādirāt 11/3
- express 9abbar II 9an 15/1
- expulsion ʿikhrāj 10/10
- extend madd yimudd I 8/4, 5; maddad II 14/10; ~ed mumtadd 13/9; be ~ed imtadd VIII 13/6
- extending gāhil li t-tamdid 14/10; ~ion imtidad 13/10
- extraordinary ghayr 9ādī 10/3
- eya 9ayn 9ayin (f.) 12/3
- F
- fabricated muṣṭana9 13/9
- face wujha 10/1; wa-jah 9ājāha III 26/1
- facing (opposite) muqābil 11/8; ~ah tujāha 25/1
- factor 9āmil 9awāmil 10/9
- factory 9asna9 maṣāni9 8/23
- factual fiṭrī 26/1
- faculty (academic) kulliya 8/3
- fail (examination) rasab yursub I fī 8/3; ~ure fāshal 19/1
- fall saqaṭ yusqut I 13/3
- family 9ayla 9yāl 6/3
- famous mufrāf 4/1
- far: ʿā East ash-shārq al-ʿaqṣa 13/3; ~ from baʿtidd 9an 4/1; as ~ as hatta 2/7
- fare ʿayra 2/3
- farm zarā9 yizra9 I, zar-9 13/1; ~er fallāb 13/3
- fast sarī9 sirā9, bi surā9 11/20, sarīkon 22/9; ~er ʿasra9 9/13, unschone buṣura bi šūra ʿasra9 22/9
- father ʿab ʿābā 6/3, 14
- fax faks 5/3
- fear khāf yikhāf I, khouf 6/4, 7/4; khouf 10/11; for ~ of khoufan min 12/2; ~ed makhāf, ~ing khāyif 10/5; ~ing for khoufan 9ala 12/1
- federal ittiḥādī 13/10; ~ism ittiḥādiyya 13/11
- feel ḥass yihiss I 8/4, 5
- fertiliser samād ʿasmiya 13/1
- festival 9ād ʿābād I 10/15
- fever harāra 12/1
- field haqal huqāl 8/1
- fig tīn 9/6, ḥabbat tīn 9/7; ~s tīn 9/5
- fight qātal III 11/4; qīṭāl, muqātalā 11/9; ~er muqāṭil, (aircraft) muqāṭila 11/8; ~ against muqāfaha 26/1
- file (of papers) milaff 5/3
- finance māliyya 4/3; mawwal II 9/10; ~ing tamwil 10/1, 12
- find wajad yajidu I 3/8, 5/6; lāqa III 11/4; جردة 9aʃada yajidu I 20/6; ~ing wājīd 10/4
- finish khallās II 9/10; be ~ed inqāda VII 23/9
- fire حريقة حرق hāriqa ḥarāʾiq 19/1; to open ~ atlaq yitlaq IV an-nār 15/1
- firm (stable) thābit 14/1
- first ʿawwal ʿāla ʿawāl 6/11; ~ly ʿawwalan 8/1
- fish samak 9/1, 5; samaka 9/6
- flies dhubāb 9/5
- flow jara yijr I 8/7, 8; see 15/6: جرئ jara yarjī I, jary 23/1, 7; ~ing jārī jāriya jāriyīn 9/1
- fluid sāyiʿ saw, (aircraft) dhubbāba dhubbān 9/6
- foliage waraq 9/5
- following ʿar ʿalā 9ala ʿathar 26/1; as ~s kama yafī, the ~ing, what ~s mā yafī 12/9; the ~ing tālīn (at-talīn) 24/1
- food ʿakl 9/1, 10/11
- for li 2/7; (~ the sake of) min shaʾn 6/1, min ʿajl 15/1
- forbid-den mmānū9 8/1; → God, Heaven
- forced majbūr 12/1
- forecast tānabbuʿ 17/6
- foreign, ~er ʿajnābī ʿajānīb 8/1; ~ Affairs khārjīyya 4/3
- foremost mutaqaddim 12/7
for-get nisī yinsa 1/8, 9, 12;

geography jughrāfya 8/3, 13/3
gentleman sayyid sāda 1/1
germany ʿalmāniya 1/2
get: ~down/off nizil yinzil I, nuzúl 3/6, 5/4; ~ in rikh yirkab 13/6, 5/4; ~ out nizil yinzil I, nuzul 3/6; ~ up till ṭilā ṭilā 1 5/4, qām yiqūm 4 6/4, 7/4; ~ well salāmtak (etc.) 12/1, 2; → married
girl hint banāt 6/5
give ʿa9ta ya9tf IV see 11/6; ~n marūta 11/8; ~n that (since) ḥaythu ʿanna 26/1
glass: (a ~) kwayyis, tayyib 11/8
deb pāh yirūh 1 6/4, 7/4, 9/4, ~ing rāyiḥ 10/5; ~ing to see 10/14; ~ down nizil yinzil I, nuzul, ~ out kharaj yakhraj 1, kharaj, ~ up ṭiṭī ṭiṭīla 1 3/6, 5/4
god: thank ~ mushkuralla, ~ be praised (al-)hamdilla 1/1, al-ḥamdulilla 5/1; ~ keep blessing ʿalla yihfaż 6/1, 2; ~ forbid lā samah ʿalla 15/10
good kwayyis, tayyib 2/1; kwayyis 4/14; mānī ṭāʾ yā ṭā 6/11; (noun) khayr khuyrūr 13/1; ~ afternoon/ evening masa l-khayr/n-nūr 1/1; ~bye ma9 as-salāma, ʿalla yisallimak (etc.) 2/1, 2, fi ṣamān illa/al-kaṁ 14/1, 2, ā Heavens willāhī 4/1, 2, māshāla 6/1, 2; ~ morning sabāh al-khayr/an-nūr 1/1, 2; ~ night see 9/1, 2; ~ conditions ḥusn al-hal, ~ luck ḥusn al-hazz ʿwill ḥusn al-qasād 12/15; be so ~ as to ṭirmal (etc.) ma9raf 9/2; consider ~ istaḥalsan X 14/5
government ḥukūma, ʿal ḥukūmi 1/9
grade rophe daraja 21/2
graduate mutakharriḥ 8/3
grain ḥabba ḥabīb 9/7; ~ habb 9/5
gram grām 14/3, 8/12

front: in ~ of hašwar 5/1; shakl ṣināqq I, 11/19; → shakkala II 24/1; in ~ and substance shakklan wa moudā 9an 11/19
form tākbīn 10/12; tashkīl 26/1
former sābir 6/1
fortunately li ḥusn al-ḥazz 12/1, 15; see 12/15
found-ation ʿasās ʿusus 8/1; ~ed muʾas, ~er muʾassas 17/5
fraction → kasr kus 12/1
France faransa 1/2
free fādiya fādiyin 1/1, 9; āḥrār, ~dom ṭiḥrīya 13/11
freighter Nāqila 20/1
French faransāwi 1/3
fresh jāza 9/3
friend maqlī 9/1
friend ṣadīq ʿasdiqāʾ 6/1
from min 1/1; min, 9an 2/7; ~ whom mimman 16/20; ~ what mimma, ʿammāma 12/9
tanfīl tanfīl 11/1
full malān 12/1
furniture ʿaṭāhār 6/3
furthermore ḥādha wa 15/1, 2
future mustaqbal 14/7

garage gāraj 6/3

garden jinayna, bustān basān 6/3
gas ʿa gāz 22/1
gasolene bīnūnine 22/1
general ʿāmmām 5/1; in ~ bi sûra ʿāmmāma 5/1, 2, 11/21; ā Manager muḍīr ʿāmmām 5/3; ~ly by sûra ʿāmmāma 11/21
generous karīm kuramāʾ 6/11
ENGLISH WORD INDEX

18/6
grant a request istajāb X 14/5
grape 9inabah 'a9ināb 9/6, habbat
9inab 9/7; s 9inab 9/5
grateful mammūn 4/1
great-ly kathāran 22/9;
to consider istakkar X 14/5
green 'akhdar khaqār' khadr 12/11;
go ikhdar IX 14/4
greeting Tāhīyau 24/1
grey rama'dh 12/11
group (corps etc.) hay' a 15/3
guarantee damān 19/2
guest dayf daryāf 3/3
guilt khalij khulāj, Arabian āl-kaHālij
al-9arābī 13/3
H
habit 9āda 11/19
hall: town/village haladīya 13/1
Hamburg: Hamburg 18/6
hand 'id 'ayyād (f.) 12/3;
job yad 'ayyādin
(al-'ayyādī) (f.) 24/20
happen hadath yahduth 1 15/1
happy sa9īd 5/1
hardly bi l-kād + neg. 11/21
hat burnayfa barāni9 14/3
have see 2/12, 4/1, 9; to lāzim 7/8;
jib yajib 1 see 22/5
head ra's ru'ūs 12/3; Qa'd yaqūd qāda
yaqūdu 1, ~ing for mutawaj ḱi9a
mu'taqa bi 'ala
(mutawajjihan 'illa, ~quarters
mu'taqa maqarr maqār 23/1;
~s for maqarr maqār 'illa 23/1
health sīḥa 4/3, 12/3; ~y sābih sīhāh
12/3; ~ world
hear simi9 vsim9 1/1, 5/4
heart qalb qalāb 12/3; ~ly qalbihan
9/1
heat harāra 12/1; ~ing 'udfiyya 6/3
Heaven: Good ās walihi 4/1, 2;
mas牵挂 6/1, 2; ~ forbid là samāh
'allah 15/10
heavy thaqīl thuqālā' 6/11
height tīl 'a9wāl 14/3
hello marhaba/marhabāt 1/1, 2;
(on the telephone) halōu 7/1
help sā9ad III 11/4; musārāda 11/9;
it can be ~ed 'āludda 12/2
here huna 4/1; ~ are/is hay 2/1; ~ we
are (etc.) hayānā (etc.) 4/1, 10
hesit-ate taraddud V 12/4; ~ion
taraddud 12/8
high 9ālī, ~er 9āla 9/13;
murtaďīf 21/1; ~est see 9/14; ~er
education at-tābulim al-'9ālī 8/3
hill: tall 'ulāl 16/19
history tārikh tawārīkh 8/3
hoarse 'ajāshk jashšāk 12/11
hold (conference etc.) 9aqud y9aqid
I, 9aqud 15/1
holiday 9ād 'a9yād, 'iżāza 10/15
home country waṭān 'awṭān 5/3
honour sharraf II 9/10; sharra9 13/1;
be ~ed tashharaf V 12/4; ~ing
tashrīf 10/12; in ~ of ikrāman li
13/1, 2
hope: ~ for āmāl 'āmal bi 15/1;
~ 'inshalla 6/1, 2
horse ẖīsān ḵīsan 9/8; s khayl
9/5
hospital mustashfa 4/3;
mustashfan (al-mustashfa) 24/20
hot sukhn 9/3; ḥārr 13/3
hotel 'utayl 3/1
hour sā9a 7/1, 13
house bayt buyāt 6/1
how kāf 1/1, 5/15; ~ are you? kayf
ẖālak (etc.) 1/1, kayf al-ẖāl 5/2;
~ beautiful it is (etc.) mā 'ajmalu
(etc.) 13/1, 12; ~ever kayf mā
11/15, ~ many/much kam
2/1, 9, 5/15, 14/3
huge 9a9īm 9u9amā' 6/11;
'ālākat ḫākhām 20/1
hungry jou9ān jou9ā jiyā9 9/3
husband zouj 'ażwāj 5/1
importance

important

idea fikr 'afkār 5/1

identity

'Da'dh dhawāt 24/9

i.e. ʻay 21/6

if 'idha 9/1, 11/14; law 11/1, 14, 15; "En ġād (at) 'in wujūd(at)

ignorant jāhīl juhhal 8/3

ill: ~treatment sū 'al-muğāma, ~ will sū 'al-qaṣīl 12/15; be/ fall ~ mirid yimrād 11/23

immediately 9ala tūl 9/1, fouran 11/19

immigration muḥājara 2/1

implement 'anjaz yinjiz IV 11/6

import mustawrad 11/1; istawrad X 14/5

importance 'aḥammiyya 15/1

important muhimm 5/1, 11/8; Háma 16/22; be ~ hammi yihimm I 8/4, 5; 'aḥammi yihimm IV 11/6

import-ation istārid 14/8; ~ed mustawrad, ~or mustawrid 14/7

impose 'awjāb yājīb IV 9ala 11/6

impossible ghāyr/mish mumkin 7/16

improve taḥassun V 12/4; ~ment taḥsīn 10/1, taḥassun 12/1

in ʻa 2/1, 7; bi 2/7

inaugur-al ifītāḥ 13/10; ~ate ifīṭāḥ VIII 13/16; ~ation ifīṭāḥ 13/10

incidentally 9ala fikra 6/1

include ṣāmmama yaddumma I 26/1

increase zād yizīd I, ziyāda 6/4, 7/4, 10/11, ʻizdiyād 13/10; kaθthar II 13/1; be ~ d izdād VIII 13/7

indeed fi l-ḥaqīq 11/21

independen-ce istāqīfāl 14/8; ~t mustaqill 14/7; be ~t istaqall X 14/5

India al-hind I; ~n hindī humūd 1/9;

~n Ocean al-muḥāj al-hindī 13/3

indubitably bi lā shakk 11/20

industrial-is-ation taṣnīf 10/12; ~e šanma 9 9/10; ~ ed country dawlā šināfiyya 15/3

indus-trious mujāhid 6/1, 13/9; ~y šināfiyya 4/3

inform 'akhhār yuṣūf IV bi 11/6;

'afād yuṣīf IV bi 15/1; ~ation maḍīmāt 10/1, 9, naba 'amāh 15/1; ~ed of 9ala ilm bi 7/1

inhabitant sākin sūkkān 13/1

inherit warta' yartha I 20/6

initial (adjective) ibtidā ʻI 13/10

inject darab yuṣrub I 'ibra, ~ion 'ibra 'ibh 12/3

injured majūb majārib 12/3

insect ḥaṣṣara 9/8

inside dākhil 2/7, jūwa 6/1

insist: ~ on asarr yīsīr IV 9ala 11/6;

~ence ʻisrār 10/10

inspect-ion tafiṣīh 20/1; ~or muṭaffish 18/4

insta-lation ḥijāz 'ajhīzā 22/1; ~ment qastṣ ʻaṣṣaft 19/1

institute maḥhad maḏāhid 8/1, 23

instruct darras II 9/10; ~ion tadris 8/3, 10/12; ~onal ta9limāt 11/11; ~ons ta9limāt 10/1, 12; ~or maḏāriṣ 8/3, 10/9

instructor muḍāriṣ 24/1

insurance ta'mīn, ~ed muqīm mu'ammān 9alayhi, ~er muqīm mu'ammān 19/1

intake (food, drink) tanāwul 12/1, 8

intend nawa yinwī I 8/7, 8, 12;

nwo yūnī nawa yinwī I 25/5

intention niya 25/9; ~al ʻirādī 11/11

interest (legal/political) maṣlaḥa maṣlaḥā 15/3

interfer-e tađākhal VI 12/5;

~ence tađākhal 12/8
interior dākhiliyya 4/3
international duwāli 5/3;
Å Monetary Fund šandāq
an-naqād ad-duwāli 15/3
interrogat-e istajvbah X 14/5; ~ion
istijwāh 14/8
interval fatra fatarāt 7/13
interven-e tadakhkhal V 12/4; ~tion
tadakhkhal 12/8
invest istathmar X 14/5; ~ment
istihmār 11/3, 14/8
Iraq al-`irāq 1/2
iron (clothes) kawa yikwi 1, kawī 14/3
irrigation rayy 13/1
island jazīra juzur 13/3
isnā that so? mish kadha? 4/1
Israel 'isrā'il 15/1; ~i 'isrā'il 13/1
issued → appear
it is reported tufid al-'anbā' 15/2
Ital-iān 'īlālī 1/9; ~y 'īlāliyya 1/2
J
jacket jākayt 14/3
jam murabba 9/3
Japan al-yābān 1/2
job wāziyya wazā'if 21/2
join indamm VII 13/4
joint mushthārak 13/9
Jordan `urdun, -ian 'urdunī 1/1
journalist sufhiyya 2/1, sufhiyya 3/13
judge kāf (al-qaḍī) qaḍa 24/20
juice yaṣīr 9/3
junior sahghīr-sighār 21/1
justice adlāt 26/1
K
keep haʃaz yihfaz 1 6/1; ~ it up!
ya9thik al-`irāfiyya 6/1, 2
key miftāh mašāth 3/1, 8/23
kerosene kūrosēn 22/1
killed: he was ~ qutil 15/1
kilo-gram kılıım 14/3; ~metre kılımítır 22/1
kind (noun) nou9 'anwād 5/15; /ins
`ajnās 14/1; (adj.) laʃif lutafā' 4/1;
~ness ma9rāf 9/1
king malik mulik, ~dom mamlaka
mamālik 15/3
kitchen matbakh maʃābihk 6/3, 8/23
knife sikkān saʃākān 9/3
know 9iʃīf yangraf 1, ma9rifā 3/6, 5/4;
~ing 9iʃīf 10/5; ~ledge ma9rīfa
ma9rifā 5/1, 10/10, 11; ~n ma9lām
8/1, ma9rāf 10/5
Kuwait al-kuwayt 1/2
L
laboratory ma9mal ma9mīl 8/23
labour 9amal, shughl 4/3
lack: ~ of ma9rīf 12/15
lading: bill of ~ būlisat shahn 20/2
lady sayyida 4/1
lake buḥayra 13/3, 17
lame 'aʃrāj 9urjā' 9urj 12/11
land 'ard 'arādī (f.) 13/1;
(arp Aراضي) 'ard 'arādīn (al-`arādī) (f.) 24/20;
(adj.) barrī 20/2; ~lord sahāb bayt 6/3
language lugha 4/1
last (adj.) 'akhīr 'awākhīr 6/11;
(verb) istaghray 14/5
Labour al-lādīqā 20/1
latest muta'akkhir 2/3, 12/7; see 6/11
laugh dahu kiḏak 1, dahu 6/1
laundry ghasīl 14/3
lavatory mustarāb 14/7
law qawnaquwānī 21/1; ~court ma9kama ma9hākīm
8/23; ~yer muhāmī 1/2;
(al-muhāmī) 24/20
lazy kaslān kasla 8/3
lead qadā yaqūdū 1 23/1;
~ing kabīb kibāb 21/1
League of Arab States jāmi'at
ad-duwāl al-9arabīyya 15/3
learn tašallam V 12/4; it was ~ed
9ulim 9ulim 25/1
least see 9/14; at ~ 9ala
l-'aqāl 20/1
leave tarak yatruk I 3/6, 5/4, ghādar III 11/4; (noun) 'jāza 10/15
Lebanon lubnān 1/2
left (not right) shimal 4/1
length tīl 'atwāl 14/3
less 'aqall 9/13; be - than ġallā yağilill 9an 25/1
let khallā II 9/10; ~ me (etc.) khallīnī (etc.) 5'/1, 11, 8/12, li see 26/4
letter risāla 5/1; makūb makāthīb 10/9
library maktaba makāthīb 4/3, 8/23
Libya līthiba 1/2
life 9umr 'um 12/14; ḥāya ḥāyawāt, māfisha 13/1
lift 'asansayr 3/3
light (adj.) khaṣfī khaṣfī 6/11; ~er 'akhafl 9/13
light (noun) ضوء أضواء daw' 'adwā' 17/6
like mitthīl 2/7, 8/22; zayy 9/1; ḥabb yiḥīb I, ḥabb yiḥīb 1, ḥabb 8/4, 5, 12
limit ḥadd ḥudād 11/1; حدد يوجد hadāda yahudud I 24/1; ~ed mahdūd 24/1
line khatt khutāt 7/1
link رابطة روابط rābiṭa rawābiṭ 20/1; ~ed marbūṭ 20/2
liquid sāyīl sawāyił 12/1
liquor mashrūbāt 2/1
lira līra 2/3
listener متحدث mustāmīl 19 24/15
literary Arabic (al-lughā)
(al)-9arabīyah l-fishā, al-faṣīb 8/3
little: a ~ (some) kam 2/9, shwayy 4/1, جليلا' qalīla 22/9
live (reside) sakan yusken 1 6/3; (be alive) 9ēsh yiḥīf I, māfisha 13/1,
 живу, живем ḥāya yahya I 25/5
living-room sāwūn 6/3
load شحن shān 20/1
London London bandan 18/6
long ūwāl jiwāl 2/1; ~er 'atwāl 9/13, → no; ~est see 9/14; as ~ as طاَّلما' tālamā' 25/4
look (at) šafī yishāf I 6/4, 7/4,
 نظر بصر (ال) nāfara yandwru

(īla) 20/11; ~after ihtamm VIII bi/f 13/6; ~ for fattash 9an 14/1
lose khasir yikhsar I, khasāra khasāvir 11/3; ~ sight of قطع بلين النظر عن qaṭaqa I yaqtaqa 9an nādar 9an 24/1
lot: quite a ~ mish qalīl 12/1, 2
love ḥabb yihīb I 8/4, 5; 'al-habb yihīb IV 15/1
low wātī' 14/1
lubricat-Ш לה主要领导 shahhama II, ~ion tashhim 22/1
luck: bad ~ sū al-hazz, good ~ h̲u̲n al-hazz 12/15
lunch ghaddār 3/3

M
machine آلة 'īla 16/23
mad مجنون مجَّن 9an majnūn majnān 17/8
mail barid 5/3
main ra 'īsī 4/3
majority 'akhafrīya 8/1
make 9imil yi9māl 15/4; ~ for 1a' al-hazzah V 'īla 23/1
man rajul rījāl 6/3; old ~ shaykh shuyākh, young ~ shābb shabbāb 13/1
manager muḍīr mudārār 1/2; → general
management → personnel
manner kāfiya 10/1
manufactur-e šanā 9insa9 I, šanā/ šun 9an 11/3; istānāl VIII 13/6; istīnāl 13/10; ~ing san9/sun 9an 10/1
many kāth(ar), kāthār 3/1, 17; → how market sūq 'aswāq (f.) 11/1, ~ing sawāqa II 22/2; → common;
~ing taswāq 10/1
married: get ~ to tawajjah V bi 13/1
material māddā mawādīd, raw → māddā 'awwalliya 11/3
mathematics riyādiyāt 8/3
matter mas'ala mas'āl 8/1, 10/11; 'amr 'umār 10/11
may munkiy, yumkin 7/8;
يمكن يوجد yumkin/yajāz 22/5
ENGLISH WORD INDEX

mukhtar (of a village) mayor
makhāʾir 13/1
maza (hors d’oeuvres) māzza 9/1
means: by ~ of bi wāsiṭat 20/1; ~ yaḥnī 4/1
measure miqāṣ maqāṣīs 8/23; qās yiqāṣ I 14/3; (administrative) tadbīr tadbīr 10/12; ‘īrā’ 13/1; ~ment miqāṣ maqāṣīs 8/23
meat lahm 9/3
mechanics mikānīk 8/3
medi-cal tibbī 12/3; ~cine (drug) dāwā’ ‘adviya 12/1; (medical science) tibb 12/3
Mediterranean Sea al-bahr al-‘abyad 9/1
medium (adjective) mutawassīt 8/1; ~ sweet (coffee) mazbūt 9/1, 3
meet gābal III 11/4, talāqa 12/5, ḍāliya yālaqa I 23/7; ~ing ijtimāʾ 5/3, 13/10
member 9addw ‘addw 15/3; ~ship عضوية 9udwiyā 26/1
memorandum mīdakhkira 10/1, مثير 9dashār 24/1
mention dhakar yudhkur I 9/1; ـed madhkur 24/1; donā ~ it 9afwan 9/1
menu little 9/1
merchandise bidāqta badāyi 14/1
merit istithqāq 14/8
message khabar ‘akhbār 7/1, 2
metre mjīr ‘mtār 4/1; cubic ~ متر مكعب 9mṭir mukāḥab 20/2
midday zuhr ‘azhīr 7/3
middle (adjective) mutawassīt 8/1; ـ East ash-sharq al-‘awṣāṣ 13/3
midnight niss layl 7/3
might (verb) (kān) munkin/yumkin 7/8; (kān) yumkin/yəjza 22/5
milk ḥalib 9/3, 9/16 laban 16/19
mind: never ~ maṣaṣalaysh 4/1, 2
mineral water māṣāṣ al-maṣaṣ 9/3
minister wazīr wuzūrā’, ~ry wizāra 4/3; ~erial وزاري wizārī 23/1;
prime ~ raʾish al-wuzūrā’ 15/3
minority ‘aqaliyya 10/3
minute ḍaqqāqa ḍaqqāqiy 4/1, 7/12; ~ (of meeting) maḥḍar ijtimāʾ 10/3
mismanagement sūʾ al-‘īdāra 12/15
miss sitt 1/12
mission (delegation) wafd wafād 23/1
mistake ghalat ‘aghlaṭ 5/1
misunderstanding → mutual
mixed makhālīt 9/1
mode kayfiya 10/1
modern حديث حداث ḥadīth 24/1
money fulūs (pl.) 2/3
month shahr ‘ashhur 2/1
moon qamar ‘aqmār 13/3
more ‘akhtar 9/13
morning subh ‘ashḥāb 7/3; good ~ sabāb al-khayr/an-nūr 1/1, 3;
in the ~ sabāḥān 11/19
Morocco al-naḍhirīb 1/2
mosque masjid masjīd 4/3
mother ‘umm ‘ummahāt 6/3, 14
mount rikīb yirka 13/6, 5/4
mountain jabal jībāl 13/3
move (administrative) tadbīr tadbīr 10/12; ~ away intāqal VIII 13/6; ~ment haraka 14/1
Mr sayyid sāda 1/1, 12
Mrs, Ms sitt 1/12
much kthīr 3/1, 17, 9/13;
→ how, very
mud ʿtīn 22/2
municipality baladīya 13/1
must lāzim 7/8; ḥājy 22/5
mutual mutābādāl 12/7; ~ misunderstanding 9adam at-taṭhīm 12/15
N
nail mismār masāmīr 8/23
name ʾism ‘asāmaʾ 1/1; samma II 9/10
narrative حكیکی 23/7; ~ive hikāya 10/11
national watani 5/3; ~isation

native mustawtín 14/7
	natural طبيعي 19/2;

~ly tah9an 4/2

near: ~ to qarib min 4/1; ~ East

ash-sharaq al-adha 13/3

necess-ary lâzim 5/1, 7/9;

wâjib 25/1; ~ly dharrâ 11/1

need ihtijj VIII ila 13/6; ihtijaj 13/10; ~y muhtaj 13/9

needle 'ibra 'ibar 12/3

neglect قطع يقطع النظر عن qata9a

yaqta9a l an-naθar 9an 24/1

negotiate fâwad III 15/1

network شبكة شباك shabaka shibâk 20/2

never 'abadan (+ neg.) 6/1, 2; ~ mind ma9alaysh 4/1, 2

new jadid judud 6/11; ~er ajadd 9/13; ~ Year's Day ra's as-sana 10/15

news khobar 'akhbâr 6/1, 15/1;

naba' 'anba' 15/1; ~paper jarîda

jarîyîd 11/1, ~y muqaddim 18/4

next (in time) jîr, muqhil 7/13; ~day thâni youm 8/20; be ~ Wâliya yallî 25/5

right layla laylî 7/3; ~ good

nil (in statistics) لا يوجد توحيد lâ yijad/tyajad 26/10

Nilo an-nil 13/3

šîmînes التسعينات al-tis9îmîyât 24/14

no la' 1/1; ~body lâ 'ahad 9/1; ~ one see 9/16, 17; ~ thank you salâmtak (etc.) 9/1, 2; be ~ longer

ما عاد لا يعود mà 9âda lâ ya9âda l 21/4; ~ there

noise SAWAT 'aswât 7/1

non-Arab ghavir qarabî 7/16

non-cooperation 9adam at-ta9âwun 12/15

none ~ there

noon zuhr 'azhâr, after ~ ba9d

az-zuhr 7/3

north shimâl, ~east shimâl sharqi, ~west shimâl gharbî 13/3

not mish 4/1; ~ at all 'abadan (+ neg.) 6/1, 2; ~ bad mish baθîl 1/1; am/ is/are ~ mish 4/13, lâysa 1

21/5; ~ yet lissa (+ neg.) 6/1,

~ ṃlām... baθd, ṃlām lamma 26/4; ~ did, do

nothing wala shî 9/1, 17; ḫâs ~ mā fi shî 4/1, 2

notice إعلام 'Ihâlân, ~board lawhâ 24/1

now hassa 5/1, al-'ân 8/1; ~ that u see 6/10; up to ~ li hadd al-'ân 11/2

number raqm 'arqâm 4/1; 9adad a9âdâd 13/3; numra numra 7/1; a ~ of 9îda (in indef.

construct) 5/1, 9adad min 6/1

nurse mu'marîda 12/3

oasis wâhâ 13/3

objectionable mustankâr 14/7

obligat-ory mûjah, ~ing mîjîb 11/8

occasion fursa furas 5/1; marra 7/13

occup-ation iktîlâl 13/10; ~ied, ~ying muθâlll 13/9; ~ y llâl 8/20; muθâlîa

ocean muθîb 13/3

o'clock as-sadâ 9a see 7/12, 13

offer qaddâm II 9/10; taqdîm 10/12;

~ed muqaddâm, ~ing muqaddâm

office maktab makâtîb 4/3, 8/23; ~ r ضابط ضابط qâbît qabât 17/11;

~ assumption, post

official (noun) mâ 'mûr 2/1, 10/9;

mas'âl 5/3; (adj.) rasmî 5/3; ~ly bi sûra rasmiya 11/1; rasmiyan râsîyan 11/20

oil bitrout 20/1; ~fjnat, j y zayt 22/1

old (things) qadâm qadamâ' 6/11;

(people) khîr as-sînî 12/14;

~ man shaykh shaykhî 13/1

on 9ula 2/7; ~ the part of min qibal
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>( indefinite pronoun) al-wāhid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one of</td>
<td>'aḥad, 'iḥda 13/1 see 5/14; āḥadī 'iḥda (f.) 18/2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>faqat 2/1; 'illa + negative 11/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEC → organisation</td>
<td>open mafāth 3/3; fūtaḥ yiflaḥī 1 3/6, 5/4; ~ fire 'āflaq yilaq IV an-nār 15/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation</td>
<td>9amāliya 12/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator (telephone)</td>
<td>9āmil 9ummāl, 9āmilā 7/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion ra'i 'arā' 7/1, 2</td>
<td>opportunity fursa fursā 5/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite-e muqābil 11/8; تجاه tujāhā 25/1; -ion (political) muṣārada 15/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optional ikhṭiyārī 8/3</td>
<td>or willa 1/1; 'aw 2/1; → either</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>burtuqānā 9/6; ~s burtuqān 9/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>'amar yu'mur I, 'amr 3/7, 5/4, 5; 'amr 'awāmiṯ 10/11; (system) šahāda 9/1, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary</td>
<td>9ādī 10/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organisation (act)</td>
<td>tanẓīm 5/1; (body) munāẓama 10/1; ā of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exporting Countries (OPEC)</td>
<td>منظمة الدول المصدرة للنفط (أو أوب) munaḏḏamat ad-duwal al-muṣāddirā li n-naft ('oubek) 23/1; → world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td>'ākhar 'akhra 'ākharīn 6/11, 12; thānī 8/20; ghayar see 7/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside</td>
<td>kharīj 2/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overlook</td>
<td>قُطع يقطع النظر عن qata9a yaqtā9u lān-nāḏar 9an 24/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overturned: be</td>
<td>~ inqālab VII 13/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtime (work)</td>
<td>shughl 'iḍāfī 21/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13/15

P

Pacific Ocean | al-muḥḥī al-ḥādi 13/3 |

pain | wafa9 'awājī 12/3 |

painter | raqāqāsh 8/23 |

painting (activity) | niqāsha 8/23 |

Palestine | filasīn 1/2 |

paper | waraqā 5/3, waraq 9/5 |

paraffin | kirasīn 22/1 |

parent | wālīd 6/3 |

parking | tawqīf 10/12 |

parliament | barlamān 5/3; lower house of ~ majlis an-누wāb, upper house of ~ majlis ash-shuyyyikh 15/3 |

part | qiṭ'ā qita9 11/1; juz' 'ajzā' 17/8; → on |

particip-ant | muṣṭārik 13/9; ~ in ishtārāk VIII fī 13/6; شارك في shāraka III fī 25/1 |

participation | ishtirāk 13/10; ~ (in profits) musāhama (fi l-ʿarbāh) 19/2 |

particularity | khāṣṣa khwāṣṣ 11/19 |

party (political) | ḥizb 'ahzāb 15/3; → third |

pass (examination) | najāh yinjah 1 8/3; ~ by marr yinmūr I bi9ala 8/4 |

passage of time | murūr az-zaman/ zamān 7/3 |

passenger | rākib rukkāh 2/3, 10/9 |

passport | javāż (safar) 2/1 |

past | māḏi mādiya māḏyin 7/13 |

pattern | shakl ash-kāl 14/3 |

pay | daʃa9 yidaʃa9 13/6, 5/4; ~ scale Hadalen rāwātib 21/2; ~ment daʃ9 madfāfat 10/11; ~ attention dār yidīr 1 bālak (etc.) 12/1 |

peace | salām 15/1; ~keeping حفظ السلم hifūd as-salām 26/1; ~loving muḥrib li s-salām 15/2 |

peasant | f访谈 13/3 |

peninsula | shibīh jazira 13/3, 16 |

people | nās 2/1; 'ahl 'ahlīf 13/1; |
plant zar9 yizra9 l, zar9 13/1;
(industrial) جهش احتمال jihāz
‘ajhiza 22/1
plastic blāstik f 11/1
plate sahīn sahih 9/1
play لعب يلعب لعب la9iba
yal9abu I, la9b 26/1
pleasant lazīz lizāz 6/11
please ‘ajjab yi9jib IV 11/6; min faḍlak (etc.); faḍal (etc.) 1/1, 3, 4;
(etc.) 1/1, 4; see 1/13;
masrūr be ~ d inbāsāt VII 13/4;
masrūr be ~ d to meet you fursa sa9īda,
mahsūt bi ma9ritfak (etc.) 5/1, 2
surūr 17/2; it was a ~ the ~ mine (etc.) see 9/1, 2
plentiful: be ~ tawaffar V 14/3
plumb-er sabbāk 8/23; ~ ing sībāk
8/3, 23
point: ~ of view wujhat naḍar 25/1; ~ out ‘ashār yushīr
IV ila 12/1; be on the ~ of ‘awshak yūshikh IV ‘inn 11/6
police shurtā, ḥālīs, ~ man shurtī 4/3
policy (insurance) bu‘līṣa ba‘walīṣ 19/1
poli-cy, ~ tics siyyāsā, ~ tical siyyāt 5/3
pool: → swimming~
poor faqīr fuqārā’ 6/11; ~ conditions
si‘ al-hāl 12/15; in ~ supply basīt
busāfā’ 13/2
population (in statistics) 9adad
sukkān 13/2
port mīna mawānī 13/3;
الدوار mawānīn (al-mawānī) 24/20
porter ḥammāl 3/1
position (situation) wad9 ouldā9 8/1
positive ‘ibādī 10/1, 11/1
possess tamakkan V min 12/4
possession-s ‘aghrijd 2/1; take ~ of ista‘lāla X 25/7
possessor of dhū (etc.) see 24/19
possibility ‘imkānīya 7/1
possible mumkin 7/1, 9; as ... as ~

ARABIC TODAY

China, country, town

perfect kāmil 12/1; tamām 6/1, 12/1;
invariable qad

perhaps yumkin 7/1; 9;

period mudda mudad 5/1, 7/13;

permit me (etc) ‘īsmah II (etc.) 1/1, 3;
samah ‘īsmah I li 5/4, 8/12

person shakhs ‘ashkhs 4/1; (in statistics) nasama 13/1; al
shakhsī 2/1; ~ ally shakhsīyan
11/1, 19

personnel: ~ management adāra
shūrūn; ‘idārat shu‘ūn

al-muwaddafān 21/1; ~ matters
shu‘ūn al-muwaddafān 5/3

per-tain to rathallaq V bi 12/4; ~ inent
to mutahalliq bi 12/7

petrochemicals: بترو كيميائيات
bitrukāmiyātīyyat 22/1

petrol bīzin 22/1;

~ eun bitrōl 20/1

pharmacy sawdāliya 12/1

philosophor tafalsāf II 12/12

photograph sawwar II 9/10;

~ y tašwīr 10/12

physics fīzīya 8/3

picture šārā sawwar 5/1

pilgrimage hajj 17/8

pilow mukhadāda 3/3

pipe ‘unbūh ‘anābīh 11/1

place maḥall 1/1; haṭṭ yihāfā 1
8/4, 5; → take

plain (noun) sahil suhül 13/3;
(adj., invariable) sādā 9/3

plan خطط khaṭṭāta II 24/1; ~ ning
takhfīf 5/1
ENGLISH WORD INDEX

see 9/15
post office հուստա 4/1
bound (€) ջնաթ 2/3
power գուվա 22/2
practical 9ամաղ 8/1
practice: in ~ bi շարա 9ամաղ 11/21
precis-ely bi ձ-աաբ 11/20; ~ion ձաբ 11/20; ~press ձաբ 22/9
prefer աադա 11/3
premium (insurance) գիստ աքսատ 19/1
preparation tahdīr 10/12; ~atory tahdīrī 8/1, 11/11; ~e հածդար II 9/10; ~ed muha’ddar 10/6; mastaqaddīr 8/1; ~ing muha’ddar 10/6
prescription (medical) տաջկառা տաջակառ (տիբբիա) 12/1
presence: in the ~ of 9ինդ 2/7; ~ing lada 19/15
present (actual) հածդ 7/13; (not absent) mousjīd 5/1, 10/5; at ~ fi լ-աաղ ա-հածդ 10/2; ~ing bāliyan 24/1
present taqaddām II 9/10; ~ed muqaddīm 10/6
presidency رئاسات یاپیلā 17/5; ~t ra یس (ال-جمحیریا) 15/3
pressure ضغط ձաղթ 22/1
price siyār ասար 11/3; best/last ~ ‘аک’) کالینا 14/1, 2
primary ihtīdād 7/8, 13/10
prince ‘امیر یامار’ 15/3
principal (adjective) ra ‘تس 4/3
principalitā ‘ینار’ 15/3
private khāṣṣ 5/3
probabililty ihtimāl 13/10; ~le muhtamāl 13/9; be ~le ihtimāl VIII 13/6
problem mūshkiya mashākīl 7/1
procedure ~هر ای ۱۷/۱
proceeding jārī/jāriya գուդման 9/2
produce աانتوج ییئینج 11/6
product Մուտով jāt 22/1; ~ion jāt 5/3, 11/10; ~ve muntij 11/8
profess-ion mihna міхан 1/2;
~or ‘اًشاده ‘اًشیذنا 6/1
profit from rabih yirbah 1 min, ribh ‘اربأ ییربأ 11/3
programme barnāmaj harāmīj 12/1
progress taqaddum 12/1, 8;
~ed taqaddum 12/8
prohibited mānna 9 8/1
project mashriq mashārīq 9 10/1
promot-e رقی qaqqā 11/21;
~ion tarwīj 10/1; ~ة تارقیا 21/1
proof of burhān 9ala 12/12
Prophēta Birthday moulād an-nābī 10/15
propos-e iqtāraḥ VIII 13/6; ~al iqtirāḥ 13/10
property ملل اموال māl ’amwāl 16/20
protection وقیة wiqāya 19/2
protocol tashřīfāt (pl.) 10/12
prove barhan IQ 9ala 12/12
’ athbata IV 16/9
provisional موقت موقت maqaqat/mu’aqqat 19/1
public 9īmm 5/1, 3; ~ation nashra 15/1; ~se اکراباب jukhrīj IV 11/6
publish nashar yunshur I 11/1
pull sahab yishah I 13/4
pump صبخ ضبخ dakkha غلیمة یلumbo 22/1
pupil tilmi’dh talāmīd 6/1
puppy kulayb 13/17
purchase ishtirā ‘ 13/10
purpose gharad ‘ارگراد 8/1; qasd 24/1
pursue (policy etc.) انتهاء intāhāja VIII 26/1
put ḫatt yihṭ 1 8/4, 5; muḥṭ 10/5;
~ing ḫaṭṭ 10/5
Q
quak-e tazalzal IÎQ, ~ing tazalzul 12/12
qualification موهلات mu’ahhilāt,
quality jins 'ajnās 14/1
quantity kammiyya 14/3
quarter (part of town) hāyy 4/1
quasi- shibih see 13/15
question su' āl 'as 'ila 5/1, 10/11

rac-ial discrimination tamyiz 9unsurī, ~ialiyā, ~ism 9unsurīya 15/3
radio rādiyo 15/1, (adj.) āsiliqa 20/1
railway sīkka bādidiyya 20/1
rain maṭar 'amṯār 13/1; maṭar yumtūr fī, āmṯa ~ing yumtūr,
as-sama tumtār, yuşqūl al-maṭar 13/3
rather (but instead) bal 15/1
reach for tanāwāl VI 12/5
read qara yiqra 'īrāyā 8/7, 8; maqrū 10/5
readiness istiqmāl 14/8
reading girāyā 8/3, 10/11; qirā'a 16/1, 20/9; gāri 10/5
ready musta9idd 8/1; ḥādir 9/1; be ~ ista9add XI 14/5; ~ for musta9idd 9ala 14/7
real fījīlī 26/1; ~ation taḥqīq, -ise ṭafqīq huqqaqa II 26/1
reason: for some ~ or other li 'amrin ma 26/4
reasonable muqāwul 25/1
receive tasalłam V 12/4; istaqbal X 14/5; ṭaqfīq talaqqa V 23/9, -er (radio/TV) mustaqbal 14/7
recent 'akhīr 6/12; ~y jaddad 9/1, 11/19; min qarib 11/23; 'akhīran 25/1
reception istiqābal 3/1, 14/8
reciprocal mutabādāl 12/7
recommendation yawsīya 10/3
reconstitution, ~ of the adjustments 'īrādat at-tashkil 26/1
recover (in health) ta9āfa VI 12/5
recruit waṣṣaf II 9/10; ~ment tawzīf
scale  →  pay
school madrasa madāriz 7/1, 8/23
scien-ce 9ilm 9ulūm,  →  tífic 9ilmī 8/1
sea bahr  'abhār 13/3;  →  Mediterranean, red
search for bahth 9an 26/1
season fāṣ fisūl, mousim mawāsim 10/15
second (of time) thāniya thawān 7/13;  →  thānawī 7/1
secret-ar-iat 'amāna 23/1;  →  sikritaya 5/1;  →  general 'amīn 9āmm 15/3
sector qīdāh 5/3;  →  qīdā  al-khidmāt 11/3
security  →  amīn 19/1;  →  Council majlis al- 'amīn 26/1;  →  social
see shāf yishīf 16/4, 7/4;  →  nazar yinṣar
nafṣa yandurū 1 20/10, 11;  →  raʾa yara 1 25/6;  →  ṣīḥ shāfī 10/5
seed ḥabbah ḥabūb 9/7;  →  ṣabb hāf 9/5
seen mashīf 10/5
seismic  →  zīlālī 22/2
seize an opportunity intāhaz fursa 8/11/6
select ikhār VIII 14/1
- self nafs ʾanfus 8/1, 16;  →  dhāt see 24/19; ḫālu (etc.) see 13/14
self-confidence 9ītimād 9āla n-nafs 8/16
sell bāʾū yihīb 9, bayā 6/4, 7/4;  →  ṣīḥ bāyīb 9/5
semi- shibih,  →  official shibih rasmī 13/16
senator shaykh shuyakhk 15/3
send ʿarsal yursil IV 11/6;  →  wajāhah II 20/2;  →  mursil 11/8
senior  →  kibīr kibār see 21/11
sens- ed maḥšūs,  →  ḥāsīs 10/5
sent mursal 11/8
sentence  →  jumla jumal 17/8
separate  →  jazzaʿ a II 22/1;  →  d munfāsil 13/9;
be  →  d infāsal VII 13/4
separation infāsal 13/10
separati-st-m infiṣāliyya 13/11;  →  t infiṣālīa 13/10
servant: civil  →  muwazzaf ḥukūma 1/2
serve qaddām II 9/10
service khidma 10/1;  →  sector set:  →  up aṣṣasa II,  →  ting up taʾsīs 25/1
settle (in a place) istawṭan X 14/5;  →  d istagāra X 26/1
tsettlement (of dispute) tawsīya 21/1, 25/9
severe shaddād ʾashiddā,  →  more ʾashadd 9/13;  →  ṣīḥ ṣammad 11/19;  →  bi shidda 11/20
severity shidda 11/20
shew khāṭ yikhīṭ I 14/1;  →  kīyā ṣūfī 8/1, 23
shake zalzal IQ 12/12
shall ṭāyiḥ/rāḥ- 10/14;  →  sawfa/sa 15/12, 21/11;  →  not lan see 22/4
shape sūra ʿāwar 5/1
sharpness ḥutta 25/1
shatter kassar II 9/10
sheep khārīf khirāf 9/8
sheet sharshaf shāf 3/3
shift (work) sawfa/sa 15/12, 21/11;  →  not lan see 22/4
ship  →  mufāṣṣil 20/1;
ship  →  sawfa/sa 20/1;  →  bākhir bāwākhīr 20/2
shirt qamīsh qumṣān 14/3
shock zīlāl 12/12
shoe kundura kanādir 14/3
shop dukkān dakhānī 4/3;  →  mushtarayāt (pl.) 14/3;  →  floor warsha 11/1
shore diffa dīfāf 13/1;  →  sāḥil sawāḥil 22/1
short gāṣir qīṣīr 6/11;  →  ʿaṣgar 9/13;  →  supply nāqīṣ muqās
since she was sick, she shut herself in.

socialism

situation 3/7, 9/13; ~est 13/3

sit, sit, sit

sit, sit, sit

since mundh, min 2/7

certainly, mukhliṣ, to be ~

Yours ~ly see 24/2

sir yā sīdana 3/1; yā sīdī 7/1

sister ~ ukht ḫikwāt 6/3, 6/14;

~(state) ẓa'if, ẓa'if 23/1

sit jālas vijīl 1/8

situation wādī 'oudādī 8/1

skirt tanūra tanānīr 14/3

sky sama samāwāt (m./f.) 13/3

sleep nām yīnām I, noun 6/4, 7/4;

noun 10/11

small ẓāhīr ẓāhīr 2/1; ~ door buwayb 13/7; ~er ẓāhīr 9/13; ~est ẓāhīr, ẓāhīr 9/14;

~ change, consider

smell er sabbāk, ~ing sībāk 8/23

smile tabassam V 12/4

snow shīta ʿāshṭiya, thalīj thulūj, thalīj yathlīj I, itā ~ing yathlīj, as-sama yathlīj, yusqūf ath-thalīj 13/3

so kadha 2/1; hayk 8/1, fa 4/1; ~ let me (etc.) fa l 26/4; ~ hat ta 5/1; ʿan, l, li, ʿalā, li, ʿan, kay, ʿan, l, li, kay, ʿalā, li, kay, hatta,

~ that ... not li allāh 22/4; and ~ on u ghar yu 7/16, and ~ on li allāh 22/4; and ~ on u ghar yu 7/16, and ~ on li allāh 22/4; and

wa/u kadha u kadha 24/1

social ishtirākī 13/10; ~ security

الضمان الاجتماعي ad-damān al-ijtimāʿī 19/2

social-ism ishtirākīya 13/11; ~ist

ishtirākī 13/10

sock kalsa 14/3

sold mabīḥ 10/5

solution ḥill ḥulūl; 9/1, 10/11

solve ḥill yihill I, ʿill 8/4, 5; be ~d inhalt VII 13/4; ~d munhall 13/9

some kam 2/1, 9; ~ day/time yawman mā 26/5; ~ of ba9d 8/1, 17; ~how or other kay f mā kān 13/1, 2, 13; ~one see 9/16, ~thing shī 6/1; see 9/16; ~what nav9ān mā 26/1, 5; ~where or other wayn mā kān, at ~ time mata mā kān 13/13; for ~ reason or other ʿālām mā 26/5

son ʿibn ʿabn 6/3

soon qarīban 11/19; ʿan qarīb, ba9d 9/3

ishwayy 11/23; as ~ as possible see 9/15

sorry mutaʾʿassīf 7/1, 12/7; be ~ taʾassaf V 12/4

sort jinsʾ ajnās 14/1

sound /adj./ 7/1, 12/7

soup shourabah 9/1

source masdar maṣādir 15/1

south jānīb, ~ east jānīb sharqī, ~ west jānīb gharbī 13/3

Soviet Union al-ittihād as-suḥfiyyāt/ sufiyyāt 15/3

speak ḥakā yihkī 8/7, 8; takallam V 12/4; ~er mutakallim 12/7; ~ing ḥākī 10/5

special khāṣ 5/3

specialisation takhassus 8/1, 12/8

specialises in takhassus V fi 12/4; ~ing mutakassīs 5/1, 12/7; ~t mutakassīs 5/1, 12/7

speech (oration) khitāb ʿakhtiba 10/6;

speed sur9a 11/20

spices ~ cooked

spicy mubahhar 9/3

splendid 9azīm 9uzamāʾ 6/11

spokesman nātīq bi lisiṣān 15/3

spoon mal9āya mal9āyiq 9/3
sport 8/3
spring (season) 10/15
square (open place) sāha, maydān
maydān 4/3
staircase sullām salālim 6/3
stand up qām yiqūm 1 6/4, 7/4
starting from ibtidā an min, 12/4
state (country) dawla duwal 5/3;
→ united
station mahuṣta 8/23
statue timthāl tanāthil 4/3
stay yiqūm 2/3
steadiness استقرار 26/1
steel fīlādū 25/1
step hkuṭwa 25/1
stewardess muddifā 1/1
still lissa 6/1; ~ to be dāma yaḍāmu 1 21/4;
~ to be/do mà zāla lā yazālu 1 21/4, 25/2
Stockholm ōstekholm 18/6
stomach bāt huṭūn 12/3
stop waqīf 9/10; ‘awqaf IV 11/6;
→ waqīf yaqīfa I 20/6;
→ qif 20/10; (bus etc.) ~ mouqif 4/3; → page ‘iqāf 11/10
storage تكزين 19/1
store: department ~ muḥallāt (pl.) 4/3
storm ḍāṣīfa 9awāṣif 13/3
street shāri‘ shawārī 9 4/1
strength qūwā 22/2
strike darab yudrub 17/3;
(from work) اضرب ‘adrabā IV,
← ‘ibrāb 21/1
strive for سعي يسعى إلّى saḥa yaṣa 1 ila 23/7
strong qaṭi‘ ‘aqwiyā 9/13;
← ‘er ashadā 9/1; ‘awwa 9/13
student jālib ṭallāb, jāliba 1/2, 10/9
study daras yadr us l, dirāsā 4/1, 5/4;
→ dirāsā 8/1, 10/11
subcontinent shibīh qārra 13/16
subject moudāf mawādīf 11/19
substance → form
substitut-e istabdal X 14/5; ~ ion
istibdal 11/1; 14/8
succeed najah yinjāh, najāh 8/12
success najāh 10/11; ~ ful
musaffaq 24/1
such kadha 2/1; ~ a mithl see 8/22
such-and-such kada’ wād 1 ka’dha
wa’u kadha 24/1
Sudan as-sūdān 1/2
suffice kaffa II 14/1;
← kif yakfī I, kifāya 25/1
sugar sukkar 9/3
suggest iqtārah VIII 13/6
suit nāsab III 11/4; ~ able munāsib
8/1, 11/8
suit (of clothes) badhla 14/3
suitcase shanta 2/1
summar-ise ‘awjas yūjz IV,
← ‘y mūjaz 15/1
summer sayf 6/1; (adj.) sayfī 14/1
summon nādā III 11/4, istadqār X
14/5; daq yadqā I 23/7
sun shams shuma‘ī (f.) 13/3
super-power dawla kubra 15/3;
← ‘tanker تاكلفة ضخمة nāqila
dakhma 20/1
supervisor mushrif 11/1
supplement ‘idāfa 11/10; ~ ary ‘idafī
11/11
supply zawwad II 14/3; poor ~ basīt
busafat‘ 13/2; ← short
support tā‘yīda II, تأيید تا ‘yīd, in ~ of of
ta’īda lī 21/1
suppose zam yizmūn I 8/4, 5
sure of ماتأكد من muta’akkīd min
21/1
surg-eon jarrāh 12/3; ~ e (clinic)
9iyāda 12/1, 3; ~ ical jirāfī 12/3
sweet ḥilwā, f. ḥilwa 9/3; ~s ḥilwiyāt
9/1
swimming-pool masbah masābih 3/3
(neck-) gravát 14/3
Tigris ad-dījla 13/3
tiles balāt 9/5
time waqt 'ayyāt 2/1, 7/13; zaman/ zaman‘ azmān 6/1, 7/3, 13; a ~ marrā 7/13; at the ~ of 9ind 6/18;
for a long ~ now min zamān 6/1, 2
timetables jadwal jadāwil 2/3
tired ra9bān 9/1
to ‘ila, li 2/7; ‘ān see 4/9; ‘ān see 22/4
today al-youm 1/1
together ma9an 11/19; sawa 13/1
toler-ance ihtimāl 13/10; ~ate ihtamal VIII 13/6
tomatoes banadīra 9/1
tomorrow bukrā 7/1; ~ Ghadaan
18/11; the day after ~ ba9d bukra 7/3
tone(s) ‘ānān tunn ‘ānān 20/2
tongue lisān ‘alstina (m./f.) 12/1
too (also) kamān 1/1
tooth ssinn ‘asnān 12/3
total majmū‘ 24/1
tour jāwla 5/1. 2
towards ‘a‘ad tujāh 25/1

towel minsha‘a manāshīf 3/3, 8/23
town balad bilād 3/1; ~ hall baladiyya 13/1; ~ speople ‘ahl al-mudun 13/3
trade tijāra 4/3; ~ tijār 1/2; ~ union niqābat al-9ummāl 11/3
traffic murār 4/1, 10/11
train darwāba II 24/1; (noun) darb qutur 20/2;
~er madrāb madarrib 24/1;
~ing tadrīb 8/3
transfer intiqāl 13/10; ~ hawwala II; ~ tahvil 25/1
translat-e tarjam IQ, tarjama tarājīm, ~ ed mutarjam, ~ ion tarjama tarājīm, ~ or mutarjam
12/12
transport naqal 20/1
travel safra safrāt 2/3; sāfar III 11/4;
~er musāfīr 2/3, 11/8
treat 9amal III 11/4; (medically) 9ālaj
III 12/3
treatment mu9amala 11/9; (medical)
9ilāj 12/1; → ill
treaty itti′āyā 15/3
tree shajara 9/6; ~ shajar 9/5
Tripoli tarbāls 23/1
trousers banteloun 14/3
true sahīh 4/1
trunk sandiq sanadīq 2/3
truth ḥaqiqā ḥaqīqā, in ~ fi ḥaqīqā
11/20
try jarhab II 9/10; ḥawal III 11/4;
~ hāwal III 22/5
tube ‘unbū‘ ‘anābīb 11/1
tunis, ~a raamēs 1/2
turn nawba nawab 19/1
type katab yuktub I bi l-mākina 5/1;
~ writer mākina 5/1, ‘āla kāthba 5/3

U

unclear see 11/21
uncooperative 9adim at-ta9āwin
12/15
uncountable see 13/5
under taht 2/7; ~ clothes malābis
takhānīya 14/3
under-stand fihim yifham I 11/1;
~ stood majhum 8/1
under-tak-e gām yiqīm I bi 6/4;
~ing qiym bi 10/11
unfortunately li sū wa9b 12/2, 15
union ittiḥad 13/10; → trade, Europe
united muttāhīd 13/9; Ä Arab Emirates
الإمارات العربية المتحدة
al-imrāb al-9araibiya l-muttāhīda 23/1; Ä Nations (Organisation) (hay’at) al-‘umam
al-muttāhīda, Ä States of America
al-wilāya9 al-muttāhīda
l-‘amrikiya/li ‘amayrka 15/3;
be ~ ittiḥad VIII 13/6
unity ittiḥad 13/10
university jāmi‘a 4/1; (adj.) jāmi‘ī
8/3
unless ’idha + negative 11/14
unofficially mish/ghayr rasmīyan
11/19
unprepared ghayr muhaddar 10/7
unremarkable ghayr qābīl li l-iḥtimām 14/10
until ḥatta 2/7, 8/1
unused ghayr mustaqmal 7/16
up fouq 3/1
upbringing tārbiya 8/3
upstairs fouq 6/3
use ista9mal X 14/5, ist9mal 14/8;
~d mustaqmal 7/1, 14/7;
~r mustaqmil, ~fu mufid 14/7
usually ṣādātan 8/1, 11/19
utterance qawl 'aqwāl 10/11
V
valley wād widyān 13/3
varied, various muḥāṭif 8/1
vary navwā 9 II 14/1
vegetables khudra 9/1
very kthur 4/1, 14; ~ much jizzan,
jazzān 1/1
view manzara manāẓir 13/1; in ~ of
naqara ran li 20/1; point of ~
wujhat naqar 25/1;
~er mushāhid 24/15
vigorous shadīd 'ashīdā 9/13;
more ~ 'ashadīd 9/13; ~by
shadidan 11/19; bi shidda 11/20;
more ~ly shaddan 'akhtar 11/19
vigour shidda 11/20
village qāriya qura, ~ hall baladiya
13/1
visa vīza 2/3; ~īr vīza 18/16
visit ziyāra 2/1; zār yizīr l, ziyāra
6/4; be ~d inzār VII 13/4
vital dararī 5/1
voice sawt 'aswār 7/1
volume (bulk) ḥajm hujūm 20/1
voting taswīt 10/3
W
wages ājr 'ujūr 21/2
wait (for) intāzar/intiḍār 4/1; intāzār/
intāẓār VIII 13/6; intiḍār/intiḍār
13/10; istanna yistanna X 14/5
waiter gārsoun 9/1
walk masha yimshi 1 8/7, 8;
unprepared masha yamshi I 23/7;
~ing māšī māshiya mashiyīn
10/5
want 'arād yurūd IV 11/6;
bid- see 11/18; (kūn) yurūd
IV 22/5; ~ing yūwīz 6/19
war ḥarb hurrūb (f.) 15/3
warehouse makhzan makhāzin 4/3
wash ghassal II, ~ing ghassil 14/3;
~able qābīl li l-ghasil 14/1, 10
Washington masha yamshīta 18/6
watch (timepiece) sāku 7/1
water may miyāḥ 9/3
wax mūm mūm 16/21
way: by the ~ ṣāla nikra 6/1, 2
weak ḍārif ḍuqafā' 12/3
wear labas yilbis I 14/3
weather taqs 13/1
week 'usīdī 'asābīb 6/1
weigh wazan yūzin 11/43; ~t wazn
'uszān 12/3
welcome 'aḥlan 1/1; 'aḥlan wa
sahlan 2/1, 2
weld-er lahḩām 8/23; ~ing lihām
8/3, 23
well (adj.) mabṣūr 1/1; get ~ salāmtak
(etc.) 12/1, 2; (adverb) kwāyysi
4/14; (noun) bī r 'ābār
(ī.) 22/1; ~ done! yusfik al-9ūfīya
see 6/1, 2
west gharb, ~ern gharbī 13/1
what shū 2/1, 5/15; mā huwa/hiya
8/1; mā huwa/hiya lī 8/15; mā
12/9; mā mādha/mādha 21/6;
~ kind of 'ayy novn min 5/15
whatever māhma kān/huwa 11/15
when (conjunction) lamma 3/1, 6/18;
~ see 6/1, 10; mā 9indama/
lamma 25/4; (interrogative) mata
5/15
whenever mata mā 11/15
where wayn 2/1, 5/15; ʿayna 21/6
whereas u see 6/10, 11~a2
ghayr wayn 26/1
wherever wayn mā 11/15
whether 'idha 3/16, 11/14; mā 3/16, 11/14
word kalima 5/1
work shaghūl ‘ashghūl 4/3; ishtāghal VIII 13/6; ~ man 9āmil 9ummāl 10/9; ~ing 9āmil 10/1; ~shop mashghūla mashghūlāt 8/23; ma9mal ma9āmil 8/1, 23; warsha 11/1
world 9ālam 9awālim, dunya 13/3; ū Bank al-bānk al-duwal 15/3; ū Health Organisation

ARABIC TODAY

‘idha 21/3
which ‘ayy 5/15, 8/15; ~ one ‘aay wāhid 5/15
which (relative) illī 8/1, 13, 15, 23/1; allādhihi the other: allādhihi etc. 23/1
al-‘amr allādhihi 23/2
while u see 6/1, 10
white ‘abyad baydā‘ bīḍ 12/11; go ~ ibyad IX 14/4
who mīn 5/15; ~ man 16/20, 21/6
who (relative) illī 8/1, 13; mīn illī 8/15; allādhihi the other: allādhihi etc. 23/1
whoever mīn mā 11/15
whole kull 5/1, 8/18; for the ~ (duration) of tūl 2/7
whose (li) mīn 5/15; ~ (li) man 16/20, 21/6
why lays hū 8/15; mā’dā l-mā’sa l-mā’dā l-mā’sa 21/6
wid-e wāsīn, ~ er ‘awṣah 9/13; ~th 9ard 9arūd 14/1
wife zouja 6/1
will rāyiḥ/rūḥ- 10/14; sawf sa- 15/12, 21/11; ~ not l-n 22/4; → good, ill
wind rūḥ 13/3
window shubbāk shabābik 6/3
wine nbiḥ 9/3
winter shēta 10/15; (adj.) shatavi 14/3
wire šarīak šālik, ~ less l-šālikī 20/1
wish ‘irāda 11/10; ~ for raghiba fī 8/1
with bi, ma 9/27
withdraw insāḥab VIII 13/4;
~ al insāḥab 13/10
without bīdān 2/7; to do ~ istaghna X 9an 14/5
woman mara niswa‘ 6/3

Y
year sa9a snin/sanawāt 4/1; عا م 9ām ‘a9wām 24/1
yellow ‘asfar šafī 12/11;
go ~ isfār IX 14/4
yes na9am 1/1; ‘ayna9am 4/1;
‘ayna 7/1
yesterday ‘ams, the day before ~ ‘awwal ‘ams 2/3
yet → not
yogurt l-bān laban 16/19
young sghir as-sinn 12/14; ~ man shāb šabab 13/1

Z
zeal i9ithād 13/10
Zionist šahyūnī 15/3
Arabic, Part II

Words normally used with the article (e.g. al-lādhiqīya) are shown with the article, but listed under their own initial letter. Expressions consisting of a preposition + noun (e.g. bi wāṣīta) are listed under the noun. If you do not find your word in this index, look under its transcribed form in the Arabic Part I index.

'asāsi essential 24/1
'imam 22/3
'al-ābār → bi 'iṣra 24/11
'al-ābdāl → lawd 21/1
'al-ābdī → da'ā 24/1
'al-ābāzī → jabal 26/2
'al-ārādī → farā 22/2
'al-ārādīn (al-ārādī) land 24/20
'al-ārāf IV satisfy 23/11
'al-ārāf → 'ara 25/7
'ashāra IV 'ila point out 26/7
'ashāra reference, اِشْحَارَة
'asāra IV show 25/7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Text</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bi l-’ishāra ‘ila with reference to</td>
<td>24/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shughl ‘idāfī</td>
<td>overtime (work) 21/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’idrāb strike (from work)</td>
<td>strike (from work) 21/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘adraba IV strike (from work)</td>
<td>strike (from work) 21/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ضوء to over</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ظلم to over</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘al-tāshkīl reform, reconstitution</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘at-tanzim reorganisation</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عزيز to over</td>
<td>24/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘amān announcement, notice</td>
<td>24/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>عام to over</td>
<td>24/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>فعل to over</td>
<td>24/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aflās bankruptcy 26/1</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aflasa IV go bankrupt 26/1</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>على الأقل at least 20/1</td>
<td>20/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/10</td>
<td>ELLUS (300,000) 24/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-’imārāt (al-9arabīya)</td>
<td>United Arab Emirates 23/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-muttahida United Arab Emirates 23/1</td>
<td>23/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allātī see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alladhī see 23/1, 2, 26/14</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alladhīna see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allatānī see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allataynī see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alladhānī see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alladhānīna see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alawātī see 23/2</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allatī ‘ila machine 16/24</td>
<td>16/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘amān secretariat 23/1</td>
<td>23/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مثال to over</td>
<td>23/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>أمر al-’amr allādhi→</td>
<td>23/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>لامر al-’amrin mā for some reason or other 26/5</td>
<td>26/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>امركي ‘amrikī American 23/1</td>
<td>23/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>امساء → إمساء</td>
<td>23/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>الأمم المتحدة al-’umān</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Nations</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>آمن ‘ann safety, security 19/1;</td>
<td>19/1;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>مجلس → ممال</td>
<td>26/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>أمان → إمان</td>
<td>26/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ان ‘an (so) that, to, see 22/4</td>
<td>22/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ان ‘anāna that 21/8, 26/14</td>
<td>21/8, 26/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>إن ‘īn see 26/6</td>
<td>26/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>إن ‘īnna see 21/8, 26/14</td>
<td>26/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>إن ‘īn shāʾ ‘ālāh see 26/6</td>
<td>26/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>إن ‘īn wujūd(at) if any</td>
<td>26/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>إن ‘īn hadā‘ thāni 26/10</td>
<td>26/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انت ‘anta (m.) ‘anti (f.) you 20/3</td>
<td>20/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتقد على intāqada VIII 9ala</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتقد عليه intiqād 9ala criticism of</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتقد عليه intiqād 9ala criticism of</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتم ‘antum you (pl.) 20/3</td>
<td>20/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتما ‘antuma both of you 26/13</td>
<td>26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتن ‘antunna you (f. pl.) 26/13</td>
<td>26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتهى intihā expiry 19/2</td>
<td>19/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انتهج intāhaja VIII pursue (e.g. a policy) 26/1</td>
<td>26/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>باردة</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ناد</td>
<td>gang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نظر</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>نظم</td>
<td>system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>انقسي</td>
<td>'oubek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>اكي</td>
<td>i.e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>أي</td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>اكيمل</td>
<td>'ayn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>الابد</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>اكبر</td>
<td>bitruk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>اتحاد</td>
<td>unð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بقية</td>
<td>bāqīya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>يبدي</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بيج</td>
<td>bitrub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بيه</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بيد</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>يلقى</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>يكتب</td>
<td>'ayya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بكم</td>
<td>brusil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بئر</td>
<td>ba9d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تأسيس</td>
<td>ta 'sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تأمين</td>
<td>ta 'mim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تأييد</td>
<td>ta 'yimid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تأييد ل</td>
<td>ta 'yidan li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تبديل</td>
<td>tabdīl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تجاه</td>
<td>ta'jāha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تحقیق</td>
<td>tahqiq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تحويل</td>
<td>tawhīl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تخیئة</td>
<td>tahiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تخزين</td>
<td>takhzin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/6</td>
<td>25/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16/24</td>
<td>22/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/2</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
تنبؤ tanbū’ forecast 17/6
توزان tawāzana VI be balanced,
توزن tawāzun equilibrium,
توزن tawāzuw tension 25/1
توزأ tawāṣa V be tense
توزأ tawāṣa V be tense, 
tawāṣa tension 25/1
توجد tājad there is; are
توجد tājad there is no/none, nil (in statistics) see 26/10
تواجه tawajha V ‘ila make
تواجه tawajha V ‘ila make, head for 23/1
توقيع tawqi9 signature 24/1
توقيع tawqīf V to be appointed 25/7
توقيع tawqīf (التوفيق) tawqīf (at-tawqīf) assumption of office 25/9
تنتاب tīnahika see 22/3

الثالث عشر ath-thāliḥ ath-thālith 9ashar thirteen 24/10
ثاني الألف (الثاني) thānin (ath-thānī) second 24/10
الثاني عشر ath-thānī 9ashar twelfth 24/10
ثنائي thānī’i double 17/5

جاء jā’a yajrū’u I come,
جاء jā’a yajrū’u I bi bring 25/6, 26/14
جدول جداول jadwal jadāwil table (of data) 19/1
جدول روائح jadwal rawātib pay scale 21/2
جرام grām gram 18/6
جري jara yajrī I, jary flow 23/1, 7
جزأ jazza’a II separate 22/1
ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART II

‫ ﺟﺰﺀ ﺍﺟﺰﺍﺀ‬juz’ ’ajzā’ part 17/8
‫ ﲨﻠﺔ ﲨﻞ‬jumla jumal sentence
17/8

‫ ﺟﻬﺎﺯ ﺍﺟﻬﺰﺓ‬jihāz ’ajhiza

installation, plant, rig 22/1;

‫ ﺟﻬﺎﺯ ﺣﻔﺮ‬jihāz hafr drilling rig
22/2

‫ﺟﻮﻱ‬
ّ jawwī air (adj.) 20/2

‫ﺡ‬

‫ ﺍﳊﺎﺩﻱ ﻋﺸﺮ‬al-hādī 9ashar
eleventh 24/10

‫ ﺍﳊﺎﺩﻱ ﻭﺍﻟﻌﺸﺮﻳﻦ‬al-hādī wa
l-9ishrīn twenty-first 24/10

‫ ﺣﺎًﻟﻴﺎ‬hālīyan at present 24/1
‫ ﺣﺎﻭﻝ‬hāwala III try 22/5
‫ﺣﺘﻰ‬
ّ hatta so that 22/4; until 25/4
‫ﺣﺞ‬
ّ hajj pilgrimage 17/8
‫ ﺣﺠﻢ ﺣﺠﻮﻡ‬hajm hujūm volume,
bulk 20/1

‫ﻳﺤﺪ‬
ّ ‫ﺣﺪ‬
ّ hadda yahuddu I limit 24/1
‫ﺣﺪﻳﺚ → ﺣﺪﺍﺙ‬
‫ﺣﺪﺓ‬
ّ hidda sharpness 25/1;
→ ‫ﲣﻔﻴﻒ‬
‫ ﺣﺪﻳﺚ ﺣﺪﺍﺙ‬hadīth hidāth
modern 24/1

‫ ﺣﺪﻭﺩ‬hudūd (pl.) frontier 20/1
‫ ﺣﺮﻳﻘﺔ ﺣﺮﺍﺋﻖ‬harīqa harā’iq fire
19/1

‫ ﺣﺴﺐ‬hasaba according to 19/1
‫ ﺣﺼﻮﻝ ﻋﻠﻰ‬husul 9ala access
to 20/1

‫ ﺣﻄﻲ‬hutī see 24/11
‫ﺣﻔﺎﺭ‬
ّ haffār driller 22/2
‫ ﺣﻔﺮ ﳛﻔﺮ ﺣﻔﺮ‬hafara yahfiru I,
hafr drill 22/1

‫ ﺣﻔﻆ ﺍﻟﺴﻼﻡ‬hifð as-salām peace-

343

keeping 26/1

‫ﺣﻖ ﺣﻘﻮﻕ‬
ّ haqq huqūq right
(noun) 18/4

‫ ﺣﻘّﻖ‬haqqaqa II realise 26/1
‫ﺣﻖ → ﻫﻘﻮﻕ‬
ّ
‫ ﺣﻜﻰ ﳛﻜﻲ‬haka yahkī I narrate
23/7

‫ﻣﺤﻞ‬
ّ ‫ﻳﺤﻞ‬
ّ ‫ﺣﻞ‬
ّ halla yahullu I

mahall ... take the place of ...
25/1

‫ ﲪﻞ ﳛﻤﻞ ﲪﻞ‬hamila yahmilu I,

haml carry, bear 24/1
‫ﺣﻮﻝ‬
ّ hawwala II transfer 25/1
‫ ﺣﻲ\ﺣﻴﻲ ﳛﻴﺎ‬hayya yahya I live
25/5

ّ

ّ‫ ﺣﻴﺚ ﺍﻥ‬haythu ’anna given that
26/1

‫ﺥ‬

‫ﻧﻔﻂ → ﺧﺎﻡ‬, ‫ﺯﻳﺖ‬
‫ﺧﺒﲑ → ﺧﱪﺍﺀ‬
‫ ﺧﱪﺓ‬khibra expertise 25/1
‫ ﺧﺒﲑ ﺧﱪﺍﺀ‬khabīr khubarā’ expert
25/1

‫ﺟﻮﻱ‬
ّ ّ‫ ﺧﻂ‬khatt jawwī airline 20/2
‫ ﺧﻄّﻂ‬khattata II plan 24/1
‫ ﺧﻄﻮﺓ‬khutwa step 25/1
‫ ﺧﻼﻑ‬khilāf dispute 21/1

‫ﺩ‬

‫ ﺩﺍﻡ ﻳﺪﻭﻡ‬dāma yadūmu I persist,
still to be 21/4; still to (do) 25/2

‫ ﺩﺍ ﺋﺮﺓ ﺩﻭﺍ ﺋﺮ‬dā’ira dawā’ir
directorate 24/1

‫ ﺩﺍ ﺋﻢ‬dā’im permanent 26/1
‫ ﺩﺭﺍﺳﻲ‬dirāsī academic 24/1
‫ﺩﺭﺏ‬
ّ darraba II train 24/1
‫ ﺩﺭﺟﺔ‬daraja grade 21/2


嵘 ﻳﺮﺿﻰ ﺑ

ﺭﺟﺎ ﻳﺮﺟﻮ

ﺭﺍﺗﺐ ﺭﻭﺍﺗﺐ

ﺫﻳﻨﻚ

ﺫﻱ

ﺫﻭﻭ

ﺫﻭﺍﺕ

ﺫﻭﺍ

ﺫﻫﺐ ﻳﺬﻫﺐ

ﺫﻟﻚ

identity, same, -self

ﺫﺍﺕ ﺫﻭﺍﺕ

ﺫﺍﺕ

ﺫﺍ

ﺩﻳﺰﻝ

ﺩﻋﺎ ﻳﺪﻋﻮ

344

ﺩﻭﺭ ﺍﺩﻭﺍﺭ

ﺍﺉﺫﻭ

21/2

20/1

go

ū

20/11, 26/14

dhaw

dhaynika

→

ﺭﻳﺎﺳﺔ

ﺭﻣﻰ ﻳﺮﻣﻲ

ﻯّﺭﻗ

lardır

da9a yad9ā I summon

23/7

ﺩﺎﺭﺓ ﺩﻭﺍﺭ
dawr 'adwār rôle 26/1

ﺩﻳﺯ ﺩﻳﺯل
dizil diesel 22/1

ﺩﻴﻦ ﺩﻮﻥ
dayn dayin debt 26/1

ذ

da dhā see 24/19
daht see 24/19

dhānika see 22/3

ذﺫات ﺩﺯﺍﺕ
dhāt dhawāt essence,

identity, same, -self 24/19

ذﺫﻟﻚ
dhālikka see 22/3, 26/14

ذﺫﻬﺐ ﻭﺫﺫﻬﺐ
dhahaba yadhhabu I

go 20/11, 26/14

don

dhū see 24/19

dhawā see 24/19

ذﺫﺍﺕ ﺩﺯﺍﺕ
dhawāt see 24/19;

ذﺫﺍﺕ ﺩﺯﺍﺕ
dhawāt see 24/19
dhawātay see 24/19
dhawā see 24/19
dhaway/dhawī see 24/19
dhī see 24/19

dhaynika see 22/3

ﺭ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺓ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺭﺎﻁﺓ ﺭﻭﺍﻁﺙ

ﺯ

ما زال لا يزال: زال mā zālā lā

yazālu I still to be 21/4; continue

to (do) 25/2

زفت zift bitumen, tar 22/1

زرابل zilzālī seismic 22/2

زيت خام zayt zuyūt oil

زيت خام zayt khām crude oil 22/1

سر sa shall, will 21/11, 26/14

ساحل سواحل sāhil sawāhil

shore, coast 22/1

سام sālim sound (adj) 21/1

سوى sāwa III be/equal 25/7

سبب اسباب sabab 'ashāb cause

21/1

سجل sajjala II register 21/1

سرقة bi sur9a 'akthar faster

22/9

سرقة sariqa theft 19/2

سرور surūr pleasure 17/2

سراب sari9an fast 22/9

ساعة sa9āda see 23/1

سعي سعى إلى sa9a yas9a l‘ila

strive for 23/7

سفينة سفين sāfīna sufān ship 20/1

سكة مسكك حديثية sikā sikā
hadidiya railway 20/1
حافظ سلام
silk `aslāk wire 20/1
سلك أسلاك
simsir samāsir
brother 19/2
bi suhūla (`akhtar)
(b) easily 22/9
ساحل -> ساحل
sawfa shall, will 21/11, 26/14
sawwqa II market 22/2
سيطر على
saytara IQ 9ala
dominate 26/1
ش
شوارك في
shāraka III f participate in
25/1
شبكة شباك
shabaka shibāk
network 20/2
شحم
shahhama II lubricate 22/1
شحنة
shān load 20/1; بث
9āmīn
شقيق شقيق
shāqīq shaqā'iq
sister-(state etc.) 23/1
لا -> شكل
shakala II form, constitute
24/1
شكة
shakwa shakawāt
complaint 21/1
شأن الموظفين
shu'in
al-muwaddāfīn personnel (matters) 21/1
شيء شيء
shay' `ashyā' thing 17/6
ص
صار صير
sāra yāširu I become
21/4; begin (doing) 25/2
صحف -> صحاف
منظمة -> صحاف
صحف sahiḥa al-suhuf
newspaper 18/4
صرف ب
ṣarrab II bi declare 26/1
صغير صغير
ṣaghīr sighār (also)
junior 21/1
صهر صهر
sahrij sahārij
tank (container) 19/1
 بصورة أسرع
bi sūra 'asra9
faster 22/9
ض
ضابط ضابط
zhabīb/zabīb officer 17/11
بالتضط
bi ʿāba'bi precisely 22/1;
بضط أكثر
bi ḍab't `akhtar
more precisely 22/9
ضح ضخم
dakhkha yadhkkhu I
pump 22/1
ضخم ضخم
dakhm dakhm huge
20/1
ضغط
daght pressure 22/1
ضم ضم
damma yaqəmmu I
comprise, include 26/1
ضمان ضمان
danger.プラシャップ
ad-ṣamān
al- jitimā'ī social security 19/2
ضمن ضمان
yada'gana I, damān guarantee
25/1
ضوء ضوء
daw 'a'dri' light 17/6
ط
طاقة
ṭāqa energy 23/1
طاقة
ṭā'la as long as 25/4
طائرة
ṭa'ira aeroplane 17/10
طبق
ṭabqa II apply 21/1
طبيع
ṭabībī natural 19/2
طرابلس
ṭrablus Tripoli 23/1
طرف ثالث
ṭaraf thālith third party
تالب (talab) claim 19/2
طلمبة (tulumba) pump 22/1
طّوار (tawwara) II develop 23/1
طيب (tayyib) good 16/14
طين (fin) mud 22/2
شد (ṣīd) pull 22/1
جثة (qiyāṭa) body 19/2
عمل (‘amal) work 25/2
خدم (‘asab) service 25/2
خصوبة (ṣawā‘) fertility 24/1
عظمة (‘umma) heart 25/2
أعمال (‘amāl) deeds 25/2
غاز (ghāz) gas 22/1
غزال (ghazal) 18/11
غاز (ghāz) gas 22/1
غلاف (ghalaf) cover 22/1
غرامة (gharam) fine 18/6
غرير (ghayr) see 26/14
غدي (ghadī) old 22/1
غدا (ghadā) tomorrow 18/11
غدا (ghadā) tomorrow 18/11
غدا (ghadā) tomorrow 18/11
ARABIC WORD INDEX, PART II

yaqtu 1 an-nađar 9an overlook, neglect, lose sight of 24/1
qif stop 20/10
qalla yaqillu 1 9an be less than 25/1
qali'an little (adverb) 22/9
qamar sīnā' satellite 20/1
qatana power, strength 22/2
kāda yakādu I almost to (do) 25/2
kāritha kawārith disaster 19/2
kāna yakānu I be 21/4, 22/5
kān ka 'anna as if, as though 21/8
kabīr kibār (also) senior, leading 21/1
kathirān greatly 22/9
kada u kadha such-and-such, wā/u kadha u kadha and so on 24/1
karrara 1 refine 22/1
kasr kusūr fraction 22/1
kafa yakāf I, kifāya suffice 25/1
kāla both 18/5
karath → kōrāth kay so that 22/4
kīrusīn kerosene, paraffin 22/1
kilomēt r kilometre 22/1

L
li so that 22/4; let me (etc.) 26/4;
fa l'wa l so/then let me (etc.) 26/4
la see 26/6
lā do/does not 21/5, see 26/14;
+ acc. there is no/not see 25/3,
26/14; (+ jussive) do not 26/4
al-lādhī'ya Latakia 20/1
lāsilkī wireless, radio (adj.) 20/1
li 9an because 21/8
laban milk, yoghurt 16/19
lada in the presence of 19/15
lā9iba yal9abu I, lu9b play 26/1
laqad see 22/10
lāqiya yalqa I meet 23/7
(w)lēkān → lēkā
li kay so that 22/4
lām did not, see 26/2, 6, 14
lām did not, see 26/2, 6, 14
mālam (+ past) when 25/4;
(+ jussive) not yet 26/4
mālama li mādh alam whose 16/20, 21/6
lan (+ subjunctive) will not 22/4,
26/14
landan London 18/6
law if 26/6
lawha board 24/1
laysa not to be, see 21/5, 26/14
li'allâ so that ... not see 22/4

mâ did not 21/5; what 21/6, 14

mâ 'idha whether 21/13
mâda what 21/6, 26/14

mâl 'amwâl property 16/20
mâ 17/22/4

mâ 'it dying 17/5
mâyâ hundred 24/9
mablagh mabâlîgh amount 18/1

mâta'akkid min convinced/sure of 21/1

9ala matn on board 20/2
mutawajjihan 'ila (heading) for 23/1
mîlâth example 26/1

majlis 'idâra board of directors 21/1
majlis al-âmm Security Council 26/1
majmû' 24/1
mîjân mîjân mad 17/8
muhâsabât accounts 24/1
muham (al-muhamî) lawyer 24/20
muhdâd limited 24/1
mukhâsara tisk 19/2
mukhîlî sincere 24/1, 2
mudarrib trainer, instructor 24/1
mudîr al-handasa director, instructor 24/1

madhkûr (afore-)mentioned 24/1
murâja9a review, revision 26/1
murâsala correspondence 24/1
marbût linked 20/2
murtâfî high 21/1
marfûw requested 23/10
masâ 'ansâ' afternoon, evening 17/6
masâhama participation 19/2
musâwâ equality 25/9
mustashfan (al-mustashfa) hospital 24/20
mustâmî listener 24/15
mustawa9a container 20/1
masrûr pleased 17/2
mushârika participation 25/1
mushâhid viewer 24/15
mashî yamsh I walk 23/7
mustânîr determinâ 17/3
muqarrara see 23/1, 26/12
muwaffaqat/mu’aqqat provisional, temporary 19/1
mum wax 16/21
mu’ammin insurer 19/1
mu’amman 9alayhi insured 19/1
mu’ahhal qualified 21/2
mu’ahhilat qualifications 21/2
mīna’ mawānin (al-mawānī) port 24/20
mīya hundred 24/9
al-mīya(w) hundredth, hundredth, the year of
al-miya wa l-wāḥid the year and
101st 24/10
nādin (an-nādi) nādī adm”, nādi
‘ Andréya club, circle 26/1
nāqila freighter, tanker, supertanker 20/1
nāqila ḍakhma nāqila (freighter)
21/1
natija natā’ij result 21/1
nāhu we 20/3
nasīya yansa I forget 23/7
niḥām ‘an-dhima order, system 26/1
naḍara yanḍūrū I see, naḍara yaṣurū I
see, naḍura yaṣurū 1
ilā khaṣr at 20/11, 26/14
naḍurān li in view of 20/1
naf oil, crude oil 1
nafī denial, repudiation 23/1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nafa yanfi</td>
<td>deny, repudiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naql</td>
<td>transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nawba</td>
<td>shift, turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nafy</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nawba</td>
<td>deputising for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nawa</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niyābatan</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naw9an</td>
<td>somewhat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nawa</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niyā</td>
<td>intention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hātāni</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hal</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huma</td>
<td>both of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hawwaz</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hā'ulā'i</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wajib</td>
<td>necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wājaha</td>
<td>III face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāshintun</td>
<td>Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāla</td>
<td>III be constant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Grammar index

References indicate Lesson no./paragraph no. The sign → refers you to another entry in the index.

Adjective 1/9, 11; 2/8, 9; 3/4, 17
4/11, 12, 14; 6/11–13, 17, 20, 21
7/8, 13, 16; 8/13, 20; 10/4, 5, 7, 9
11/19, 26; 14/10; 18/2, 11; 19/9–12
21/4–6; 22/9; 24/16, 17, 20
agreement 1/10; 2/6; 7/8, 13; 8/20
9/13, 14; 10/8, 14; 11/24; 12/13
19/10; 24/9, 10, 19; 26/12
colours/physical afflictions 12/11
comparison 9/13–15; 12/11; 13/12
18/2; 22/8
compound 12/14, 15; 13/16; 24/19
demonstrative 4/4, 5, 12; 6/19; 22/3
diptote 24/17
interrogative 5/15; 21/6
nisba 1/9, 10; 3/13; 9/13; 11/11
12/8, 11; 13/10, 11
possessive 2/8
sound 1/10; 3/13
→ Definite, indefinite
   Number, plural
   Verb, participle
Adverb 1/11; 4/14; 7/8, 16; 11/19–23
13/2; 18/11; 19/7; 21/5; 22/8; 26/5
comparison 9/13–15; 11/19–22
22/9
interrogative 5/15; 21/6, 13
'alif 16/3, 4, 6, 9–11, 13, 14, 17, 18, 21
17/4, 9; 18/2, 3, 5–7, 10–13, 16; 19/7
20/5, 10, 12; 21/3; 22/3, 4
23/5, 8, 9, 13, 14; 24/17; 25/5
'alif maqṣūra 18/2, 3, 7, 11, 12; 22/8
23/5, 8, 9, 15; 25/5; 26/3
Animate, inanimate 1/5, 10; 2/8, 9
3/6, 13, 17; 4/12; 6/11; 10/8; 12/11
15/5; 16/16, 24; 19/8, 10; 21/10
Antecedent 8/13, 14; 9/16; 23/2
Article 1/7; 2/5, 6, 10; 3/4; 4/4; 6/19
7/10; 8/17; 16/12, 17–19; 18/14
19/9, 12; 24/12, 15, 19
Calendar 7/14; 10/15; 24/13
Case 19/5–9, 14, 15; 20/9; 21/4–6, 8
22/3, 8; 23/2, 7; 24/7, 8; 16–20; 25/3
26/5, 14
Circumstance 12/13; 19/7; 25/2
→ Clause, circumstance
Clause 6/18; 9/13; 21/8; 22/5; 23/2
26/12
circumstance 6/10
concession 11/15, 16
condition 11/14, 16; 26/6, 10
main 26/6
relative 8/13, 14; 9/16; 23/2; 26/12
purpose 11/18; 22/4
time 11/18; 25/4
Complement 2/6, 8; 19/5; 21/4, 5, 8
23/7; 25/2
Conjunction 4/7, 8; 5/15; 6/18; 8/22
9/13; 10/13; 15/9; 21/8, 9, 12
22/4, 6; 25/2; 4; 26/4, 6
Consonant 2/5, 8, 10; 3/18; 3/6; 4/12
5/17; 6/4; 7/4, 18; 8/7; 9/10, 13
11/6; 12/16; 13/4; 16/10, 19, 21
17/6; 18/8, 14
Construct 3/4; 4/5; 5/14, 15; 7/2
8/16–18; 20; 9/7; 10/13; 11/9, 27
12/15, 16; 13/16; 15/6; 16/24; 18/16
19/5, 9; 21/4; 24/9, 18–20
Definite, indefinite 2/5, 6, 8; 3/4
4/9, 11, 12; 5/12; 7/16
8/13, 16–18; 20; 9/13, 14, 16
12/15, 16; 11/20, 26; 12/15; 14/10
15/6; 19/6–9; 21/4, 6; 22/6, 8, 9
23/10, 11; 24/17, 19, 20
26/5, 11, 12; → Construct, Noun
Dictionary 20/4, 12; 23/14
Gender 1/4, 5, 10; 2/2, 4–6; 3/13, 17
4/4, 11, 12; 5/2, 11, 15; 6/7, 19
9/4, 13, 14; 10/8, 9; 12/11; 19/13
22/3, 4; 23/2, 5, 7, 10, 11
24/9, 10, 15, 17, 19; 26/13
feminine 6/11; 7/12, 13; 9/6, 14
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Today</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10/4–6; 8; 16/16; 24; 18/2; 19/8</td>
<td>5/2, 11; 12; 6/7, 9; 19; 7/10, 11, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/6; 22/8; 25/9</td>
<td>9/4; 13; 10/8; 12/11; 15/5; 16/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine 4/14; 8/7, 16; 20: 9/5, 16</td>
<td>19/8; 13; 20/3; 21/4; 10; 22/3; 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10/8; 11/19, 15/5; 18/10, 11</td>
<td>23/2, 4, 5, 10, 11; 24/17, 19; 26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19/9; 20/10; 21/3, 4; 22/5</td>
<td>dual 3/13, 4/11, 12; 6/11; 7/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23/12; 24/7; 26/7, 9</td>
<td>16/16, 24; 18/10; 19/9, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greeting 1/3, 4; 10; 2/2; 6/2; 9/2; 12/2</td>
<td>20/5–7; 21/4; 23/7; 24/7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/2</td>
<td>25/5, 6; 26/3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamza 5/9, 17; 6/11; 7/10; 8/7, 8</td>
<td>plural 3/6, 13, 14, 17; 4/12; 6/11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/18; 14/5; 16/3, 4, 9, 14, 15, 17</td>
<td>7/13, 16; 8/19; 9/2, 5–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17/4–7; 18/7; 9, 13, 16</td>
<td>10/4–6; 9, 12; 11/9, 10; 12/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/5, 9, 10–12; 21/13, 14; 23/3</td>
<td>13/2, 9–11; 14/8; 15/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/11, 17; 25/6–8</td>
<td>16/16, 24; 18/2; 10; 19/6–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ Verb, hamza, hamzated</td>
<td>20/10; 21/3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect speech</td>
<td>24/2, 7, 9, 17, 20; 26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command and request 7/15; 22/4</td>
<td>singular 3/13; 4/12, 14; 5/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question 5/16; 11/14; 12/9; 21/13</td>
<td>8/7, 16, 18, 20; 9/16; 10/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement 4/7; 21/12</td>
<td>11/19; 12/13; 15/9; 16/16; 19/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inanimate → Animate</td>
<td>20/10; 21/4, 6; 22/5; 23/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite → Definite</td>
<td>24/8, 18, 20; 26/7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lām 16/11–13; 19; 18/5, 7; 23/2</td>
<td>Animate, inanimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative 2/12; 3/9; 4/13; 5/7, 9, 11</td>
<td>Numbers (1, 2, 3 ...) 19/4; 24/5–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/5, 7, 10, 19, 21; 7/4, 5, 8, 16</td>
<td>'abjad 24/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/10, 11, 15; 9/16, 17; 10/7, 14</td>
<td>cardinal 4/11; 5/12; 7/10, 11, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/7, 18, 19, 21, 25; 12/6, 15, 17</td>
<td>8/21; 10/15; 24/6–11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/10; 15/10, 13; 19/15; 21/5, 11, 13</td>
<td>fractions/percentages 7/11; 24/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/4; 25/3; 26/2; 4, 6</td>
<td>numerals 24/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal sentence 15/9; 21/7, 8; 26/6</td>
<td>ordinal 8/20, 21; 9/14; 24/10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun 1/5, 9, 10; 2/6–9, 12; 3/4, 13</td>
<td>→ Number, dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/4, 5, 9, 11, 12; 5/12, 14, 15</td>
<td>nūn 16/9; 17/1; 18/4, 5, 7; 19/9; 21/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/9, 11, 17, 18, 19</td>
<td>24/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/2, 9, 10, 13, 16</td>
<td>Object 8/13; 9/16; 10/4; 12/10; 21/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/13, 16–18, 20, 21; 9/13, 14, 16</td>
<td>22/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10/8, 9; 11/19, 20; 12/14, 15, 16</td>
<td>absolute 12/10; 19/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/16; 15/9; 18/11; 19/4–12, 14, 15</td>
<td>direct 3/16; 4/6; 6/19; 8/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/4, 6, 10; 22/8, 9</td>
<td>9/10; 10/8; 13; 11/4, 6, 17, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/6–10, 15, 16–20; 25/3; 26/5, 12</td>
<td>12/4, 12; 13/4, 13; 14/4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract 13/11</td>
<td>15/5, 6, 14; 19/5; 21/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collective 9/5–8</td>
<td>22/5; 26/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound 13/16</td>
<td>prepositional 3/16; 8/13; 10/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diminutive 13/17</td>
<td>13/13; 26/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diptote 24/17</td>
<td>→ Rule, Object pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proper 3/4; 18/6</td>
<td>Suffix, pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ Number, Verb, verbal noun</td>
<td>Predicate → Complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number (singular/dual/plural)</td>
<td>Preposition 2/7, 8, 12; 3/16; 6/8, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4, 5, 10; 2/2, 5, 6, 9; 3/17; 4/4</td>
<td>7/2; 8/13, 15, 22; 9/13, 16; 10/8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/12, 17, 19, 20, 26; 12/9</td>
<td>12/4; 13/4; 23/5; 9; 25/7; 26/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19/5, 15, 16; 21/3</td>
<td>Hollow verb 6/4; 11/6; 13/4, 6; 14/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ Object, prepositional</td>
<td>26/3, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun 1/5, 6, 9, 10; 2/6, 8, 9, 12; 3/6</td>
<td>Inanimate plural 1/5; 2/6; 3/14; 4/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/4, 7; 6/18, 20, 21; 7/2, 9, 10, 16</td>
<td>6/11; 19/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/13, 14; 9/13; 11/17, 18; 13/13</td>
<td>Indirect speech 4/7; 5/16; 7/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/9; 15/9; 20/3; 21/6, 8, 10; 26/13</td>
<td>11/14; 21/8, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrative 4/4; 6/19; 22/3</td>
<td>Long vowel 2/10; 3/11; 19/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emphatic 8/16</td>
<td>Nominal sentence 21/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indefinite 9/16, 17</td>
<td>Object pronoun 4/6; 5/11; 8/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative 5/15; 21/6, 13</td>
<td>Qualifying word 1/11; 4/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal 1/5, 6; 2/8; 4/7; 6/10; 20/3</td>
<td>Relative 8/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26/13</td>
<td>Short pronunciation 19/4, 7, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reciprocal 8/17</td>
<td>Verbal sentence 21/10; 22/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflexive 8/16; 13/14</td>
<td>→ Interrogative; Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative 8/13; 12/9; 23/2; 26/12</td>
<td>Rule, Object pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject; Suffix, pronoun</td>
<td>Pronunciation 1/4; 2/5, 8, 10; 3/18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/17; 8/24; 10/15; 11/6; 15/6–8</td>
<td>4/6, 12; 6/7, 14; 7/7; 12/17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16/24; 17/10, 11; 18/2, 6</td>
<td>13/4, 6, 9, 10; 15/5; 19/6, 9; 23/9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19/4, 6–9, 12, 15; 20/4, 5; 21/3–5</td>
<td>26/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/4, 8; 23/4, 4, 6, 7, 10–13</td>
<td>Subject 1/8; 3/12, 14; 4/7; 6/18, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/6, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19; 25/3, 5</td>
<td>7/8; 8/13; 9/16; 10/4, 14; 11/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26/3, 5, 7</td>
<td>12/13; 15/9; 19/5; 20/3; 21/8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions 1/8; 2/9, 11; 5/15, 16; 8/15</td>
<td>22/5; 25/3; 26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/13</td>
<td>Suffix 2/8; 6/1; 12/13, 17; 19/4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ Indirect speech, questions</td>
<td>possessive 2/8; 3/4; 4/6, 12; 6/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional variations</td>
<td>7/2; 8/16–18; 11/9, 18; 12/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt 5/17; 6/19; 7/17; 11/18; 12/17</td>
<td>13/12, 14; 16/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gulf 8/24</td>
<td>19/6, 7, 9, 13, 14, 16; 20/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq 8/24</td>
<td>21/4; 24/18, 26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levant 5/17; 6/19; 7/17; 11/18</td>
<td>pronoun 2/12; 4/6–10; 5/10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12/17</td>
<td>6/5, 8; 7/4, 10; 8/11, 13, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-west Africa 5/17; 8/24</td>
<td>10/8; 11/14, 17; 12/17; 14/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12/17</td>
<td>15/7, 9; 19/15, 16; 20/4, 5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peninsula 5/17; 6/19</td>
<td>21/3, 8, 9; 22/4; 23/8, 9, 13, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudan 6/19; 12/17</td>
<td>26/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rule</td>
<td>tā’ marbūta 16/24; 18/7, 11, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complement 21/4</td>
<td>19/6, 12; 24/9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construct 3/4</td>
<td>tanwīn 18/11, 16; 19/7; 21/4; 22/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubled verb 13/4, 6; 14/5; 20/7</td>
<td>24/8, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual noun 4/12; 6/11; 19/10</td>
<td>Time 3/15; 7/12, 13; 24/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative 4/5</td>
<td>→ Clause, time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final-weak verb 8/10; 9/10; 11/4, 6</td>
<td>Toothed letters 16/8–10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17/2, 3, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb 1/6, 11; 2/6; 3/5–12, 14; 4/6, 7, 13</td>
<td>6/18; 7/2, 8, 9; 8/13, 15; 9/9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10/4, 10, 13, 14</td>
<td>26/3, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ARABIC TODAY

future meaning 5/8; 7/4, 7, 8
9/16; 11/18; 26/6
→ Verb. tense, future
hanza. hamzated 3/7; 5/5, 9
10/5; 20/4, 5, 9; 22/4; 23/3
25/6–8; 26/3
hollow 6/4; 7/4, 5; 8/5, 6
9/10, 11; 10/5, 12
11/4, 6, 9, 10; 12/4
13/4, 6, 10; 14/4, 5, 8
15/5, 13; 20/4, 9; 11; 21/5
22/4; 26/3, 7
imperative 5/9–11; 7/5
8/6, 10, 11; 9/11; 11/5, 7
12/6, 12; 13/8; 14/4–6
20/10; 21/3; 26/4, 8, 13
impersonal 15/5, 6; 22/5
initial-ic 3/8; 5/6, 9; 9/10
10/5, 12; 11/4, 6, 8–10
12/4; 13/4, 6, 10; 14/5, 8
15/5; 20/4–6; 22/4; 26/3, 7
participial verb 11/24; 13/14
participle 10/4–9; 11/8
12/7; 12; 13/9; 14/4, 5, 7
18/10, 16; 20/9; 22/8
23/10, 11; 24/20; 25/8; 26/9
active 10/4; 11/24; 12/13
19/7, 23/12
passive 25/9; 26/8
passive 12/4; 13/9, 15
15/5, 6, 14; 18/10, 16
25/9; 26/7–11
person, personal ending
3/6, 11; 5/4, 6, 9; 6/4
7/4, 5, 8; 8/4, 7, 8, 10; 9/10
11/6, 13, 24; 13/4; 15/5
21/3, 10; 22/4, 5
23/4, 5, 7, 13; 24/2
25/5, 6; 26/3, 7, 9, 13
prefix 5/4, 6; 7/4, 5; 8/8
9/10; 10/6; 11/6–8, 18
12/4, 7, 12; 13/6, 9; 15/7, 13
20/4, 5, 8, 26/7
present meaning 1/6; 3/15
4/13; 6/6, 19; 7/8, 8/12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb, present</th>
<th>Verb, present meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>principal parts</td>
<td>subjunctive 2/4, 5; 23/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tense</td>
<td>25/9; 26/3, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to ask</td>
<td>3/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be</td>
<td>1/6; 2/6; 4/13; 6/6; 21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have</td>
<td>2/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triliteral</td>
<td>3/5; 12/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbal noun</td>
<td>10/10–13; 11/4, 9–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12/8, 10, 12, 15, 13/2, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/4, 5, 8, 10; 15/6; 20/9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/6, 8; 23/12; 25/2, 9; 26/8, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jussive</td>
<td>26/2–4, 6, 13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>6/4–8, 16; 8/4, 7–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9/10, 12, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/4, 6, 13, 14, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12/4, 5, 12, 13/4, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/4, 5; 15/5, 6, 10, 11, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/5, 7; 21/3, 5; 22/5, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23/5, 7; 25/4–6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26/2, 4, 6, 7, 10, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>3/10; 11/13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/10; 26/6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>5/4–11; 6/16, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/2, 4, 5, 8, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/5, 8, 9, 12, 9/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10/6, 9, 14, 14, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12/4, 5, 12, 13; 13/4, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14/4, 5; 15/5–7, 10, 12, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/5, 6; 10; 21/5, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22/4, 10; 23/5, 7, 9, 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25/2, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26/3, 6, 7, 10, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb, future</th>
<th>Verb, future meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>continuous past</td>
<td>6/16; 11/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21/10; 22/5; 26/6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>10/14; 15/12; 21/11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Verbal sentence | 15/9; 21/7, 10 |
| 22/4, 5, 7; 26/6 |

| Vocative | 1/12; 24/15 |

| Vowel | 2/8; 3/6; 4/6, 8; 5/4, 6; 6/4 |
| 7/2, 4; 8/5, 8, 24; 9/10; 11/6, 18 |
| 12/4; 15/5, 7; 16/9, 19; 18/11, 13 |
| 20/4, 5; 24/18; 26/7 |
| deepened a | 2/5; 5/17; 8/24 |
| diphthong | 15/8; 16/10, 21 |
| 18/10, 13; 19/9 |
| final | 2/10; 7/10; 16/6; 18/2; 20/8 |
| 21/5 |
| long | 2/10; 3/11; 4/6; 7/4; 11/4; 12/5 |
| 16/4, 6, 8, 10, 21; 17/9; 18/2, 10 |
| short | 2/10; 6/4; 7/17; 15/7 |
| 16/1, 3, 6, 8, 9 |
| 18/2, 3, 9–11, 15, 19/16; 20/8 |
| 26/3 |
| transition | 3/18; 7/4; 11/18; 18/6 |
| weak | 1/14; 2/5; 13/4, 6; 14/5; 16/3 |
| 18/13; 20/10; 21/14 |

w, wāw | 3/8; 6/4; 7/4; 8/7; 8; 11/6; 13/6 |
| 16/21; 17/4; 18/6, 7, 10; 20/6, 12 |
| 21/3; 23/3, 5, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14 |
| 25/5, 7; 26/3, 7 |

| Verbs, initial-w | 4/4, 5, 11, 14; 5/12, 15; 6/19; 7/16 |
| 8/20, 21; 15/9; 21/8, 10; 22/8, 9; 26/6 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word-order</th>
<th>1/11; 2/7; 3/12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4/4, 5, 11, 14; 5/12, 15; 6/19; 7/16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/20, 21; 15/9; 21/8, 10; 22/8, 9; 26/6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

j, jā | 6/4; 7/4; 8/7; 8; 11/6, 18 |
| 13/6; 16/10, 19, 24; 17/4 |
| 18/2, 3, 6, 7, 10; 19/7, 14, 16 |
| 20/6, 12; 23/3, 5, 7–10, 13–15 |
| 25/5, 7; 26/3 |